

ELEMENTARY
LATIN

SCOTT



Harold Gersons

Len th Beard.

Indiana

RP = 7 Boy 40

Present time

active voice Porto Portus.

" " Imperfect tense Portabam

Passive voice Present.

" " Portor Portaris.

Im Portabar.

Imperfect tense sign for

Ind. mood is (va) Passive & active

Future tense sign for

Ind. mood is (bi) active & Passive

6

Crusades

Louis Annis

South Bend

Harold Annis

RR # 7

Louis Annis ^{Wells}

Lakeville

Indiana

Lakeville
High.

School.

Harold
5

Assembly, 1926.

History - Sargent

Rec. P.

Assembly.

4. Latin Rec. P. Peber

5. Assembly.

6. Algebra Rec. P. Culpe

7. English Stg. P. Peber

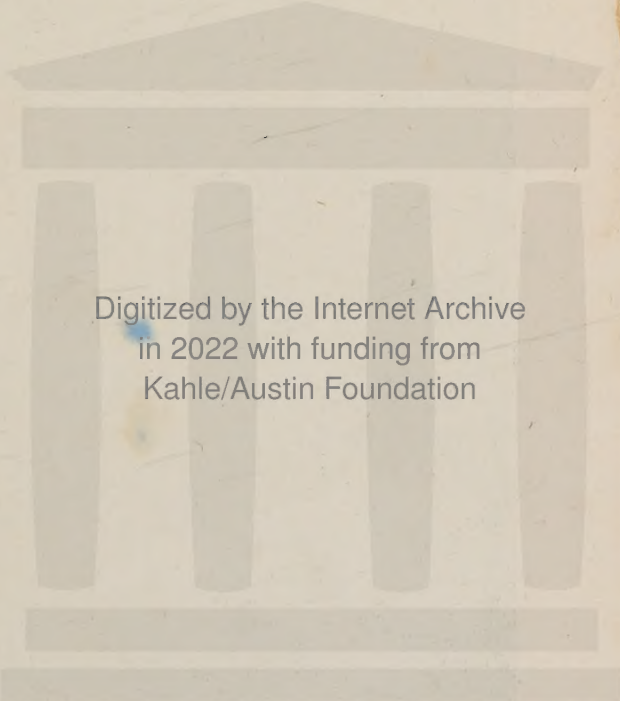
8. ... Rec.

Indicative.

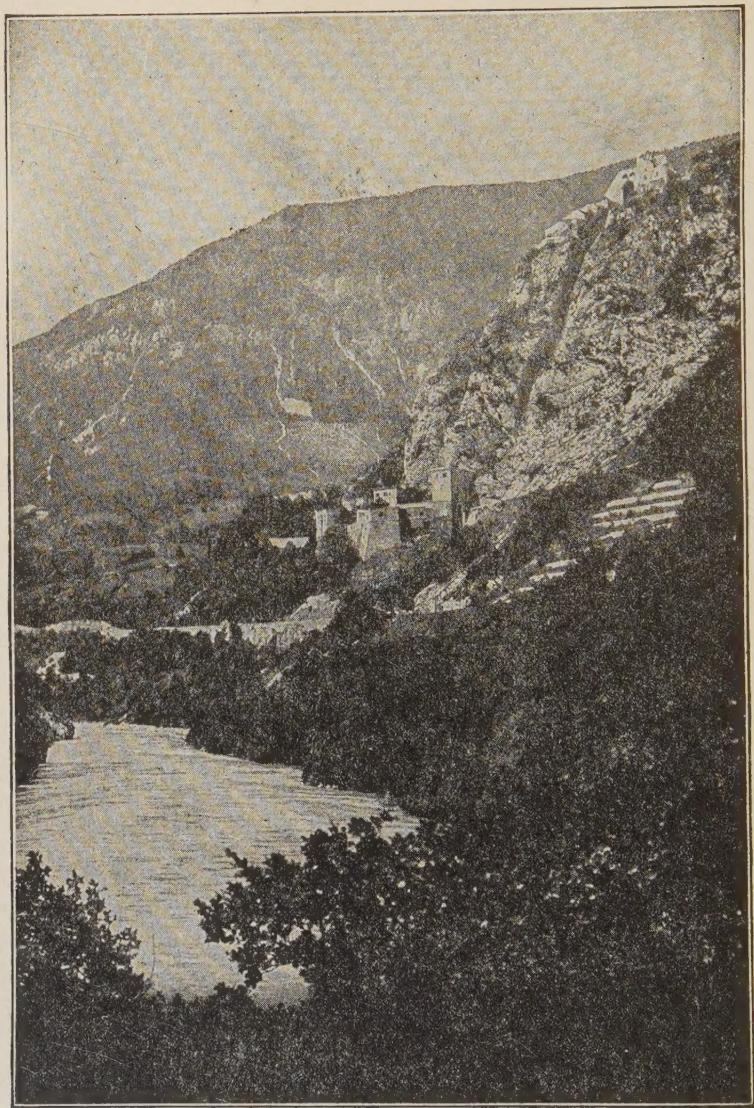
Present Tense - present action

Imperfect Tense. action in past.
completed & con-
sumed.

Future " - action going to be.
Perfect Tense - action completed
past action without
and ideal of con-tin-
uance.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2022 with funding from
Kahle/Austin Foundation



PAS DE L'ECLUSE

Pass by which the Helvetians left their country. (See page 140.)

Lake Classical Series

ELEMENTARY LATIN

AN INTRODUCTORY COURSE

BY

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT, A. M.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO HIGH SCHOOL



SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO NEW YORK

COPYRIGHT 1915
BY
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

ROBERT O. LAW COMPANY
EDITION BOOK MANUFACTURERS
C H I C A G O, U. S. A.

PREFACE

In the preparation of these lessons, the author has kept in view the necessity for simplicity of statement and for the avoidance of unnecessary details. The purpose has been to furnish drill on the forms and constructions of most frequent occurrence, leaving the more difficult syntactical relations and the forms less frequently employed for a later point in the course. A few topics included in the lessons near the end of the book have been given place in order to meet the needs of teachers who prefer a more complete presentation of Latin grammar in the first year. These topics may, however, be omitted and the work of the lessons made to consist of the translation exercises and drill on the essential constructions and forms previously given.

Instead of the usual arrangement of lessons which must be divided into two or three assignments, the plan has been adopted of providing short lessons which can usually be covered in single recitations. Naturally, no such plan can be made to correspond absolutely to the needs of every class, and occasionally a teacher may find it necessary to omit or to leave for later review, part of the exercises of a lesson. But the presentation of forms and syntax in small units will, it is hoped, tend to prevent confusion in the mind of the pupil and to aid the teacher in planning the work of the class.

The number of new words in each lesson has been kept as nearly uniform as possible and review lessons have been provided for special drill on vocabulary. These review lessons, however, with the exception of the first and second, are not an essential part of the plan of the book and may be omitted by teachers who prefer to arrange reviews in a different way. In connection with these lessons, lists of English derivatives have been given which may serve to relate the work in Latin more closely to the pupil's study of English, and to make clear the great importance of the Latin element in the English language. The vocabulary is for the greater part based on Caesar.

The reading lessons are planned to make the translation of Caesar easier, by giving in simple Latin the story of the first two books of the Gallic war, and by the frequent use of phrases and constructions from Caesar. The pupil who studies Latin but one year will at least have the opportunity to learn something of Caesar's narrative which may contribute to his interest in ancient history.

The selections from Eutropius are based on the text of Ruehl, with some changes and omissions. Since to many the tales of early Rome are unfamiliar, a good introduction to Roman history is furnished by this material.

The recommendations of the Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature have been followed, with a few exceptions. The tense name "imperfect" has been retained in the indicative and subjunctive, and a different term from that suggested by the Committee has been employed to designate conditional sentences with the present and past tenses of the indicative.

Acknowledgment is made of the many helpful suggestions which were received from Professor Frederick W. Sanford of the University of Nebraska, Professor Charles Knapp of Barnard College, Miss Mildred Dean of the Central High School of Washington, D. C., Professor Arthur Tappan Walker of the University of Kansas, and Professor Rollin H. Tanner of Illinois College, who read the manuscript. Professor Edward Capps of Princeton University, editor of the Lake Classical Series, has also given the book the benefit of his scholarly judgment on many points. Some features which have been most heartily commended by those to whom the manuscript has been submitted are due to the suggestions of the late Professor H. W. Johnston of the University of Indiana, to whom the plan of the lessons was submitted shortly before his death.

Chicago, Illinois, May, 1915.

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS	xv
INTRODUCTION: SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS, SYLLABLES, ACCENT . . .	1
LESSON I. USE OF CASE FORMS IN LATIN AND ENGLISH. THE ARTICLE. POSITION OF THE VERB	4
II. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES IN CASE. PREDICATE AD- JECTIVES AND NOUNS	6
III. INDIRECT OBJECT. DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES. POSI- TION OF THE GENITIVE AND DATIVE	8
IV. THE ABLATIVE. THE VOCATIVE. THE FIRST DECLEN- SION	10
V. PERSONAL ENDINGS IN THE ACTIVE. AGREEMENT OF THE VERB. THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT ACTIVE INDICATIVE	13
FIRST REVIEW LESSON	16
VI. GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION. THE SECOND DE- CLENSION, NEUTER NOUNS IN -um	17
VII. APPPOSITION. THE SECOND DECLENSION, NOUNS IN -us AND -ir	19
VIII. THE SECOND DECLENSION, NOUNS IN -er . THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF sum	22
IX. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS WITH THE MASCULINE IN -us	24
X. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS WITH THE MASCULINE IN -er . POSSESSIVE AD- JECTIVES	26
SECOND REVIEW LESSON	29
XI. DEMONSTRATIVES. DECLENSION OF hic	31
XII. THE FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT PASSIVE INDICA- TIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT	33
XIII. DECLENSION OF ille AND ipse . THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT	35
XIV. THE SECOND CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE. THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE	37
XV. THE IMPERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	40

	PAGE
THIRD REVIEW LESSON	43
XVI. DECLENSION OF <i>is</i> . THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS .	44
XVII. THE IMPERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS	47
XVIII. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	49
XIX. POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON. THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF <i>sum</i>	51
XX. THE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE	54
FOURTH REVIEW LESSON	57
XXI. THE PAST PARTICIPLE	58
XXII. THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB. THE STEMS OF THE VERB	60
XXIII. THE PAST PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE. THE FUTURE PERFECT ACTIVE INDICATIVE	63
XXIV. THE PERFECT PASSIVE INDICATIVE. THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION	65
XXV. THE PAST PERFECT PASSIVE AND THE FUTURE PERFECT PASSIVE OF THE INDICATIVE. SYNOPSIS OF VERBS .	67
FIFTH REVIEW LESSON	69
XXVI. THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE. PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE	70
XXVII. THE THIRD CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE OF <i>ō</i> VERBS. THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE	72
XXVIII. THE FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE. THE SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES	74
XXIX. THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	76
XXX. THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. THE ABLATIVE OF TIME	77
SIXTH REVIEW LESSON	80
XXXI. THE THIRD CONJUGATION, <i>-iō</i> VERBS, PRESENT, IMPER- FECT, AND FUTURE INDICATIVE	81
XXXII. REVIEW OF THE PRESENT SYSTEM OF THE FOUR CONJU- GATIONS IN THE INDICATIVE	83
XXXIII. REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM. VARIATION FROM THE NORMAL WORD ORDER	87
XXXIV. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE IN <i>-ius</i>	90
XXXV. THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS	92

	PAGE
SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON	95
XXXVI. THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS (Continued). THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE	96
XXXVII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, MASCULINE AND FEMININE i-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS	99
XXXVIII. THE THIRD DECLENSION, NEUTER i STEMS. GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION	102
XXXIX. THE THIRD DECLENSION, IRREGULAR AND EXCEPTIONAL i-STEMS	104
XL. DECLENSION OF <i>idem</i> . THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE .	106
EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON	108
XLI. THE PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS. THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE . .	110
XLII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION. THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER	112
XLIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued). ORDER OF WORDS IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES . .	114
XLIV. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN. AGREEMENT OF THE RELATIVE	117
XLV. THE FOURTH DECLENSION	118
NINTH REVIEW LESSON	120
XLVI. DECLENSION OF <i>domus</i> . THE LOCATIVE CASE	121
XLVII. NUMERALS. DECLENSION OF <i>duo</i> AND <i>três</i>	125
XLVIII. THE FIFTH DECLENSION	127
XLIX. THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT. THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH	129
L. CONJUGATION OF <i>eô</i> . *THE ABLATIVE OF ROUTE . . .	131
TENTH REVIEW LESSON	133
LI. THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS. THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION	135
LII. THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION. THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH	137
LIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES	139
LIV. THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued). THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON	141
LV. ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY. THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE	143

	PAGE
ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON	146
LVI. THE GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION. THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION	147
LVII. THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS	149
LVIII. THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS	151
LIX. THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE. THE ABLATIVE OF RE- SPECT	153
LX. THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	155
TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON	157
LXI. THE CONJUGATION OF possum	159
LXII. THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS. THE OBJECTIVE GENITIVE .	161
LXIII. THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN. ENCLITIC USE OF cum .	163
LXIV. THE INFINITIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS, COM- plete	165
LXV. THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE. THE IN- FINITIVES OF sum AND eō	167
THIRTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	170
LXVI. THE PRESENT IMPERATIVE	170
LXVII. THE CONJUGATION OF ferō	173
LXVIII. SYNOPSIS OF possum AND ferō	175
LXIX. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJU- GATIONS	177
LXX. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJU- GATIONS. THE ABLATIVE WITH ūtor , ETC.	180
FOURTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	183
LXXI. DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION IN -iō . THE PREDICATE NOMINATIVE WITH CERTAIN PAS- SIVE VERBS	184
LXXII. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS. INTERROGATIVE PARTICLES	187
LXXIII. DECLENSION OF quidam AND quisque . IMPERSONAL VERBS	189
LXXIV. SEMI-DEPONENTS. THE ENCLITIC -que	192
LXXV. DECLENSION OF aliquis AND quisquam . THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE	194
FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	196
LXXVI. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS	197

	PAGE
LXXVII. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH ut AND nē . THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS	199
LXXVIII. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE. THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF sum AND possum	202
LXXIX. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS	204
LXXX. THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE. THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF ferō AND eō	207
SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	209
LXXXI. THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF sum AND possum . CLAUSES OF RESULT	210
LXXXII. THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE. INDIRECT QUESTIONS	212
LXXXIII. THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE	214
LXXXIV. INDIRECT DISCOURSE	216
LXXXV. INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued). THE CONJUGATION OF eō COMPLETED	219
SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	220
LXXXVI. TENSE OF SUBJUNCTIVES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION WITH cum	221
LXXXVII. THE CONJUGATION OF fiō . SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT	224
LXXXVIII. Cum CAUSAL CLAUSES. THE GENITIVE OF MATERIAL	226
LXXXIX. THE CONJUGATION OF volō . Cum ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES	228
XC. THE CONJUGATION OF nōlō . CONSTRUCTIONS WITH EXPRESSIONS OF FEAR	230
EIGHTEENTH REVIEW LESSON	232
XCI. THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE. THE DATIVE OF AGENT	233
XCII. THE CONJUGATION OF mālō . THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING	235
XCIII. THE SUPINE. REVIEW OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS	237
XCIV. THE GERUND	240
XCV. THE GERUNDIVE	243
NINETEENTH REVIEW LESSON	246
XCVI. REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES. NEGATIVE COMMANDS	247
XCVII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES. NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES	249

	PAGE
XCVIII. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT. REVIEW	
OF PREPOSITIONS	251
XCIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES FUTURE LESS VIVID. DE-	
CLENSION OF <i>iste</i>	253
C. THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE. THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY AT-	
TRACTION	255
TWENTIETH REVIEW LESSON	258
SELECTIONS FROM EUTROPIUS	259
NOTES TO EUTROPIUS	269
APPENDIX	277
FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES	309
LATIN WORD FORMATION	310
VOCABULARY	1
INDEX	34
SUPPLEMENTARY READING	39

ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS

	PAGE
FRONTISPIECE	
MAP SHOWING MODERN INFLUENCE OF LATIN	xix
ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY	7
ROMAN FARMER WITH PLOW	12
ROMAN WALL IN BRITAIN	15
THE APPIAN WAY IN THE TIME OF AUGUSTUS	20
ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS	28
ROMAN MATRONS OFFERING GIFTS	30
ROMAN FESTIVAL PROCESSION	39
ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP	40
VICTIMS FOR A ROMAN SACRIFICE	45
ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD	48
ROMAN SHIELD	50
GATE IN THE WALL OF MODERN ROME	53
RUINS OF ROMAN AQUEDUCT	62
FRAGMENT OF PAPYRUS ROLL FROM HERCULANEUM	75
ROMAN CENTURION	77
BRIDGE OVER THE TIBER	86
THE ROMAN FORUM IN ITS PRESENT CONDITION	89
MANNER OF WEARING THE TOGA	99
DRAWING ON THE OUTER WALL OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII	109
ARCH OVER ROMAN ROAD	116
ROMAN OIL VAULT	122
GAUL IN CAESAR'S TIME (MAP)	123
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR	124
ROMAN JAVELINS	128
ROMAN COINS	130
ROMAN DRINKING CUPS	138
ROMAN SOLDIERS STORMING A TOWN	145
ROMAN SPOONS AND BOWL	146
ROMAN TEMPLE AT CORI	150
THE CAPITOLINE HILL (RESTORATION)	160

	PAGE
THE ROMAN FORUM (RESTORATION)	169
ROMAN COIN	175
STREET OF POMPEII	186
ROMAN MOSAIC	191
ROMAN SEAL RINGS	201
ROMAN HELMETS	203
CAESAR'S TRIUMPH	206
ROMAN CHARIOT RACE	218
INTERIOR OF A HOUSE AT POMPEII (RESTORATION)	223
CIRCUS MAXIMUS	239
VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL	241
ROMAN KITCHEN RANGE	246
VIEW ON THE APPIAN WAY	252

3. Importance to English speaking
1. English word derived from Latin
2. History of our language

THE VALUE OF LATIN

English words

A very large proportion of the words of the English language is derived from Latin. In some instances words have been taken directly, without change of form. For example, *terminus*, *stimulus*, *velo*, and *affidavit*, are Latin words in the form in which they were used by the Romans. Other words first became a part of the French language and after being modified by the pronunciation of that language were taken into English in this changed form. Such are *humble*, *count*, *blame*, and *sure*. The numerous English adjectives ending in *-ent* and *-ant*, such as *patient*, *intelligent*, *independent*, and *defiant*, are derived from Latin participles either directly or through the French. As an illustration of how large this element is in English, nearly three-fourths of the words in the Preamble to the Constitution of the United States (with the exception of prepositions and articles) are of Latin origin.

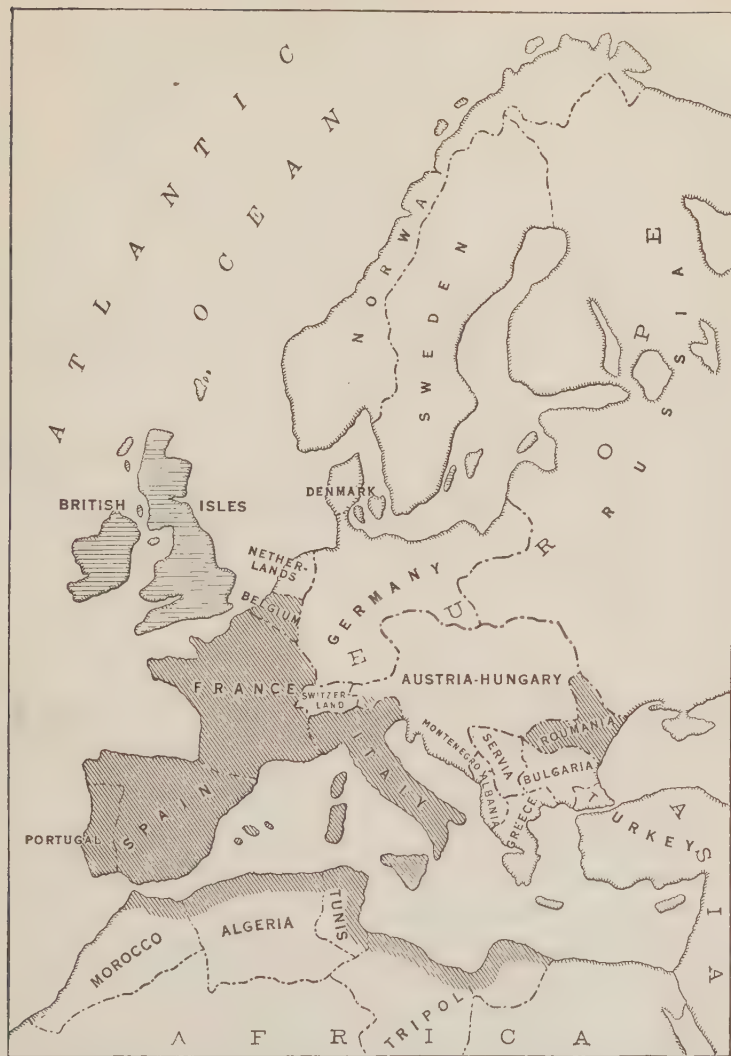
The study of Latin is, therefore, to a large extent, the study of the history of our own language. But it is more than merely a study of its history. One who has become familiar with the derivation of the words which he uses is likely to speak and write with greater clearness and accuracy. For this reason the best schools which afford training for those who wish to become newspaper writers advise or require the study of Latin as a preparation. For the same reason, law schools require that a student shall have some knowledge of Latin, and prominent lawyers have said that no other training can give the command of language which is necessary for the largest success in the legal profession. Schools of engineering advise or require Latin because the Latin student usually has the ability to state a plan of work

or describe what is to be done with greater clearness than one who has not had the training afforded by Latin.

For business life the study of Latin is valuable in that it gives one a larger English vocabulary and through the experience of translation affords training in the careful choice of words. Even a brief course, of two or three years will give much help in these respects. One who has learned to look carefully at words is more likely to avoid errors in spelling and in the structure of sentences. Inaccuracy in the use of language may be the cause of failure in many situations in the business world. In proportion as one gains positions of greater importance, the ability to speak and write clearly and correctly becomes more valuable. The opportunities for success for one who lacks this ability are rapidly becoming less.

Another reason why the study of Latin is of importance to the English-speaking person is that his own literature is made clearer thereby. The greatest works of English literature have been written by men who knew Latin, and they contain innumerable passages which cannot be understood without a knowledge of Latin. This does not mean simply Latin quotations, but references and forms of expression in English. And this is true not merely of the writers of an early period, but of some of the most modern. Many English poems have as their titles famous Latin phrases which one must understand in order to appreciate the poems themselves.

The modern languages which have been developed from Latin are very important and widely spoken. Those of Italy, France, Spain, Portugal, and Roumania are modern forms of Latin. And since the languages spoken in the greater part of South America, and Mexico, and in parts of the southwestern states of our own country and of Canada belong to this group, they are of very direct concern to us. Further, one who wishes to become familiar with the great literatures of the world or to be able to read important scientific books must



MAP SHOWING THE INFLUENCE OF LATIN ON THE LANGUAGES OF MODERN EUROPE

Heavy shading indicates languages directly derived from Latin
 Light shading indicates languages largely influenced by Latin

know at least one of these languages. If he knows Latin he has the foundation of all of them and can learn any one of them with much less effort because of that knowledge.

In the Latin language there is also a great literature which one will appreciate better if he reads it in the original form. The works of the Roman poets and historians have had a powerful influence on the literature of modern nations. They are often quoted today, and parts of them have been imitated many times. In reading them one finds the source of a great number of the mythological stories which have been retold in so many forms in later literature. These stories become more vivid and real as they are read in the language in which they were originally written.

In these ways and in others, the study of Latin is closely connected with the life of the modern world, and it cannot well be disregarded by any one who wishes to become in the best sense efficient and intelligent.

INTRODUCTORY LESSON

THE ALPHABET

1. The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that the Latin has no j or w.

VOWELS AND CONSONANTS

2. The vowels, as in English, are *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, and *y*. The other letters are consonants. The letter *i* is usually a consonant when it stands at the beginning of a word and is followed by a vowel, or when it stands between vowels within a word.

SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS

3. The vowels in Latin are either long or short. In this book long vowels are indicated by a mark placed above them. A vowel which is unmarked is short. The vowel sounds are indicated in the following table:

<i>ā</i> = <i>a</i> in "father"	<i>a</i> = <i>a</i> in "comma" ¹
<i>ē</i> = <i>a</i> in "fade"	<i>e</i> = <i>e</i> in "net"
<i>ī</i> = <i>i</i> in "machine"	<i>i</i> = <i>i</i> in "this"
<i>ō</i> = <i>o</i> in "holy"	<i>o</i> = <i>o</i> in "domain"
<i>ū</i> = <i>u</i> in "rude"	<i>u</i> = <i>u</i> in "full"

y is seldom used. Its sound is the same as that of *u* in the French language or *ü* in German.

¹ Like *ā*, but pronounced more quickly.

4. The consonants have in general the same sounds as in English. The following exceptions are to be noted:

c and **ch** have the sound of *k*.

g has only one sound, that heard in *go*.

i as a consonant is equivalent to *y* in *yes*.

s has only the sound heard in *say*.

t always has the sound heard in *top*. It does not combine with *i* to give the sound of *sh* as in *nation*.

v has the sound of *w*.

x has only the sound of *ks*, as in *exercise*.

bs and **bt** are equivalent to *ps* and *pt*.

ph and **th** are nearly equivalent to *p* and *t*.

DIPHTHONGS

5. A diphthong is a combination of two vowels in one syllable. The diphthongs are **ae**, **au**, **ei**, **eu**, **oe**, and **ui**. Their sounds are as follows:

ae = *ai* in "aisle"

eu = *eu* in "feud"

au = *ou* in "out"

oe = *oi* in "boil"

ei = *ei* in "vein"

ui = almost¹ *ui* in "ruin"

SYLLABLES

6. (1) A syllable must contain a vowel or a diphthong, and may contain also one or more consonants.

(2) A consonant between two vowels is taken with the vowel which follows it: **pō-nō**, **ha-be-ō**.

(3) Two consonants between two vowels are divided, one going with the vowel which precedes and one with the vowel which follows. But if the second of two consonants is **l** or **r**, and if the combination can be pronounced at the beginning of a word, as **bl**, **br**, etc., the two are taken with the vowel which follows, like a single consonant:² **man-dā-re**, **car-dō**; but **fe-bris**, **ā-cris**.

¹ The *u* is shorter than in the English word, and the vowels are more closely blended.

² In the division of a compound verb into syllables in writing or printing, the prepositional element is separated from the simple verb.

LENGTH OF SYLLABLES

7. (1) A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **dō-num, cau-tus.**

(2) A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by two consonants, except when the first of these consonants is a mute, and the second is **l** or **r**. The mutes are **b, p, c, k, q, g, d, t**, and the combinations **ph, th, and ch**: **con-dō, mit-tō.**

(3) All other syllables are short: **me-mor, a-grī.**

a. **x** and **z** have the value of two consonants because they represent a combination of sounds. A syllable is long if its vowel is followed by either of these double consonants.

ACCENT

8. (1) In a word of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable.

(2) In a word of more than two syllables the accent falls on the syllable before the last, if it is long, otherwise on the second syllable from the last: **lū'men, au-dī're, con-ten'tus, me'mi-nī.**

(3) The syllable before the last is called the *penult*, the second from the last is called the *antepenult*.

LESSON I

NOUN INFLECTION: THE ARTICLE: POSITION OF VERB

THE USE OF CASE FORMS IN ENGLISH

9. In English, one form of the pronoun is used as the subject of the sentence, a different form as the object of a verb or of a preposition, and a third form to express possession.

He walks (subject).

We see *him* (object).

His book is new (possessive).

CASE FORMS OF LATIN NOUNS

10. In Latin, nouns as well as pronouns have different forms to show how they are used in sentences.

Puella (subject) **ambulat**, *the girl walks*.

Puellam (object) **vidēmus**, *we see the girl*.

Liber puellae (possessive), *the girl's book*.

NAMES OF CASES

11. The subject case is called the Nominative, the object case is called the Accusative, and the case of the possessor is called the Genitive.

NOM. **puella** (subject).

GEN. **puellae** (possessive).

ACC. **puellam** (object).

TRANSLATION OF THE GENITIVE

12. The genitive is sometimes translated by the English possessive, as in the example above, and sometimes by *of* and the noun. **Puellae** may be translated *the girl's* or *of the girl*.

THE ARTICLE

13. The Latin has no article. With the English translation of a Latin noun, *a*, *an*, or *the* is generally supplied as the sense requires. **Puella** means *the girl* or *a girl* according to the meaning of the sentence in which it stands.

POSITION OF THE VERB

14. The verb of a Latin sentence, unless it is especially emphasized, usually stands at the end of the sentence.¹

15. VOCABULARY

<u>fēmina</u> , woman	<u>amat</u> , loves
<u>filia</u> , daughter	<u>dat</u> , gives
<u>puella</u> , girl	<u>laudat</u> , praises
<u>rosa</u> , rose	<u>vocat</u> , calls

EXERCISES

- 16.
1. Fēmina puellam vocat.
 2. Puella fēminam vocat.
 3. Filia rosam dat.
 4. Fēmina rosam puellae laudat.
 5. Puella filiam fēminae amat.
 6. Filia fēminae rosam laudat.
- 17.
1. The woman loves the girl.
 2. The girl loves the woman.
 3. The woman praises the girl.
 4. The woman's daughter gives a rose.
 5. The girl praises the woman's rose.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Divide the words of the vocabulary into syllables and indicate the accent of each word. (2) Give the genitive and the accusative of each noun in the vocabulary. (3) In the following sentences point out the subjects: (a) The boy has a gun. (b) We missed the first train. (c) You did not see us yesterday. (d) The engine of the aeroplane is small. (e) The boy's gun is not loaded. (f) The friends of this girl sent presents. (4) In the sentences of (3) point out the objects, and also the words or phrases which express possession. (5) Name the case in which each noun or pronoun in these sentences would stand if translated into Latin.

¹ The forms of the verb meaning *to be*, when equivalent to the English *there is*, or *there are*, usually stand first in the clause.

LESSON II

ADJECTIVES: PREDICATE ADJECTIVES AND NOUNS

CASE FORMS OF ADJECTIVES

18. Adjectives as well as nouns have different case forms in Latin. An adjective agrees in case with the noun to which it belongs.

NOM.	<u>puella bona</u> , a good girl.
GEN.	<u>puellae bonae</u> , of a good girl.
ACC.	<u>puellam bonam</u> , a good girl.

POSITION OF ADJECTIVES

19. An adjective which tells some quality of a noun is placed after the noun to which it belongs, unless especially emphasized: **Fēmina benigna**, the kind woman.

PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

20. An adjective which is connected with a noun or pronoun by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a Predicate Adjective.

The girl is good.

A predicate adjective agrees with the subject of its clause.

Fēmina benigna est, the woman is kind.

PREDICATE NOUNS

21. A noun which is connected with the subject by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a Predicate Noun. A predicate noun stands in the same case as the subject.

Puella filia fēminae est, the girl is the woman's daughter.

22.

VOCABULARY

benigna, kind	īnsula, island
bona, good	statua, statue
magna, large	est, is
pulchra, beautiful	et, and

EXERCISES

23.

1. Puella benigna est. *The girl is kind.*
2. Statua pulchra est. *The statue is beautiful.*
3. Insula magna et pulchra est. *The island is large and beautiful.*
4. Filia fēminae benignae bona est. *The daughter of the kind woman is good.*
5. Filiā fēminae bonae benigna est. *The daughter of the kind woman is kind.*
6. Fēmina statuam pulchram laudat. *The woman praises the beautiful statue.*
7. Puella fēminam benignam amat. *The girl loves the kind woman.*

24.

1. The woman is kind.
2. The rose is beautiful.
3. The woman's daughter is a good girl.
4. The girl gives a beautiful rose.
5. The woman praises the large statue.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Name the case of each noun in the sentences of 23 and tell why each noun stands in the case in which it appears. (2) Point out the predicate adjectives in the sentences of 23 and 24. (3) Point out the predicate nouns and the objects in the following sentences and state what the case of each would be in Latin: (a) The man was a stranger. (b) I have had no dinner. (c) You have been the leader. (d) This boy will never be a good player. (e) We saw your friend yesterday



ROMAN CHILDREN AT PLAY

LESSON III

INDIRECT OBJECT: DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES: POSITION OF GENITIVE AND DATIVE

THE INDIRECT OBJECT

25. The word denoting the person to whom something is given or said or shown is called the Indirect Object.

He told the *boy* an interesting story.

The girl gave her *sister* a picture.

THE DATIVE AS INDIRECT OBJECT

26. In Latin, the case of the indirect object is called the Dative. Nouns which end in *-a* in the nominative have the same form for the dative as for the genitive in the singular.

Fēmina puellae rosam dat, the woman gives the girl a rose.

a. In English the indirect object is often expressed by "to" and the noun.

The woman gives a rose *to the girl*.

In Latin the phrase *to the girl* is expressed by the one word, *puellae*.

THE DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

27. In English, many adjectives, such as those meaning *kind, friendly, pleasing, useful, near*, are modified by a phrase consisting of the preposition *to* and a noun or pronoun.

Every one is kind *to me*.

In Latin, such adjectives are modified by the dative.

Puellae benigna, kind to the girl.

POSITION OF THE GENITIVE AND THE DATIVE

28. (1) A noun in the genitive case, when not emphasized, commonly stands after the word to which it belongs.

(2) A noun in the dative case, when not emphasized, commonly stands before the word to which it belongs.

VERB ENDINGS OF THE THIRD PERSON

29. Verbs ending in -t are in the third person, singular number. The third person plural ends in -nt.

SING. *laudat, praises.*

PLU. *laudant, praise.*

30. VOCABULARY

<i>agricola</i> , farmer	<i>grāta</i> , pleasing
<i>amicitia</i> , friendship	<i>tua</i> , your, yours
<i>aqua</i> , water	<i>tibi</i> , to you (<i>dative</i>)
<i>nauta</i> , sailor	<i>portat</i> , carries

EXERCISES

31. 1. Puella aquam portat.
 2. Amicitia tibi grāta est.
 3. Nauta et fēmina puellam laudant.
 4. Amicitia tua nautae est grāta.
 5. Puella fēminae (*dative*) benigna est.
 6. Agricola puellae rosam dat.
 7. Puella filiam agricolae amat.
32. 1. The good daughter gives a rose to the woman.
 2. The girl and the woman call the sailor.
 3. The large rose is pleasing to you.
 4. Your friendship is pleasing to the good girl.
 5. The farmer and the sailor praise the statue.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the dative and the accusative forms of the nouns in the vocabulary above. (2) Give the third person plural of the verbs in the vocabulary of Lesson I. (3) Name the case which may be used after adjectives meaning *friendly*, *unfriendly*, *pleasing*, *opposed*, *injurious*. (4) Point out the indirect objects and also the direct objects in the following sentences: (a) They told us the reason for this. (b) No one gave the tramp money. (c) Who gave your brother this knife? (d) He said this to his father.

LESSON IV

THE ABLATIVE: THE VOCATIVE: THE FIRST DECLENSION

THE ABLATIVE CASE

33. The case used in Latin to express relations which are indicated in English by the prepositions *from*, *in*, and *with* is called the Ablative. There are additional uses of this case which have been developed from these. Latin prepositions are sometimes used with the ablative.

ex silvā, *from the forest.*

in silvā, *in the forest.*

cum nautā, *with the sailor.*

a. The form of the ablative singular is to be distinguished from that of the nominative singular by the final long **a** in such nouns as those given above.

NOM. **silva.**

ABL. **silvā.**

THE VOCATIVE CASE

34. The case used in Latin to name the person directly addressed is called the Vocative. In most nouns the vocative singular is identical in form with the nominative singular. The vocative plural is always identical with the nominative plural.

Filia tua, Cornēlia, pulchra est, *Cornelia, your daughter is beautiful.*

POSITION OF THE VOCATIVE

35. In Latin, the vocative regularly stands after one or more words in the sentence, as in the example above. Its English equivalent usually stands either at the beginning or at the end of the sentence.

THE FIRST DECLENSION

36. The nouns which have been given thus far belong to what is called the First Declension. They are declined in full through the singular and plural according to the following model:¹

rosa, rose

SINGULAR

TERMINATIONS

NOM.	<i>rosa,</i>	<i>a rose (subject or predicate)</i>	<i>-a</i>
GEN.	<i>rosae,</i>	<i>of a rose</i>	<i>-ae</i>
DAT.	<i>rosae,</i>	<i>to or for a rose</i>	<i>-ae</i>
ACC.	<i>rosam,</i>	<i>a rose (object)</i>	<i>-am</i>
ABL.	<i>rosā,</i>	<i>from, in, with a rose</i>	<i>-ā</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>rosae,</i>	<i>roses (subject or predicate)</i>	<i>-ae</i>
GEN.	<i>rosārum,</i>	<i>of roses</i>	<i>-ārum</i>
DAT.	<i>rosīs,</i>	<i>to or for roses</i>	<i>-īs</i>
ACC.	<i>rosās,</i>	<i>roses (object)</i>	<i>-ās</i>
ABL.	<i>rosīs,</i>	<i>from, in, with roses</i>	<i>-īs</i>

a. The genitive singular ending, *-ae*, printed after a word in the vocabulary shows that the word belongs to the first declension.

IDENTICAL FORMS

37. The form *rosae* may be a genitive singular, a dative singular, a nominative plural, or a vocative plural. The meaning of the rest of the sentence will usually make it possible to determine what is the case of a doubtful form.

THE BASE

38. The part of a noun to which the terminations are added and which is not changed in declension, is called the Base. The base of *rosa* is *ros-*. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

¹ The noun *filia* has the irregular form *fillābus* in the dative and ablative plural.

39.

VOCABULARY

Cornēlia, Cornelia (*a woman's name*)

silva, -ae, forest

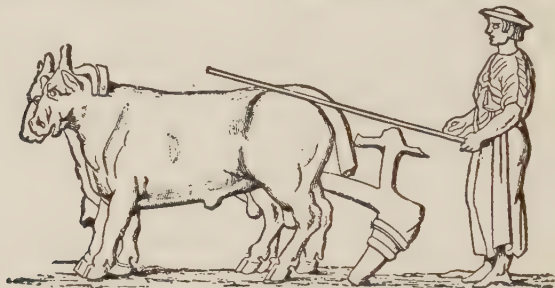
ambulat, walks

habitat, lives, dwells

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with
properat, hastens

ē, ex,¹ *prep. with abl.*, from,
out of

in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on



ROMAN FARMER WITH PLOW

EXERCISES

40. 1. *Silva magna tibi est grāta.* 2. *Agricola in silvā magnā est.* 3. *Fēmina cum filiā in insulā habitat.* 4. *Cornēlia ex silvā properat.* 5. *Filiae agricolae rosam magnam laudant.* 6. *Puellae, Cornēlia, in silvā ambulant.* 7. *Amicitia fēminārum tibi grāta est.* 8. *Fēmina puellīs rosās dat.*

41. 1. The sailors live on the large island. 2. The woman walks with the girls. 3. The rose is pleasing to the girls. 4. The farmer hastens from the forest. 5. The woman praises the farmer's daughters.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the case terminations of the first declension in the singular and plural. (2) Decline the nouns in the vocabularies of this lesson and of the preceding lesson. (3) Name the case of each noun in 40. (4) Point out the subjects of the sentences in 41. (5) Point out a direct object in 41.

¹ Before vowels and *h*, *ex* is used, before most consonants, *ē*.

LESSON V

PRESENT INDICATIVE: AGREEMENT OF VERB:
THE INFINITIVE: FIRST CONJUGATION

THE THREE FORMS OF THE ENGLISH VERB

42. The English verb has three forms for the present tense; *walks*, *does walk*, and *is walking* are all present. In Latin, there is only one form for this tense. The form *ambulat* is translated *walks*, or *is walking*, or *does walk*, as the sense requires. *Nōn ambulat* is translated *does not walk*, or *is not walking*. *Ubi puella habitat* is translated *Where does the girl live?* or *Where is the girl living?*

PERSONAL ENDINGS OF THE VERB

43. The form *portō* is translated *I carry* (*am carrying, do carry*). The subject *I* is indicated by the ending *-ō*, and a pronoun is not expressed unless the subject is emphasized, or contrasted with another word.

In the form *portat*, the ending *-t* shows that the verb is third person, singular number. If no subject is expressed in the Latin, a pronoun of the third person, *he*, *she*, or *it*, is regularly to be supplied in translation. Thus *est* may be translated *he is*, or *she is*, or *it is*.

The other personal pronouns when not emphatic are likewise indicated as subjects by verb endings.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB

44. The verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

THE INFINITIVE

45. The present active infinitive of *portō* is *portāre*, *to carry*. All verbs given thus far, except the verb meaning *to be*, form the present active infinitive with the termination *-āre*: *laudāre*, *to praise*; *amāre*, *to love*.

a. The infinitive *dare*, *to give*, is slightly irregular, in that the *a* is short.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION

46. Verbs which have the infinitive termination **-āre** form what is called the First Conjugation.

The forms of the first conjugation in the present tense, indicative mood, active voice, are as follows:

SINGULAR		PERSONAL ENDINGS
1. portō,	<i>I carry, (am carrying, do carry)</i>	-ō (<i>I</i>)
2. portās,	<i>you (singular) carry, etc.</i>	-s (<i>you</i>) ¹
3. portat,	<i>he, she, it carries, etc.</i>	-t (<i>he, she, it</i>)
PLURAL		
1. portāmus,	<i>we carry, etc.</i>	-mus (<i>we</i>)
2. portātis,	<i>you (plural) carry, etc.</i>	-tis (<i>you</i>)
3. portant,	<i>they carry, etc.</i>	-nt (<i>they</i>)

a. In the vocabulary, either the infinitive or its termination is printed after the first form given, to indicate the conjugation.

b. The main body of the verb, ending in the characteristic vowel, is called the Present Stem. The present stem of **portāre** is **portā-**. The present tense of the indicative mood is formed by uniting personal endings to the present stem. In the first person singular of the first conjugation the characteristic **ā** disappears. Before the endings **-t** and **-nt** it becomes short **a**.

47.

VOCABULARY

Britannia, -ae, Great Britain	mea, my, mine
Hibernia, -ae, Ireland	mihi, to me (<i>dat.</i>) ¹
patria, -ae, native country	nōn, <i>adv.</i> , not
via, -ae, road, street	sunt, are, they are

¹ In English, *you carry* may be either singular or plural. In Latin, the distinction between the singular and the plural of the verb in the second person is always indicated.

EXERCISES

48. 1. Nōn in Hiberniā habitō. 2. Britannia et Hibernia sunt insulae. 3. Britannia nōn patria mea est. 4. In viā cum nautā ambulāmus. 5. In insulā habitō. 6. Puella mihi rosam dat. 7. Tibi rosās dō. 8. Statuam pulchram laudātis. 9. Patriam meam amō et laudō. 10. Filia agricolae cum fēminā in viā ambulat.

49. 1. I praise the daughter of the farmer. 2. You (*singular*) are calling (call) the girl. 3. We do not live on the island. 4. My native country is beautiful. 5. You (*plural*) love the forest. 6. You love and praise your native country.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the personal endings of the verb, and the English pronoun for which each stands. (2) Translate *laudō* in three different ways. (3) Give the infinitives of the verbs in the vocabularies of Lessons I, III, and IV, with the meaning of each. (4) Divide the words *Britannia* and *Hibernia* into syllables and indicate the accent. (5) Form two English sentences, each of which contains a direct and an indirect object. (6) Tell what would be the case of these objects in Latin. (7) Form two English sentences containing predicate nouns and tell what would be the case of these nouns in Latin.



ROMAN WALL IN BRITAIN

domus filii farmer with Roman wall

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

50. (1) The subject of a finite¹ verb is in the nominative case.

(2) The predicate noun used with a finite form of the verb meaning *to be* is in the nominative case.

(3) The genitive case is used to name a person or thing referred to as possessing something.

(4) The indirect object is in the dative case.

(5) The dative is used in sentences or phrases containing adjectives of attitude or quality or relation to denote that toward which the attitude, quality, or relation is directed or in reference to which it is said to exist.

(6) The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

(7) The ablative case is used to express relations indicated in English by the prepositions from, with, or in.

(8) The vocative case is used to denote the person addressed.

TERMINATIONS (First Declension)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	-a	-ae
GEN.	-ae	-ārum
DAT.	-ae	-īs
ACC.	-am	-ās
ABL.	-ā	-īs

PERSONAL ENDINGS (Active Voice)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	-ō or -m ² (<i>I</i>)	-mus (<i>we</i>)
2.	-s (<i>you</i>)	-tis (<i>you</i>)
3.	-t (<i>he, she, it</i>)	-nt (<i>they</i>)

51. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

amble	habitation	patriotic
aquatic	Hibernian	portable
benign	insular	rose
Britain	laudable	statue
feminine	magnify	via (<i>in time-tables</i>)
gratify	nautical	vocation

¹ That is, any verb form except the infinitives and participles.

² The use of the personal ending -m will be shown later.

LESSON VI

GENDER OF NOUNS: SECOND DECLENSION, **-UM** NOUNS:
AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

GENDER

52. In Latin, gender is only in part a distinction based on sex. Many nouns referring to objects without life are either masculine or feminine. For example, **silva** and **rosa** are feminine.

GENDER IN THE FIRST DECLENSION

53. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, with the exception of a few words which regularly denote men. **Agricola** and **nauta** belong to this class and are masculine.

THE SECOND DECLENSION, NEUTER NOUNS

54. Nouns ending in **-um** are of the Second Declension and are neuter in gender. They are declined as follows:

templum, N., *temple*

BASE, **templ-**

		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	templum,	<i>a temple</i>	-um
GEN.	templī,	<i>of a temple</i>	-ī
DAT.	templō,	<i>to or for a temple</i>	-ō
ACC.	templum,	<i>a temple</i>	-um
ABL.	templō,	<i>from, in, with a temple</i>	-ō

		PLURAL	
NOM.	templa,	<i>temples</i>	-a
GEN.	templōrum,	<i>of temples</i>	-ōrum
DAT.	templīs,	<i>to or for temples</i>	-īs
ACC.	templa,	<i>temples</i>	-a
ABL.	templīs,	<i>from, in, with temples</i>	-īs

a. The genitive ending **-ī** placed after a word in the vocabulary indicates that it is of the second declension.

AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

55. Adjectives agree with their nouns in gender and number, as well as in case.

templum magnum, a great temple.

silva magna, a great forest.

56.

VOCABULARY

dōnum , -ī, N., gift, present	sed , <i>conj.</i> , but
oppidum , -ī, N., town	stō , stāre , stand
periculum , -ī, N., danger	templum , -ī, N., temple
saxum , -ī, N., rock, stone	vītō , -āre, avoid

EXERCISES



57. 1. Agricola saxum magnum portat. 2. Templum pulchrum in insulā laudō. 3. In oppidō magnō habitāmus. 4. Dōnum grātum tibi nōn dant. 5. In insulā habitō, sed insula nōn mihi grāta est. 6. Agricola et nauta periculum nōn vītant. 7. Puellae in viā cum fēminā stant. 8. In viā oppidī cum filiā tuā ambulō.

58. 1. In the forest are large stones. 2. We give presents to the girls. 3. We are standing in the forest with the farmer. 4. Cornelia loves the woman, but she does not love the woman's daughter. 5. The woman gives a present to the sailor's daughter. 6. The sailor praises the beautiful town.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline the nouns **oppidum**, **saxum**, and **dōnum**. (2) Conjugate the verbs in the vocabulary of this lesson, in the present tense. (3) Decline together **saxum magnum**. (4) Decline together **silva magna**. (5) Point out the adjectives in 57 and give the reason for their forms. (6) Point out an indirect object in 58. (7) Give the case terminations of **templum**.

FIRST SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

The following Supplementary Reviews, which contain additional material for word study, may be substituted by teachers who wish to do so in place of the reviews following lessons 10, 20, 30, etc.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | | |
|--|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. agricola, -ae, M. | 9. exemplum, -ī, N. | 18. portō, -āre |
| 2. amīcitia, -ae, F. | 10. fāma, -ae, F. | 19. properō, -are |
| 3. amō, -āre | 11. fīlia, -ae, F. | 20. puella, -ae, F. |
| 4. cum, <i>prep. with</i>
<i>abl.</i> | 12. ignōrō, -āre | 21. sed, <i>conj.</i> |
| 5. dīligentia, -ae, F. | 13. īnsula, -ae, F. | 22. silva, -ae, F. |
| 6. dō, dare | 14. liberō, -āre | 23. temptō, -āre |
| 7. ē, ex, <i>prep. with</i>
<i>abl.</i> | 15. nōn, <i>adv.</i> | 24. via, -ae, F. |
| 8. et, <i>conj.</i> | 16. oppidum, -ī, N. | 25. villa, -ae, F. |
| | 17. perīculum, -ī, N. | 26. vocō, -āre |

-
- | | | |
|-----------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. farmer | 9. example, prece- | 18. carry |
| 2. friendship | dent | 19. hurry |
| 3. love | 10. reputation, report | 20. girl |
| 4. with | 11. daughter | 21. but |
| 5. painstaking, | 12. be ignorant of | 22. forest |
| care | 13. island | 23. test, try, |
| 6. give | 14. set free | attempt |
| 7. out from | 15. not | 24. highway, road |
| 8. and, also, | 16. town | 25. farmhouse |
| even | 17. trial, danger | 26. call |

WORD STUDY

1. We have seen (p. xvii) that many English words, such as *terminus*, *stimulus*, *veto*, *censor*, *census*, were originally Latin words, and have been taken into English without change of spelling. Others, such as *humble*, *count*, *blame*, *sure*, are greatly changed from their original Latin form, because they have not come directly from Latin, but were developed in French from Latin, with changed pronunciation and spelling,

and were taken from French into English. Some times the meaning as well as the form of these words has changed, but usually we can recognize the original meaning.

2. We often find a group of Latin words which are related in derivation and meaning. Thus, **amō**, **amor**, **amicus**, **amicitia**, **amābilis**, **inimicus**, **inimicitia** have a common element. We shall see later something of how Latin words are formed. We sometimes say that an English word is related in derivation to a certain Latin word, although it does not come directly from that word, but from another word which is derived from the Latin word given. Thus, we say the word *amiable* is related in derivation to the Latin **amō**, although it comes more directly from **amābilis**, which in turn is from **amō**. Some of the Latin words from which our English words are directly derived were not often used by good Latin writers, and therefore the derivation of the English word is more easily explained by a related Latin word of common use.

3. There are certain changes of spelling which we find in the development of English words from Latin. Thus, Latin words ending in **-tia** often give English words in **-ce** (occasionally **-cy**). For example, *temperance* is from **temperantia**, and *patience* from **patientia**. Other changes will be explained later.

In the following list of English words which are related to Latin words found in the vocabulary on the preceding page, look up in a dictionary the meaning of those which are not familiar.

4.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS¹

amiable	export	peninsula	tempt
diligence	fame	peril	via (in time
example	ignorant	porter	tables)
exemplary	insular	silvan	villa

¹ This list and similar lists which follow are not meant to be exhaustive. They may be extended by teachers who wish to do so.

LESSON VII

SECOND DECLENSION, **-US** AND **-IR** NOUNS: VOCATIVE FORMS: APPPOSITION: POSITION OF ADVERBSNOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION IN **-US** AND **-IR**

59. In addition to the neuter nouns ending in **-um**, the second declension has masculine nouns ending in **-us**, **-er**, and **-ir**. The declension of those which end in **-us** and **-ir** is as follows:

amicus, M., *friend*
BASE, **amic-**

vir, M., *man*
BASE, **vir-**

SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
		TERMINATIONS			TERMINATIONS
NOM.	amicus , <i>a friend</i>	-us	vir , <i>man</i>		—
GEN.	amicī , <i>of a friend</i> , etc.	-ī	virī , <i>of a man</i>		-ī
DAT.	amicō	-ō	virō		-ō
ACC.	amicum	-um	virum		-um
ABL.	amicō	-ō	virō		-ō
VOC.	amicē	-e			
PLURAL			PLURAL		
NOM.	amicī	-ī	virī		-ī
GEN.	amicōrum	-ōrum	virōrum		-ōrum
DAT.	amicīs	-īs	virīs		-īs
ACC.	amicōs	-ōs	virōs		-ōs
ABL.	amicīs	-īs	virīs		-īs

FORMS OF THE VOCATIVE

60. The vocative singular of nouns of the second declension in **-us** ends in **-e**. In all other Latin nouns the vocative singular is the same form as the nominative singular. The vocative plural of all nouns is the same as the nominative plural.

APPOSITION

61. A noun which serves to explain another noun referring to the same person or thing is said to be in Apposition with that noun.

Jones, *the captain* of the team, was hurt.

In this sentence, *captain* is in apposition with *Jones*.



THE APPIAN WAY IN THE TIME OF AUGUSTUS

THE CASE OF NOUNS IN APPPOSITION

62. A noun in apposition stands in the same case as the noun it explains.

Cornēlia, filia agricolae, benigna est, Cornelia, the farmer's daughter, is kind.

POSITION OF ADVERBS

63. An adverb usually stands before the word which it modifies.

64.

VOCABULARY

amicus, -ī, m., friend

cūr, *adv.*, why

errō, -āre, wander

labōrō, -āre, work

numquam, *adv.*, nevernunc, *adv.*, now

servus, -ī, m., slave

Sextus, -ī, m., Sextus, *name*
of a man

vir, virī, m., man

EXERCISES

65. 1. Cūr dōna nōn tibi grāta sunt? 2. Sextus, servus, cum agricolā labōrat. 3. Amīcus agricolae in silvā errat. 4. Cornēlia, filia nautae, nunc in oppidō est. 5. Amīcum Cornēliae numquam laudō. 6. Fīliam tuam, Sexte, laudō. 7. Servus in templō cum virō stat. 8. Virī mihi dōna dant. 9. Vir nauta est et in insulā habitat. 10. Agricola Sextum servum laudat.

66. 1. The slaves are wandering in the forest. 2. The man is standing in the street with the slave and the sailor. 3. Why is Sextus, the slave, working in the town? 4. Friend, you never praise your native country. 5. The man's native country is Ireland, but he lives in Great Britain.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Form the vocative singular of servus, Sextus, agricola, and fēmina. (2) Divide into syllables the words amīcōrum and agricolae and indicate the accent of each. (3) Point out the words used in apposition in 65. (4) Name the cases which have the same forms in the plural of masculine nouns of the second declension. (5) Point out the appositives (nouns in apposition) and the predicate nouns in the following sentences, and name the case in which each would stand in Latin: (a) Maynard, the captain, was a hero. (b) We saw William, the boy who had been hurt. (c) I gave the papers to the lawyer, the man standing by the table. (d) This plan was the work of Franklin, the printer.

LESSON VIII

SECOND DECLENSION, **-ER** NOUNS: PRESENT INDICATIVE
OF **SUM**: THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION IN **-ER**

67. Second declension nouns in **-er** are declined thus:

puer, M., *boy*

BASE, **puer-**

ager, M., *field*

BASE, **agr-**

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	puer	puerī
GEN.	puerī	puerōrum
DAT.	puerō	puerīs
ACC.	puerum	puerōs
ABL.	puerō	puerīs

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	ager	agrī
GEN.	agrī	agrōrum
DAT.	agrō	agrīs
ACC.	agrū	agrōs
ABL.	agrō	agrīs

68. The case terminations of the second declension are:

SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	-us, -er, -ir	-um	NOM.	-ī	-a
GEN.	-ī	-ī	GEN.	-ōrum	-ōrum
DAT.	-ō	-ō	DAT.	-īs	-īs
ACC.	-um	-um	ACC.	-ōs	-a
ABL.	-ō	-ō	ABL.	-īs	-īs

(Vocative singular, **-e** in nouns ending in **-us**)

69. The genitive printed after a word in the vocabulary will show whether or not the **e** of the nominative appears in the other cases.

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE OF **SUM**

70. The irregular verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
1. sum ,	<i>I am</i>	1. sumus ,	<i>we are</i>
2. es ,	<i>you are</i>	2. estis ,	<i>you are</i>
3. est ,	<i>he, she, it is</i>	3. sunt ,	<i>they are</i>

a. The present infinitive is **esse**, *to be*.

THE EXPLETIVE "THERE"

71. The English word *there* is often used as an expletive; that is, it serves merely to introduce the sentence and has no adverbial force (no idea of place). In this use it has no equivalent in Latin, and is to be supplied in translation when the sense requires; **est periculum** may be translated, *there is danger*.

72.

VOCABULARY

accūsō, -āre , accuse, censure	puer, puerī , M., boy
ager, agrī , M., field	quod, conj. , because
liber, librī , M., book	tēlum, -ī , N., weapon
mūrus, -ī , M., wall	ubi, adv. , where, when

EXERCISES

73. 1. Puer in (*on*) mūrō ambulat. 2. Vir puerōs accūsāt quod in agrō sunt. 3. Cūr puerī et puellae librōs portant? 4. Amīcus puerōrum et puellārum es. 5. Vir puellae bonae librum dat. 6. Perīculum virōrum et puerōrum est magnum. 7. In silvā cum puerīs sumus. 8. Ubi liber puerī est?

74. 1. The boys are walking on the island with the sailor. 2. There is danger in the forest. 3. The men are carrying weapons because there is danger. 4. The woman praises the roses and the books. 5. The boy is walking in the field and is carrying a stone. 6. Where does the sailor's friend live?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Distinguish between the use of *there* as an expletive and as an adverb in the following sentences: (a) I lived there two years. (b) I did not stop, because there was no one at home. (c) There was thought to be no hope. (2) Form two English sentences containing appositives and explain the case use of the appositives. (3) Point out the case endings of the nouns in sentences 3, 4, 6, 7, 73. (4) Give the accusative plural of **liber**, **puer**, and **tēlum**. (5) Give the vocative singular of **amīcus** and **puer**.

LESSON IX

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES: IRREGULAR
GENITIVE AND VOCATIVE FORMS

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

75. There are many adjectives which have their masculine and neuter forms in the second declension and their feminine forms in the first declension. Those having the masculine ending in **-us** are declined as follows:

bonus, -a, -um, good

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō
VOC.	bone	bona	bonum

	PLURAL		
NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

The adjectives **benignus**, **grātus**, and **magnus**, the feminine forms of which have been given, are declined like **bonus**.

IRREGULAR GENITIVES OF THE SECOND DECLENSION

76. Nouns ending in **-ium** or **-ius** regularly form the genitive singular by replacing **-ium** or **-ius** by **-ī**: **beneficium**, gen., **beneficī**; **filius**, gen., **fili**. These shortened genitive forms are accented on the syllable before the last: **benefi'cī**. Adjectives are not thus contracted.

IRREGULAR VOCATIVE FORMS

77. Proper nouns ending in **-ius** and also the common noun **filius** regularly form the vocative singular in the same manner as the genitive singular; hence **fili** may be either genitive singular or vocative singular.

78.

VOCABULARY

beneficium , beneficī , N., kindness, favor	multus , -a , -um , much; <i>in the plural</i> , many
filius , fili , M., son	oculus , -ī , M., eye
lātus , -a , -um , wide, broad	porta , -ae , F., gate
longus , -a , -um , long	saepe , <i>adv.</i> , often

a. The forms of the adjective **multus** precede the noun: **Multi virī**, *many men*. This is true in general of words which express an idea of quantity.

EXERCISES

79. 1. **Oculī puellae magnī sunt**. 2. **Portae oppidī sunt lātae**. 3. **Amīcus benignus saepe dōna dat**. 4. **Cūr nōn patriam tuam amās?** 5. **Agricola in agrō magnō labōrat**. 6. **Viae oppidī longae et lātae sunt**. 7. **Multi virī in Britannīā habitant**. 8. **Puerī bonī estis et labōrātis**. 9. **Beneficia amīcōrum sunt grāta**.

80. 1. Why do you walk in the street? 2. The island is long but it is not wide. 3. The girl is carrying many roses. 4. The sons of the sailor live in Ireland. 5. The wall of the town is not long. 6. The farmer often praises the good slaves.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **vir benignus**. (2) Decline together **ager lātus**. (3) Give the genitive singular and the accusative plural of the phrase **auxilium magnum**. (4) Decline together **filius bonus**. (5) Give the nominative plural of **longus** in the three genders. (6) Decline together the words meaning *many books*.

LESSON X

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (Continued):
POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

ADJECTIVES IN -ER OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

81. Some adjectives of the first and second declensions have the masculine singular nominative ending in **-er**. Of these, some are declined by adding the case endings to the nominative singular of the masculine. In others the **e** before **r** appears only in the nominative and vocative singular of the masculine.

miser, -a, -um, unhappy

		SINGULAR	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	miser	misera	miserum
GEN.	miserī	miserae	miserī
DAT.	miserō	miserae	miserō
ACC.	miserum	miseram	miserum
ABL.	miserō	miserā	miserō

miseri-al PLURAL a

NOM.	miserī	miserae	misera
GEN.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
DAT.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
ACC.	miserōs	miserās	misera
ABL.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful

		SINGULAR	
NOM.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
GEN.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
DAT.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
ACC.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
ABL.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

PLURAL

NOM.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
GEN.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
DAT.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
ACC.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
ABL.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

82. The adjective does not always have the same ending as the noun with which it agrees.

The use of adjectives with masculine nouns of the first declension is as follows:

nauta bonus, *the good sailor*.

SINGULAR

PLURAL

NOM.	nauta bonus	nautae bonī
GEN.	nautae bonī	nautārum bonōrum
DAT.	nautae bonō	nautīs bonīs
ACC.	nautam bonum	nautās bonōs
ABL.	nautā bonō	nautīs bonīs
VOC.	nauta bone	nautae bonī

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES

83. The possessive words **meus**, *my* or *mine*, **tuus**, *your* (referring to one person), **noster**, *our*, and **vester**, *your* (referring to more than one person) are adjectives, and are declined throughout. They take their gender, number, and case from the thing possessed and not from the persons to whom they refer as possessors.

liber meus, *my book*.

rosa mea, *my rose*.

dōnum meum, *my gift*.

a. The vocative of **meus** in the masculine singular is **mī**. **Tuus** has no vocative.

84.

VOCABULARY

auxilium, auxiliī, N., aid, help,
assistance

equus, -ī, M., horse

impiger, impigra, impigrum,
energetic, industrious

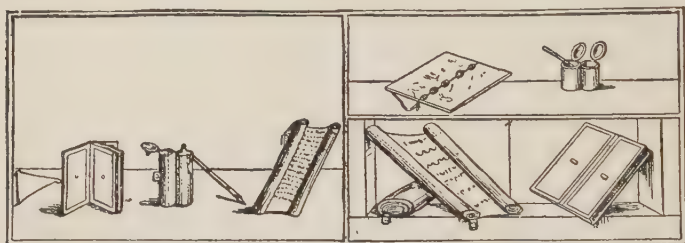
liber, libera, liberum, free

miser, misera, miserum, un-
happy, unfortunate

noster, nostra, nostrum, our,
ours

piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy

postulō, -āre, demand



ROMAN WRITING MATERIALS

EXERCISES

85. 1. Virī auxilium nostrum postulant quod periculum magnum est. 2. Amīcus noster equum pulchrum tuum laudat. 3. Fēmina misera est quod puerī pigrī sunt. 4. Agricola impiger cum servō labōrat. 5. Servus miser est quod nōn liber est. 6. Puer bonus es et amīcōs tuōs amās. 7. Amīcī virōrum benignī sunt. 8. Aquam nōn portātis quod pigrī estis.

86. 1. A good slave is not lazy. 2. Your daughter loves beautiful horses. 3. The kind farmer praises the boy. 4. We often praise the good sailor. 5. We are unhappy because our friends are in danger.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **nauta miser**. (2) Give the genitive singular and the vocative singular of the phrase meaning *my son*. (3) Decline together **servus piger**. (4) Decline **noster** in full. (5) Give all the endings of the second declension in the nominative singular.

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

87.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

ager, agrī, M.	saxum, -ī, N.	dō, dare ¹
agricola, -ae, M.	servus, -ī, M.	errō, -āre
amicitia, -ae, F.	silva, -ae, F.	habitō, -āre
amicus, -ī, M.	tēlum, -ī, N.	labōrō, -āre
aqua, -ae, F.	templum, -ī, N.	portō, -āre
auxilium, -ī, N.	via, -ae, F.	postulō, -āre
beneficium, -ī, N.	vir, virī, M.	stō, stāre
dōnum, -ī, N.	benignus, -a, -um	sum, esse
equus, -ī, M.	bonus, -a, -um	vītō, -āre
fēmina, -ae, F.	grātus, -a, -um	vocō, -āre
fīlia, -ae, F.	lātus, -a, -um	eūr
fīlius, -ī, M.	liber, libera, liberum	nōn
liber, librī, M.	magnus, -a, -um	numquam
mūrus, -ī, M.	meus, mea, meum	nunc
nauta, -ae, M.	miser, misera, miserum	saepe
oculus, -ī, M.	multus, -a, -um	cum
oppidum, -ī, N.	noster, nostra, nostrum	ē, ex
patria, -ae, F.	piger, pigra, pigrum	in
perīculum, -ī, N.	pulcher, -chra, -chrum	et
porta, -ae, F.	tuus, tua, tuum	quod
puella, -ae, F.	accūsō, -āre	sed
puer, puerī, M.	amō, -āre	ubi

88.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

accusation	error	mural
agriculture	filial	oculist
amicable	laborious	peril
auxiliary	liberty	puerile
beneficial	library	servant
donation	miserable	temple
equine	multiply	station

¹ The verb *do* is irregular in that the *a* is short in the infinitive (45, *o*) and in almost all the other forms except the second person singular, *dās*.



ROMAN MATRONS OFFERING GIFTS

LESSON XI

DEMONSTRATIVES: DECLENSION OF **HIC**: POSITION OF DEMONSTRATIVES

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

89. The demonstratives in Latin, like their most general English equivalents, *this* and *that*, are used to point out objects without describing them.

DECLENSION OF **HIC**

90. The forms of the demonstrative **hic**, *this*, pointing out an object near at hand, are as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

91. The demonstratives may be used as adjectives or as pronouns. As adjectives they agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns to which they belong. As pronouns they agree in gender and number with the nouns to which they refer, but their case is determined by their use in the clauses in which they stand.

POSITION OF DEMONSTRATIVES

92. Demonstrative adjectives, like words which express quantity (78, *a*), unless especially emphasized, precede the nouns to which they belong: **hic vir**, *this man*. This is also true of words which denote number.

93.

VOCABULARY

bellum, -ī, N., war

dēmōnstrō, -āre, show, point
outhīc, haec, hoc, this, *pl.* theselēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant,
envoylocus, -ī, M. (*usually neuter in
the plural*), placevester, -tra, -trum, your, of
more than one

vulnerō, -āre, wound

EXERCISES

94. 1. Hī virī bonī bellum nōn laudant. 2. Lēgātus hoc perīculum vītāt. 3. Hunc locum amō ubi amīcī vestrī habitant. 4. Hae puellae numquam magna dōna postulant. 5. Huic agricolae bellum nōn grātum est. 6. Cūr amīcum tuum vulnerās? 7. Filia huius virī impigrī nōn impigra est. 8. Hanc puellam laudāmus quod labōrat. 9. Amīcī huius fēminae ex hōc oppidō properant. 10. Hic nauta benignus perīculum dēmōnstrat.

95. 1. We are hastening from the forest with our friends. 2. This girl loves the farmer's daughter. 3. This gift is not pleasing to you. 4. The slave wounds the sailor. 5. There is a large forest on this island. 6. This man points out the forest. 7. Boys, your friends are in great danger.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **hic ager**. (2) Decline together **haec silva**. (3) Decline together the words meaning *this sailor*. (4) In the following sentences state which occurrences of *your* will be translated by a form of **tuus**, and which by a form of **vester**: (a) Soldiers, your courage has saved us. (b) Mary, where are your books? (c) Your cap has fallen on the ground. (d) Gentlemen, we need your help. (e) Your hand is small.

LESSON XII

FIRST CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE:
ABLATIVE OF AGENT

THE PASSIVE VOICE

96. The passive voice represents the subject of the clause as acted upon.

Puer laudātur, the boy is praised.

97. The passive forms of **portō** in the present tense, indicative mood, are as follows:

SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
portor, <i>I am carried</i>	-r (-or)
portāris or portāre, <i>you are carried</i>	-ris (-re)
portātur, <i>he, she, it is carried</i>	-tur
PLURAL	
portāmur, <i>we are carried</i>	-mur
portāminī, <i>you are carried</i>	-minī
portantur, <i>they are carried</i>	-ntur

a. The passive present forms may also be translated, *I am being carried, you are being carried, etc.*

THE ABLATIVE OF AGENT

98. With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which indicates the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative case, governed by the preposition **ā** or **ab**. This is called the Ablative of Agent.

Liber ā puerō portātur, the book is carried by the boy.

a. There are three points to be noted with regard to the ablative of agent: (1) It always has a preposition. (2) It is used only with a passive verb. (3) It regularly denotes a *person*.

99.

VOCABULARY

<i>ā, ab</i> , ¹ <i>prep. with abl.</i> , from, by	<i>impigrē, adv.</i> , industriously,
<i>carrus, -ī, m.</i> , cart	energetically
<i>cōnsilium, -ī, n.</i> , plan, counsel, advice	<i>iuuō, -āre</i> , help, assist
<i>expectō, -āre</i> , wait for, expect	<i>probō, -āre</i> , approve, approve of

EXERCISES

100. 1. Bellum longum ab hīs virīs nōn expectātur. 2. Hoc cōnsilium ā multis puerīs probātur. 3. Laudāris quod impigrē labōrās. 4. Ab amicīs tuīs iuvāmur et laudāmur. 5. Multa tēla ab hīs puerīs portantur. 6. Haec puella laudātur quod impigrē labōrat. 7. Perīculum ā lēgātō numquam vitātur. 8. Carrus agricolae in viā est. 9. Hic nauta auxilium postulat quod in perīculō est. 10. Saxa magna ab hōc agricolā portantur.

101. 1. The slave is helped by this kind man. 2. Gifts are expected by many boys. 3. This plan is praised because it is good. 4. The good farmer praises these horses. 5. This sailor now works energetically. 6. This boy's cart is not large. 7. We approve of your plan and we are your friends.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Conjugate the verbs of the vocabulary in the present passive. (2) Point out the examples of the ablative of agent in the sentences of 100. (3) Point out the personal endings of the verbs in 100. (4) Decline together *hoc cōnsilium*. (5) Distinguish between the active and the passive voice in the following phrases: (a) He is praised, he is praising, he is being praised. (b) He is working, he approves, he is called.

¹ Before vowels or *h*, *ab* is used, before most consonants, *ā*.

LESSON XIII

ILLE AND IPSE: ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

DECLENSION OF ILLE

102. The demonstrative *ille*, *that*, is used to refer to an object which is somewhat remote from the speaker in time, place, or thought. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	illī	illī	illī	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	illō	illā	illō	illīs	illīs	illīs

DECLENSION OF IPSE

103. The intensive pronoun *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *myself*, *yourself*, is used to emphasize a noun or another pronoun, with which it agrees. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

THE ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

104. The use of the ablative with *cum* to name the person with whom one is associated in doing an act is called the Ablative of Accompaniment.

Cum amīcō ambulō, *I walk with a friend.*

105.

VOCABULARY

convocō, -āre , call together	numerus, -ī, m. , number
ille, illa, illud , that (<i>pl.</i> those); <i>as pron.</i> , he, she, it (<i>pl.</i> they)	parvus, -a, -um , small
ipse, ipsa, ipsum , himself, her- self, <i>etc.</i> ; <i>pl.</i> themselves, <i>etc.</i>	semper, adv. , always
	vix, adv. , scarcely, with diffi- culty

EXERCISES

106. 1. Ille puer piger est, hic vir impiger est. 2. Illud saxum ā virō ipsō vix portātur. 3. Servus ipse impigrē labōrat. 4. Perīculum illī virō semper grātum est. 5. Puer magnum numerum amīcōrum convocat. 6. Illa silva magna in insulā est. 7. In illō oppidō cum amīcīs habitāmus. 8. Oppidum ipsum nōn grātum est. 9. Illa puella parva librōs amat. 10. Fīlia illius fēminae benigna est.

107. 1. The boy himself always works. 2. The small temple is praised by my friend. 3. Those girls are not always lazy. 4. We avoid the danger with difficulty. 5. The man himself calls together a large number of small boys. 6. The walls of those towns are large. 7. That farmer always loves good horses. 8. The small boy is helped by the energetic farmer.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Write two Latin sentences containing ablatives of accompaniment, using the verbs **labōrō** and **stō**. (2) Point out an ablative of accompaniment and an ablative of agent in the sentences of 106. (3) Decline together **illa statua**. (4) Decline together the words meaning *that farmer*. (5) Give the accusative singular and plural of **hic** in all genders.

SECOND SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ā, ab, <i>prep. with abl.</i> <i>level</i> | 23. locus, -ī, M. (<i>pl. loca,</i>
-ōrum, N.) |
| 2. aequus, -a, -um | 24. longus, -a, -um |
| 3. ager, agrī, M. | 25. magnus, -a, -um |
| 4. amīcus, -a, -um (<i>as noun,</i>
amīcus, -ī, M.) | 26. meus, -a, -um |
| 5. auxilium, -ī, N. <i>help</i> | 27. multus, -a, -um |
| 6. barbarus, -a, -um | 28. noster, -tra, -trum |
| 7. bellum, -ī, N. | 29. numerus, -ī, M. |
| 8. beneficium, -ī, N. | 30. nunc, <i>adv.</i> |
| 9. bonus, -a, -um | 31. parvus, -a, -um |
| 10. cōsilium, -ī, N. | 32. porta, -ae, F. |
| 11. convocō, -āre | 33. puer, puerī, M. |
| 12. cūr, <i>adv.</i> | 34. pulcher, -chra, -chrum |
| 13. dēmōnstrō, -āre | 35. quod, <i>conj.</i> |
| 14. equus, -ī, M. | 36. sacer, -era, -crum <i>sacred.</i> |
| 15. exspectō, -āre <i>wait</i> | 37. servus, -ī, M. |
| 16. hic, haec, hoc (<i>adv. hīc</i>) | 38. sum, esse <i>be</i> |
| 17. fīlius, -ī, M. | 39. tuus, -a, -um <i>your</i> |
| 18. ille, illa, illud <i>that</i> | 40. ubi, <i>adv.</i> |
| 19. ipse, ipsa, ipsum <i>him</i> | 41. vester, -tra, -trum <i>your</i> |
| 20. labōrō, -āre | 42. vir, virī, M. |
| 21. liber, librī, M. <i>book</i> | 43. vīvus, -a, -um <i>alive</i> |
| 22. liber, libera, liberum <i>free</i> | 44. vulnerō, -āre |

-
- | | |
|--|---------------------------|
| 1. away from, by | 8. kindness |
| 2. level, even, just, fair | 9. good. |
| 3. field | 10. advice, plan |
| 4. friendly (<i>as noun, friend</i>) | 11. call together, summon |
| 5. aid, help | 12. why |
| 6. foreign, barbarous | 13. point out, show |
| 7. war | 14. horse |

15. expect, wait, await	30. now
16. this (<i>as adj.</i>) ; he (<i>as pron.</i>) ; (<i>adv.</i> here)	31. small
17. son	32. gate
18. that, he	33. boy
19. self, the very	34. beautiful
20. labor, suffer	35. because
21. book	36. sacred
22. free	37. slave
23. place	38. be
24. long	39. your (<i>of one person</i>)
25. large	40. where, when
26. my, mine	41. your (<i>of more than one person</i>)
27. much, many	42. man, hero
28. our	43. alive
29. number	44. wound

WORD STUDY

1. In the previous supplementary lesson we have seen certain changes in the spelling of some Latin words which have been brought into English. Another change is that from **ae** to *e* as seen in the derivation of *equal*, and other words from **aequus**. Also, there are certain Latin words beginning with **ex** followed by **s**, in which the related English word omits *s*. Thus, *exist* is from Latin **exsistō**. Sometimes, however, these Latin words are spelled without **s**.

2.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

agriculture	equestrian	magnify
amicable	expect	numeral
auxiliary	filial	puerile
belligerent	laborious	virile
counsel	liberty	vivacious
equalize	library	vulnerable

NOTE.—For form of note books to be used in word study, see page 314.

LESSON XIV

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS: PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE
SECOND CONJUGATION: ABLATIVE OF PLACE

THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS

108. There are four conjugations of verbs in Latin. They are distinguished by the final vowel of the present stem. The termination of the present active infinitive shows to which conjugation a verb belongs.

	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Termination</i>	<i>Characteristic Vowel</i>
I.	portāre	-āre	ā
II.	monēre	-ēre	ē
III.	dūcere	-ere	e
IV.	audīre	-īre	ī

PRESENT INDICATIVE OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION

109. The characteristic vowel of the second conjugation, **ē**, appears in all the forms of the present tense. It becomes short before another vowel and before the personal endings **-t**, **-nt**, and **-ntur**. (The same change of quantity takes place in the other conjugations when a long vowel is followed by another vowel or by the endings given above.)

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
moneō, <i>I warn, am warning, etc.</i>	moneor, <i>I am warned</i>
monēs, <i>you warn, etc.</i>	monēris, <i>-re, you are warned</i>
monet, <i>he, she, it warns, etc.</i>	monētur, <i>he, she, it is warned</i>
PLURAL	PLURAL
monēmus, <i>we warn</i>	monēmur, <i>we are warned</i>
monētis, <i>you warn</i>	monēmini, <i>you are warned</i>
monent, <i>they warn</i>	monentur, <i>they are warned</i>

a. The personal endings are the same as in the first conjugation.

THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE

110. The use of the ablative with **in** to refer to the place where something is or is done is called the Ablative of Place or the Locative Ablative.

111.

VOCABULARY

domicilium, -ī, N., home,
dwelling place, residence

habeō, -ēre, have

iniūria, -ae, F., injury

Italia, -ae, F., Italy

moneō, -ēre, warn, advise,
remind

proelium, -ī, N., battle

timeō, -ēre, fear

videō, -ēre, see

EXERCISES

112. 1. Hunc puerum pigrum monēmus. 2. Illum puerum impigrum semper laudāmus. 3. Iniūriae tuae multae sunt. 4. Ille puer parvus equum magnum timet. 5. Perīculum ab illō virō nōn timētur. 6. Puella saepe in silvā ambulat et ab agricolā vidētur. 7. Hic vir in proeliō nōn timet. 8. Cūr hoc perīculum magnum nōn vidēs? 9. Italia ā multīs amātur et laudātur. 10. Agricola bonus semper equōs bonōs habet. 11. Domicilium meum in illā insulā est.

113. 1. We do not live in Italy. 2. The sailors see the small island. 3. The boys are walking with the sailor and do not fear danger. 4. The man is feared because he has a weapon. 5. We are in danger and we are warned by our friends. 6. They see the town where you live. 7. My friend has a residence in this town.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the reason for the case of each noun in sentences 5, 6, and 7, of 113. (2) Indicate the personal endings of the verbs in sentences 8, 9, and 10, 112. (3) Conjugate **timeō** and **videō** in the present indicative, active and passive. (4) Give the genitive plural and the accusative plural of **iniūria** and **proelium**. (5) Give the genitive singular of the words meaning *this kindness*.



ROMAN FESTIVAL PROCESSION

LESSON XV

IMPERFECT, INDICATIVE ACTIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: *HIC* AND *ILLE* AS CORRELATIVESTHE IMPERFECT¹ INDICATIVE ACTIVE

114. The imperfect tense of the indicative mood represents an act as going on or a situation as existing at a past time.

Vocābam, I was calling.

It is sometimes translated by the simple form of the past tense, *I called*.



ENTRANCE TO A ROMAN FORTIFIED CAMP

¹ This tense is sometimes called the "past" or (in the indicative mood) the "past descriptive." Teachers who prefer to employ either of these names instead of "imperfect" for this tense in connection with the paradigms and exercises which are given in this book may easily indicate the change which is desired by a general direction to the pupils.

115. The imperfect tense is formed on the present stem. It has the tense sign **bā** connecting the stem and the personal endings. In the active the vowel **ā** becomes short before the endings **-m**, **-t**, and **-nt**.

The endings are the same as in the present tense, except that the first person singular ends in **-m**. **Portō** and **moneō** are conjugated in the imperfect indicative active as follows:

SINGULAR

portābam, *I was carrying or I carried*
 portābās, *you were carrying, you carried*
 portābat, *he, she, it was carrying, he carried, etc.*

PLURAL

portābāmus, *we were carrying, we carried*
 portābātis, *you were carrying, you carried*
 portābant, *they were carrying, they carried*

SINGULAR

monēbam, *I was warning or I warned*
 monēbās, *you were warning, you warned*
 monēbat, *he, she, it was warning, etc.*

PLURAL

monēbāmus, *we were warning, etc.*
 monēbātis, *you were warning, etc.*
 monēbant, *they were warning, etc.*

CORRELATIVE USE OF **HIC** AND **ILLE**

116. The forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used in the same sentence to refer to contrasted persons or things. In this use **ille** is regularly translated *the former* and **hic** *the latter*.

Puer et puella labōrant. Ille impiger, haec pigra est.

The boy and the girl are working. The former is industrious, the latter is lazy.

117.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, -āre, approach	Rōmānus, -ī, M., a Roman
castra, -ōrum, N., <i>pl.</i> , camp	rūrsus, <i>adv.</i> , again
maneō, -ēre, remain	sine, <i>prep. with abl.</i> , without
moveō, -ēre, move	tum, <i>adv.</i> , then, at that time

EXERCISES

118. Puer ipse saxum portābat. 2. Tum Rōmānī castra in silvā habēbant. 3. Statuam ex illō locō rūrsus movēbant. 4. Lēgātum et filium agricolae vidēō. Hic in agrō labōrat, ille in viā stat. 5. Hic vir nunc auxilium postulat quod sine amīcō est. 6. In oppidō manēbāmus quod amīcī nostrī appropinquābant.

119. 1. The Romans themselves loved Italy. 2. We feared injury because we did not have many friends. 3. The stones in the street are large and we walk with difficulty. 4. Then the sailor was living on the large island, now he is living in the town. 5. Sextus was calling together the boys again.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **appropinquō** and **moveō** in the imperfect indicative active. (2) Decline the words which mean *a large camp*. (3) Indicate the tense signs and the personal endings of the verbs of sentences 1, 2, 3, and 6, 118. (4) Decline together **hic Rōmānus**. (5) Decline together **puer ipse**. (6) Give the third person singular in the present and the imperfect indicative active of the verbs in the vocabularies of Lessons XIV and XV.

Test.

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

120. (1) The second declension of nouns.
 (2) Gender in the first and second declensions.
 (3) Adjectives of the first and second declensions.
 (4) The agreement of adjectives.
 (5) The declension of **hic** and **ille**.
 (6) The position of demonstratives.
 (7) Possessive adjectives.
 (8) The first conjugation, present indicative passive, imperfect indicative active.
 (9) The second conjugation, present indicative, active and passive, imperfect indicative active.
 (10) Apposition.
 (11) The ablative of agent.
 (12) The ablative of accompaniment.
 (13) Terminations of the second declension.
 (14) Terminations of adjectives, first and second declensions:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	-us, -er	-a	-um	-ī	-ae	-a
GEN.	-ī	-ae	-ī	-ōrum	-ārum	-ōrum
DAT.	-ō	-ae	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs
ACC.	-um	-am	-um	-ōs	-ās	-a
ABL.	-ō	-ā	-ō	-īs	-īs	-īs

Vocative singular **-e** in **-us** masculine forms.

121. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

admonition	expectation	numeral
belligerent	injury	numerous
car	Italian	probable
convocation	legation	Roman
demonstration	location	timid
domicile	move	vulnerable

LESSON XVI

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*. DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBSTHE DEMONSTRATIVE *IS*

122. In addition to the demonstratives *hic* and *ille*, there is a third demonstrative, *is*, translated *this* or *that*, as the sense of the sentence in which it stands may require. It does not emphasize the idea that the thing to which it refers is near, as does *hic*, or that it is remote, as does *ille*. Usually it refers to something which has been recently mentioned. It is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eī (iī)</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
GEN.	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>
ACC.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
ABL.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>	<i>eīs (iīs)</i>

Is ager lātus est, this (or that) field is broad.

Amīcī eius puerī multī sunt, the friends of this (or that) boy are many.

In eā insulā magnum oppidum est, on this (or that) island there is a large town.

IS AS A PRONOUN

123. The word *is* frequently serves as a personal pronoun of the third person, and is translated by a form of *he*, *she*, *it*, or (in the plural) *they*, as the meaning of the sentence requires.

Eum vidēbam, I saw him.

Amīcus eius benignus est, his (or her) friend is kind.

Eī multa dōna dās, you give him (or her) many gifts.

Amīcitiam eōrum dēsīderāmus, we desire their friendship, etc.

a. The genitives **eius** and **eōrum** (as pronouns) may either precede or follow the nouns on which they depend.

THE DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS ¹

124. Some verbs, the meanings of which suggest the idea of *quality*, *attitude*, or *relation*, are followed by the dative, although the equivalent English verbs take a direct object.

Equus tibi placet, *the horse pleases you.*

125. The most important verbs of this class which govern the dative are those meaning to *favor*, *please*, *trust*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *spare*, and *persuade*.



VICTIMS FOR A ROMAN SACRIFICE

126.

VOCABULARY

fortiter, *adv.*, bravely

Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul (*a name formerly given France, including part of the country on the north and northeast*)

Gallus, -ī, *m.*, a Gaul (*an inhabitant of the country of Gaul*)

is, *ea*, **id**, *this, that; as pron.*,

he, she, it

ōlim, *adv.*, formerly

persuādeō, -ēre, *with dative*,
persuade

placeō, -ēre, *with dative*,
please

pugnō, -āre, fight

¹ In the case of some of these verbs, the original meaning which made natural the use of the dative is not readily seen in translation. For example, **persuādeō**, *persuade*, meant *make attractive (to)*.

EXERCISES

127. 1. Domicilium eius in Galliā est. 2. Fīlia eius viri misera est. 3. Galli castra movēbant quod Rōmānī appropinquābant. 4. Iniūriae eōrum magnae sunt. 5. Cūr eī puellae librōs dās? 6. Ōlim hī puerī labōrābant et eōs laudābāmus. 7. Hae puellae pigrae sunt sed librī eīs placent. 8. Galli et Rōmānī in eō proeliō fortiter pugnābant. 9. Amīcō meō nōn persuādēs.

128. 1. Their friends remained in town. 2. The girl is kind and her friends are many. 3. We ourselves often praise her. 4. The man persuaded this boy with difficulty. 5. Your plan does not please these men. 6. Why does not my plan please them?

 SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out those forms of **is** which are used as pronouns and those which are used as adjectives in the sentences of 127. (2) Explain the case of **eīs** in sentence 7 and of **amīcō** in sentence 9, 127. (3) Decline **is liber**. (4) Conjugate **pugnō** and **persuādeō** in the imperfect indicative, active. (5) Give the genitive singular of the three demonstratives, **hic**, **ille**, and **is**.

LESSON XVII

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS: ABLATIVE OF MEANS

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

129. The imperfect indicative passive of the first and second conjugations is formed as follows:

SINGULAR	SINGULAR
portābar, <i>I was being carried or I was carried</i>	monēbar
portābāris, -re, <i>you were being carried, etc.</i>	monēbāris, -re
portābātur, <i>he was being carried, etc.</i>	monēbātur
PLURAL	PLURAL
portābāmur, <i>we were being carried, etc.</i>	monēbāmur
portābāminī, <i>you were being carried, etc.</i>	monēbāminī
portābantur, <i>they were being carried, etc.</i>	monēbantur

a. The only difference between the active and the passive forms of this tense is in the personal endings. The *ā* of the tense sign becomes short before the endings *-r* and *-ntur*.

THE ABLATIVE OF MEANS

130. The means or instrument with which an act is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This is called the Ablative of Means.

Galli gladiis pugnant, *the Gauls fight with swords.*

Puer saxō vulnerātur, *the boy is wounded by the stone.*

131. In translating the ablative of means into English, a preposition, *by* or *with*, is used. This use of the case is to be distinguished from the ablative of agent, which refers to the person by whom the act is done, and which always takes *ā* or *ab*, and from the ablative of accompaniment, which regularly takes *cum*.

132.

VOCABULARY

augeō, -ēre, increase

gladius, -ī, M., sword

longē, *adv.*, far, at a distance

necō, -āre, kill

poena, -ae, F., punishment

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow

studeō, -ēre, *with dat.*, desire

terreō, -ēre, frighten, terrify



ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

EXERCISES



133. 1. Puer equum sagittā vulnerat. 2. Eī virī gladiīs pugnant. 3. Poena ab eīs nōn timēbātur. 4. Perīculum augēbātur et ab amīcīs nōn iuvābāmur. 5. Gallī multōs Rōmānōs sagittīs necābant. 6. Puellae parvae terrēbantur et ex silvā properābant. 7. Castra ā lēgātō movēbantur quod is perīculum vidēbat. 8. Tum longē ab oppidō domicilium habēbāmus. 9. Hī puerī dōnīs multis student.

134. 1. You (*plur.*) were often warned by him, but you did not fear. 2. Formerly Italy was praised by many. 3. The boys were fighting with stones. 4. We were helping the boys by our advice. 5. The Gauls were often wounded in battle by arrows. 6. Your plan was approved, but your friends did not give aid. 7. We do not desire war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the examples of the ablative of means and also of the ablative of agent in 133. (2) Explain the case of dōnīs in sentence 9, 133. (3) In the following sentences tell what use of the ablative would be employed to translate the prepositional phrases: (a) He walked with his father. (b) He struck the horse with a stick. (4) Give the third person singular in the present indicative passive and imperfect indicative passive of necō and terreō.

LESSON XVIII

FUTURE INDICATIVE, ACTIVE AND PASSIVE, FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE FUTURE TENSE

135. The future tense is formed on the present stem. In the first and second conjugations a tense sign, **bi**, is added to this stem. This tense sign becomes **bu** in the third person plural active and passive, and **be** in the second person singular passive. The **i** of the tense sign disappears before the endings **-ō** and **-or** in the first person singular.

The conjugation of **moneō** and **portō** in the future indicative, active and passive, is as follows:

ACTIVE	
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
portābō, <i>I shall carry</i>	monēbō, <i>I shall warn</i>
portābis, <i>you will carry</i>	monēbis, <i>you will warn</i>
portābit, <i>he will carry</i>	monēbit, <i>he will warn</i>
PLURAL	PLURAL
portābimus, <i>we shall carry</i>	monēbimus, <i>we shall warn</i>
portābitis, <i>you will carry</i>	monēbitis, <i>you will warn</i>
portābunt, <i>they will carry</i>	monēbunt, <i>they will warn</i>
PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	SINGULAR
portābor, <i>I shall be carried</i>	monēbor, <i>I shall be warned</i>
portāberis, <i>-re</i>	monēberis, <i>-re</i>
portābitur	monēbitur
PLURAL	PLURAL
portābimur	monēbimur
portābiminī	monēbiminī
portābuntur	monēbuntur

136.

VOCABULARY

arma, -ōrum, *N., pl.*, arms,
weapons

compleō, -ēre, fill, fill up

faveō, -ēre, *with dative*, favor

fossa, -ae, *F.*, ditch

oppugnō, -āre, attack

scūtum, -ī, *N.*, shield

superō, -āre, defeat, over-
come

tamen, *adv.*, nevertheless, still

EXERCISES



ROMAN
SHIELD

137. 1. Amīcī meī monēbuntur quod perīcū-
lum magnum est. 2. Ilī servī arma portābunt sed
nōn ipsī pugnābunt. 3. Gallī fortiter pugnant
sed superābuntur. 4. Agricola fossam saxīs com-
plēbit. 5. Illud oppidum ā Rōmānīs oppugnā-
bitur. 6. In eō proeliō fortiter pugnābant sed
tamen superābantur. 7. In oppidō multōs amīcōs
vidēbimus. 8. Impigrē labōrās et laudāberis.
9. Amīcīs nostrīs semper favēmus.

138. 1. The slaves will not fight with weapons. 2. The
boy will carry the shield and the sword. 3. We shall see the
danger, but we shall not fear. 4. You (*sing.*) will often be
praised by your friend. 5. The men will fight bravely, but
nevertheless they will be defeated. 6. We shall not be
frightened by the Gauls. 7. This man favored the Romans.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the tense signs and the personal endings in the verbs
of sentences 4, 5, and 7, 137. (2) Explain the case of *amīcīs*, 9, 137.
(3) Conjugate *compleō* and *superō* in the future indicative active and
passive. (4) Give the third person plural active of *habeō* in the
present, imperfect, and future indicative.

THIRD SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. appropinquō, -āre | 18. nāvigium, -ī, N. |
| 2. arma, -ōrum, N. <i>pl.</i> | 19. nāvigō, -āre |
| 3. aut, <i>conj.</i> | 20. oppugnō, -āre |
| 4. castra, -ōrum, N. <i>pl.</i> | 21. persuādeō, -ēre |
| 5. concitō, -āre | 22. poena, -ae, F. |
| 6. cōfirmō, -āre | 23. proelium, -ī, N. |
| 7. dubitō, -āre | 24. pugnō, -āre |
| 8. fortiter, <i>adv.</i> | 25. putō, -āre |
| 9. habeo, -ēre | 26. sine, <i>prep. with abl.</i> |
| 10. iniūria, -ae, F. | 27. superō, -āre |
| 11. is, ea, id | 28. tardus, -a, -um |
| 12. lingua, -ae, F. | 29. timeō, -ēre |
| 13. longē, <i>adv.</i> | 30. timidus, -a, -um |
| 14. maneō, -ēre | 31. tum, <i>adv.</i> |
| 15. modus, -ī, M. | 32. yērō, <i>adv.</i> |
| 16. moneō, -ēre | 33. vērus, -a, -um |
| 17. moveō, -ēre | 34. videō, -ēre |
-

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1. draw near to, approach | 13. far |
| 2. arms | 14. remain |
| 3. or; either . . . or | 15. manner |
| 4. camp | 16. advise, warn |
| 5. arouse, excite | 17. move |
| 6. strengthen, encourage, affirm | 18. boat |
| 7. doubt, hesitate | 19. sail |
| 8. bravely | 20. attack |
| 9. have, hold | 21. persuade |
| 10. wrong | 22. penalty |
| 11. this, that (<i>as adj.</i>); he
(<i>as pron.</i>) | 23. battle |
| 12. tongue, language | 24. fight |
| | 25. think |

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------|
| 26. without | 31. then |
| 27. overcome, excel, surpass | 32. in truth, but |
| 28. slow, late | 33. true |
| 29. fear | 34. see |
| 30. fearful | |

WORD STUDY

1. The diphthong **oe** as well as **ae** sometimes becomes *e* in English. This change is seen in the words derived from **poena**, which are given in the accompanying list of related English words. Another important fact to observe is that the consonant **i** of Latin words appears as *j* in English derivatives. Thus, *adjacent* is from **adiaceō**.

2. We may find two derivatives from the same source, one of which has been changed in spelling more than the other. Sometimes this is because one was taken directly from Latin into English while the other came through French. In other cases both have come through French, but one was changed in pronunciation and spelling more than the other. Thus, *lingual* and *language* both came from **lingua**, and *frail* and *fragile* both came from **fragilis**.

Most words of Latin derivation which have come through French have fewer syllables than in the original form. Usually the last syllable has disappeared, and often one or more consonants have been lost. Thus we have seen that *peril* is from **periculum**.

3.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

armor	linguist	penitentiary	timidity
armory	mode	dubious	veracious
confirm	navigable	pugnacious	sinecure
injury	penalty	tardy	

NOTE.—For lists of Latin words for special note book work, see page 314, Section 7.

LESSON XIX

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON: OMISSION OF
POSSESSIVES: IMPERFECT AND FUTURE
INDICATIVE OF *SUM*

POSSESSIVES OF THE THIRD PERSON

139. The possessive adjective of the third person, **suus**, **sua**, **sum**, is reflexive; that is, it indicates that the subject of the sentence or clause is the possessor.

Puer amīcōs suōs laudat, *the boy praises his (his own) friends.*

Puerī amīcōs suōs laudant, *the boys praise their (their own) friends.*

Fēmina filiam suam monet, *the woman warns her daughter.*

a. The gender and number of the subject of the sentence or clause in which a form of **suus** stands determine whether the meaning is *his*, *her*, *its*, or *their*. For the sake of emphasis or clearness, **suus** may sometimes be translated *his own*, *her own*, *its own*, or *their own*.

b. If the possessor is some other person than the subject, *his*, *her*, or *its* is regularly expressed by **eius**, the genitive singular of **is**, and *their* by **eōrum** or **eārum**, the genitive plural of **is**.

Amīcōs eius laudant, *they praise his friends.*

Amīcōs eōrum laudat, *he praises their friends.*

The genitive forms of **hic** and **ille** are sometimes used instead of those of **is**, to denote possession.

THE OMISSION OF POSSESSIVES

140. The possessives are often omitted in Latin if they are not emphatic or if they are not needed for the sake of

clearness. They are to be supplied in translation from Latin into English whenever the sense requires.

Fēmina filiam amat, *the woman loves her daughter.*

THE IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE OF SUM

141. The verb **sum** is conjugated as follows in the imperfect and future indicative:

	IMPERFECT	SINGULAR	FUTURE
<i>Sum</i>	eram, <i>I was</i>		erō, <i>I shall be</i>
<i>es</i>	erās, <i>you were</i>		eris, <i>you will be</i>
<i>erat</i>	erat, <i>he, she, it was</i>		erit, <i>he, she, it will be</i>
		PLURAL	
<i>erāmus</i>	erāmus, <i>we were</i>		erimus, <i>we shall be</i>
<i>erātis</i>	erātis, <i>you were</i>		eritis, <i>you will be</i>
<i>erant</i>	erant, <i>they were</i>		erunt, <i>they will be</i>

142.

VOCABULARY

inimīcus, -ī, M., enemy	potentia, -ae, F., power
īrātus, -a, -um, angry, angry at (<i>with dative</i>)	prīmō, <i>adv.</i> , at first
occupō, -āre, seize	Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman
populus, -ī, M., people	suus, sua, suum, his, her, its, their: his own, her own, etc.

EXERCISES

143. 1. Prīmō illī puerī inimīcī erant. 2. Hic vir in domiciliō suō tum erat. 3. Illud oppidum ā Gallīs occupābitur. 4. Semper amīcī tuī erimus. 5. Cornēlia benigna est et amīcī eius multī sunt. 6. Patriam semper amābimus et laudābimus. 7. Hoc cōnsilium tuum bonum est. 8. Cūr hic vir filiō suō īrātus erat? 9. Populus Rōmānus potentiam magnam habēbat. 10. Agricola equōs suōs laudat.

144. 1. The number of Gauls in the town was large. 2. These gifts will be pleasing to the small boys. 3. At first the power of the Roman people was small. 4. We shall not be angry at your friend. 5. The camp was being seized by the Gauls. 6. Your daughter has her own book. 7. The woman loves her son, but she praises your daughter.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline *suus* in full. (2) Give the possessive adjectives of the first and second persons. (3) Give the Latin equivalent for each of the possessives in the following sentences: (a) I was walking with the boy and his brother. (b) The general constructed his camp not far from the camp of the enemy. (c) I do not desire their help. (d) They cannot defend their own homes. (4) Give the third person singular and plural of *sum* in the imperfect, and future indicative.



GATE IN THE WALL OF MODERN ROME

LESSON XX

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE: MEANINGS OF PERFECT
AND IMPERFECT

THE PERFECT TENSE, ACTIVE VOICE

145. The perfect tense represents an act as completed at the time of speaking or writing, or refers to a past act without giving any indication of its continuance. It is translated by the English present perfect or by the English past tense, as the sense requires.

PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE OF *PORTO*, *MONEO*, AND *SUM*

146. The verbs *portō*, *moneō*, and *sum* are conjugated in the perfect indicative active as follows:

SINGULAR

portāvī, *I have carried* or *I carried*

portāvī, *I have carried*, *I carried*

portāvistī, *you have carried*, etc.

portāvit, *he has carried*, etc.

PLURAL

portāvimus, *we have carried*, etc.

portāvistis, *you have carried*, etc.

portāverunt or *portāvēre*, *they have carried*, etc.

monuī, *I have warned*

fuī, *I have been*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

monuī

monuimus

monuistī

monuistis

monuit

monuērunt, *-ēre*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

fuī

fuimus

fuistī

fuistis

fuit

fuērunt, *-ēre*

ENDINGS OF THE PERFECT

147. The personal endings which are used in forming the perfect indicative active are different from those used in the other tenses. They are as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL
-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt or -ēre

a. The use of the perfect endings is the same in all verbs, regular or irregular.

148. The perfect stem to which these endings are added is found by dropping the final ī of the first person singular. Thus, the perfect stem of **portō** is **portāv-**, of **moneō** is **monu-**, of **sum** is **fu-**.

149. The first person singular of the perfect indicative of all first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **iuvō**, **dō**, and **stō**, ends in **-āvī**, like the perfect of **portō**: **amāvī**, **postulāvī**, **explōrāvī**, etc. The perfect of **dō** is **dedī**, stem **ded-**; of **iuvō** is **iūvī**, stem **iūv-**; of **stō** is **stetī**, stem **stet-**.

150. Many (but not all) verbs of the second conjugation have perfects ending in **-uī**, like the perfect of **moneō**: **habuī**, **terruī**, etc.

MEANINGS OF THE IMPERFECT AND THE PERFECT

151. The perfect is distinguished from the imperfect in meaning by the fact that the imperfect represents a past act in progress or a situation in the past, while the perfect either represents an act as past, with no reference to its continuance, or brings into prominence the fact of its completion at the time of speaking or writing.

IMPF. **laudābam**, *I was praising*

PERF. **laudāvī**, *I praised or I have praised*

altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep	expugnō, -āre, -āvi, take by
cēlō, -āre, -āvi, conceal	storm, capture
epistula, -ae, f., letter	hodiē, <i>adv.</i> , today
explōrō, -āre, -āvi, explore	invītō, -āre, -āvi, invite

EXERCISES

153. 1. Numquam filium tuum monuistī. 2. Nauta saepe in eō oppidō fuit. 3. Hoc saxum magnum portāvī. 4. Rōmānī ea castra expugnāvērunt. 5. Amīcōs suōs saepe invītāvērunt. 6. Hunc locum hodiē explōrāvī. 7. Multās sagittās et multōs gladiōs in eō oppidō cēlāvērunt. 8. Mūrus huius oppidī altus est. 9. Servus multās epistulās portāvit. 10. Agricola filiō suō equum dedit.

154. 1. We have captured many towns of the Gauls. 2. My friends have not explored this island. 3. I have often invited these men. 4. This boy has always been industrious. 5. Why have you not warned these men? 6. I am expecting a long letter today. 7. I have given the boy a small gift.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the personal endings of the verbs in the sentences of 153. (2) Conjugate **terreō** and **dō** in the perfect indicative active. (3) Give the third person singular, active voice, of **amō** and **habeō** in the present, imperfect, and future indicative. (4) Conjugate **invītō** in the future indicative active and passive. (5) Decline **locus**.

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

155.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

arma, -ōrum, N. <i>pl.</i>	ille, illa, illud	oppugnō, -āre
bellum, -ī, N.	ipse, ipsa, ipsum	persuādeō, -ēre
carrus, -ī, M.	īrātus, -a, -um	placeō, -ēre
castra, -ōrum, N. <i>pl.</i>	is, ea, id	probō, -āre
cōnsilium, -ī, N.	parvus, -a, -um	properō, -āre
domicilium, -ī, N.	Rōmānus, -a, -um	pugnō, -āre
epistula, -ae, F.	suus, sua, suum	studeō, -ēre
fossa, -ae, F.	vester, vestra, vestrum	superō, -āre
Gallia, -ae, F.	appropinquō, -āre	terreō, -ēre
Gallus, -ī, M.	augeō, -ēre	timeō, -ēre
gladius, -ī, M.	compleō, -ēre	videō, -ēre
inimicus, -ī, M.	convocō, -āre	vulnerō, -āre
iniūria, -ae, F.	dēmōnstrō, -āre	fōrtiter
Italia, -ae, F.	explōrō, -āre	hodiē
lēgātus, -ī, M.	expugnō, -āre	impigrē
locus, -ī, M., N.	exspectō, -āre	longē
numerus, -ī, M.	faveō, -ēre	ōlim
populus, -ī, M.	habeō, -ēre	primō
potentia, -ae, F.	invitō, -āre	rūrsus
proelium, -ī, N.	juvō, -āre	semper
Rōmānus, -ī, M.	maneō, -ēre	tamen
sagitta, -ae, F.	moneō, -ēre	tum
scūtum, -ī, N.	moveō, -ēre	vix
altus, -a, -um	necō, -āre	ā, ab
hic, haec, hoc	occupō, -āre	sine

156.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

armor	gladiator	population
augment	invitation	potential
complete	irate	pugnacious
epistle	occupy	student
explore	persuade	

LESSON XXI

USE OF PARTICIPLES: THE PAST PARTICIPLE

THE PARTICIPLE

157. The participle is a form of the verb which partakes of the nature of an adjective. Like the adjective, it is declined, and agrees in gender, number, and case with the word to which it belongs. The tenses of the participles of Latin verbs are present, past, and future.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

158. English has both a past active and a past passive participle: active, *having carried*; passive, *having been carried*. Latin has the past passive participle, but no past active participle.

THE FORMS OF THE PAST PARTICIPLE

159. The past participle of **portō** is **portātus**, -a, -um, declined like **bonus**. It is translated *having been carried*, or *carried*.

Saxum ā puerō portātum magnum est, *the stone carried (i. e., which was carried) by the boy is large*.

160. The past participle of **iuvō** is **iūtus**, -a, -um; of **dō**, **datus**, -a, -um (differing from **portātus** in having the **a** short). All other verbs of the first conjugation which have been given form their past participles like **portō**: **laudātus**, **amātus**, etc.

The past participle of **moneō** is **monitus**, -a, -um; of **videō**, **vīsus**, -a, -um.

a. The past passive participle is used in Latin more frequently than in English. It is sometimes translated by a clause: **portātum** in the illustrative sentence above may be translated, *which was carried*.

161.

VOCABULARY

albus , -a, -um, white	oppidānus , -ī, M., townsman,
concilium , -ī, N., council	inhabitant of a town
Germānī , -ōrum, M., Germans	pateō , -ēre, -uī, extend
ibi , <i>adv.</i> , there	periculōsus , -a, -um, danger-
lātē , <i>adv.</i> , widely, extensively	ous, perilous

EXERCISES

162. 1. Lēgātus concilium convocāvit, quod periculum vidēbat. 2. Concilium ā lēgātō convocātum terrēbātur. 3. Liber ab amicō datus puerō placet. 4. Oppidānī ā Germānīs superātī in oppidō manent. 5. Agrī Germānōrum lātē patēbant. 6. Rosa alba ā puellā portāta pulchra est. 7. Tēla ab hīs puerīs portāta periculōsa sunt. 8. Ibi nōn manēbit, quod locus periculōsus est.

163. 1. The inhabitants-of-the-town, having been called together, did not fear danger. 2. The gift given by your son is pleasing. 3. The town of the Germans is large and has a high wall. 4. We saw the white horses in the field. 5. The lieutenant, having been warned by the Germans, will move his camp. 6. The slaves, having been praised by Sextus, are working energetically.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the past participles of **vītō**, **accūsō**, and **postulō**, with English meanings. (2) Decline the past participle of **dō** in full. (3) Conjugate **pateō** and **invītō** in the future indicative active. (4) Name the Latin nouns from which **periculōsus** and **oppidānus** are derived. (5) Explain the case of **puerō** and of **amicō** in sentence 3, 162. (6) Give the gender and number of **portāta** in sentence 6 and sentence 7, 162.

LESSON XXII

PRINCIPAL PARTS: VERB STEMS

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

164. The present indicative active (first person singular), the present infinitive active, the perfect indicative active (first person singular), and the past participle, are called the Principal Parts of the verb. Any form of a verb may be made when these are known.

The principal parts of **portō** and **moneō** are as follows:

portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

a. The neuter form of the past participle is given in the principal parts, for the reason that the past participles of some verbs have no masculine or feminine forms.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF FIRST CONJUGATION VERBS

165. All first conjugation verbs given thus far, except **iuvō, dō, and stō**, form their principal parts like **portō**. The principal parts of these three are as follows:

dō, dare, dedi, datum
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum
stō, stāre, steti

a. The fourth principal part of **stō** will be explained later; **dō** is irregular in having the **a** short in the infinitive.

THE STEMS OF THE VERB

166. A verb regularly has three stems: the present, the perfect, and the participial. The present stem is found by dropping **-re** from the present active infinitive, and the perfect stem by dropping **-ī** from the first person singular of the perfect indicative active (see Lessons V and XX). The participial stem is found by dropping **-um** from the past participle: **portātum**, stem **portāt-**; **monitum**, stem **monit-**.

USE OF THE STEMS

167. The present, the imperfect, and the future indicative, active and passive, are formed on the present stem.

The perfect stem is used only in the active voice.

Only a few forms are made on the participial stem.

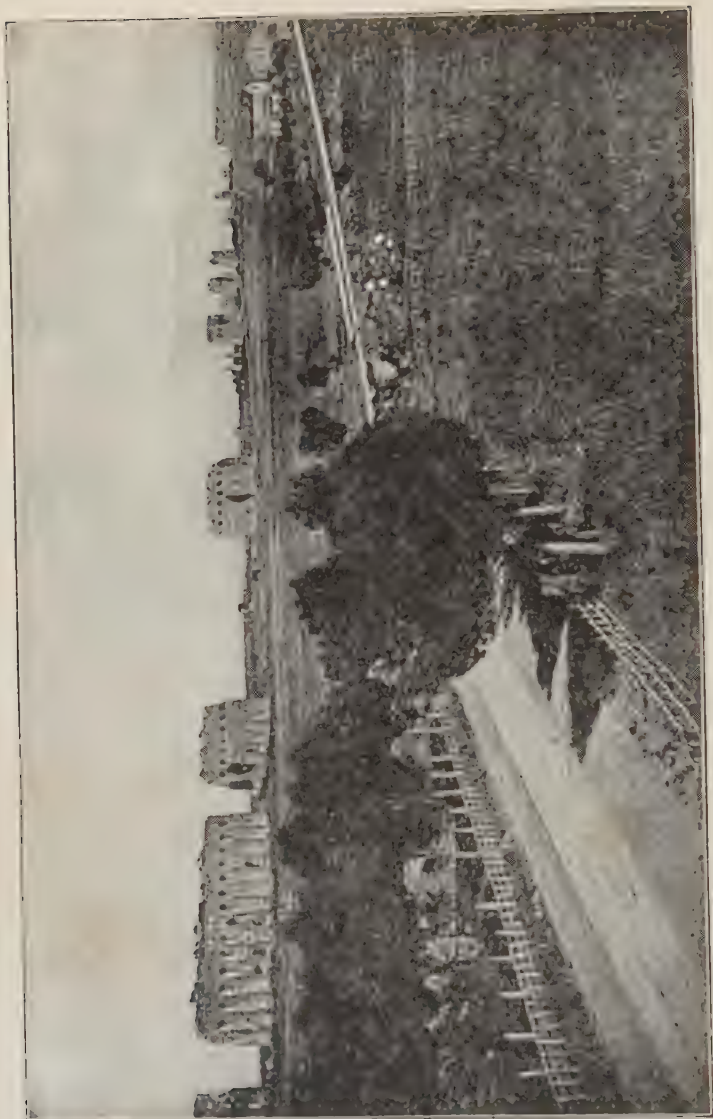
168. The principal parts of the second conjugation verbs which have been given thus far are as follows:

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum
 moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum
 pateō, patēre, patuī
 placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum
 studeō, studēre, studuī
 terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum
 timeō, timēre, timuī
 augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum
 maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsū
 persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum
 compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum
 faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum
 moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum
 videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum

a. The verbs of which only three principal parts are given have no past participle.

EXERCISES

169. 1. Magnum numerum equōrum in agrō vīdī. 2. Amīcī tuī tibi multōs librōs pulchrōs dedērunt. 3. Hic puer parvus in silvā mānsit. 4. Perīculum vītāvistī et laudāberis. 5. Hunc virum saepe iūvī quod impiger est. 6. Oppidānī nunquam bellō fāvērunt sed fortiter pugnābunt. 7. Amīcitiae huius virī semper studuī. 8. Filius tuus meōs librōs ex hōc locō mōvit. 9. In multīs oppidīs habitāvī et multōs amicōs habeō. 10. In eō bellō arma Gallōrum erant gladii et sagittae.



RUINS OF ROMAN AQUEDUCT

LESSON XXIII

PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

THE PAST PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

170. The past perfect tense represents an act as completed at some specified or suggested time in the past. It is translated with the English auxiliary *had*. The tense sign is **erā**, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are the same as those of the imperfect. The **ā** of the tense sign is shortened before the endings **-m**, **-t**, **-nt**.

portāveram, <i>I had carried</i>	monueram, <i>I had warned</i>	fueram, <i>I had been</i>
--	---	-------------------------------------

SINGULAR

portāveram	monueram	fueram
portāverās	monuerās	fuerās
portāverat	monuerat	fuerat

PLURAL

portāverāmus	monuerāmus	fuerāmus
portāverātis	monuerātis	fuerātis
portāverant	monuerant	fuerant

THE FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE ACTIVE

171. The future perfect tense represents an act as to be completed at some specified or suggested time in the future. The tense sign is **eri**, which is added to the perfect stem.

portāverō, <i>I shall have carried</i>	monuerō, <i>I shall have warned</i>	fuerō, <i>I shall have been</i>
--	---	---

SINGULAR

portāverō	monuerō	fuerō
portāveris	monueris	fueris
portāverit	monuerit	fuerit

PLURAL

portāverimus	monuerimus	fuerimus
portāveritis	monueritis	fueritis
portāverint	monuerint	fuerint

172.

VOCABULARY

diū, <i>adv.</i> , long, for a long time	renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
fuga, -ae, <i>F.</i> , flight	renew
hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, win-	sī, <i>conj.</i> , if
ter, spend the winter	signum, -ī, <i>N.</i> , signal
hortus, -ī, <i>M.</i> , garden	socius, -ī, <i>M.</i> , ally

EXERCISES

173. 1. Hī puerī diū in hortō fuerint. 2. Sociī nostrī fugam Germānōrum viderant. 3. Sī bellum renovāverint, periculum magnum erit. 4. Signum proelī nōn viderint. 5. Amīcī nostrī in illō oppidō hiemāverant. 6. Hōs puerōs saepe monueram. 7. Ille vir semper amīcōs iūverat. 8. Amīcīs dōna multa nōn dederat. 9. Portāvit; portāverat; portāverit; fuit; fuerat; fuerit.

174. 1. I had often warned my friend, but he did not fear. 2. Our friends will have seen many towns. 3. The flight of the allies had renewed the danger. 4. We were in the forest a long time. 5. If I see (shall have seen) the signal, I shall call together a council. 6. Why have you spent the winter in this town?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the past perfects and the future perfects in the sentences of 173, indicating the tense signs and the personal endings of each. (2) Give the principal parts of **renovō**, **iuvō**, and **videō**, and indicate the three stems of each. (3) Conjugate **dō** in the past perfect and the future perfect indicative active. (4) Give the third person plural of **iuvō** in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect indicative active. (5) Give the dative singular of the phrase meaning *that town*.

LESSON XXIV

PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE: ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION
OF TIME

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

175. The perfect tense of any verb in the passive voice is formed by combining its past participle with the present tense of the verb **sum**.

SINGULAR

portātus sum, *I have been carried or I was carried*
 portātus es, *you have been carried or you were carried*
 portātus est, *he has been carried or he was carried*

PLURAL

portātī sumus, *we have been carried or we were carried*
 portātī estis, *you have been carried or you were carried*
 portātī sunt, *they have been carried or they were carried*

monitus sum, *I have been warned or I was warned*

SINGULAR

PLURAL

monitus sum

monitī sumus

monitus es

monitī estis

monitus est

monitī sunt

a. The forms of this tense are translated more frequently by the English past tense, *I was carried*, etc., than by the present perfect.

176. The participle in the forms of this tense agrees with the subject in gender as well as in number.

Puer laudātus est, *the boy was praised.*

Puella laudāta est, *the girl was praised.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

177. A noun used to tell how long an act or a situation continues is in the accusative case.

Multās hōrās in insulā mānsi, *I remained on the island many hours.*

178.

VOCABULARY

annus, -ī, M., year

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum,
surround

honestus, -a, -um, honorable

hōra, -ae, F., hour

quattuor, *indecl. num.*, four

schola, -ae, F., school

vīta, -ae, F., life

EXERCISES

179. 1. *Multās hōrās in eō locō mānsērunt.* 2. *Hic amīcus saepe laudātus est, quod vīta eius honesta est.* 3. *Ille puer ab amīcō monitus est et nunc impigrē labōrat.* 4. *In hōc oppidō quattuor annōs fuerō.* 5. *Scholae in hōc oppidō semper bonae fuērunt.* 6. *Haec saxa ex illō agrō ā servō portāta sunt.* 7. *Lēgātus oppidum mūrō et fossā circumdedit.* 8. *Oppidum ā lēgātō mūrō et fossā circumdatum est.*

180. 1. This boy was in school four hours. 2. The boys of this school have often been praised. 3. The Romans were in Gaul many years. 4. This man's life has always been honorable and he has many friends. 5. The camp of the Germans has not been moved. 6. For many years he had a residence in Italy.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Point out the phrases in 180 which express duration of time.
- (2) Name the tense of each verb in 179. (3) Conjugate **laudō** and **videō** in the perfect indicative passive, giving English meanings.
- (4) Explain the use of the ablatives in sentences 4 and 8 of 179.
- (5) Give the ablative of the phrase meaning *four hours*. (6) Give the gender of **agricolā** in sentence 3 and of **fossā** in sentence 8 of 179.

FOURTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. admoneō, -monēre,
-monuī, -monitum | 13. populus, -ī, M. |
| 2. altus, -a, -um | 14. quadringentī, -ae, -a |
| 3. annus, -ī, M. | 15. quidem, <i>adv.</i> (<i>post-</i>
<i>positive</i>) |
| 4. circumdō, -dare, -dedī,
-datum | 16. retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī,
-tentum |
| 5. deus, -ī, M. | 17. sī, <i>conj.</i> |
| 6. expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | 18. signum, -ī, N. |
| 7. fuga, -ae, F. | 19. socius, -ī, M. |
| 8. multum, <i>adv.</i> | 20. spatium, -ī, N. |
| 9. nē . . . quidem | 21. spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum |
| 10. nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | 22. suus, -a, -um |
| 11. occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | 23. trecentī, -ae, -a |
| 12. permaneō, -manēre,
-mānsī, -mānsūrus | 24. vīta, -ae, F. |

-
- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. <u>remind</u> | 13. people |
| 2. <u>high, deep</u> | 14. four hundred |
| 3. year | 15. indeed, certainly, at least |
| 4. <u>put</u> around, surround | 16. hold back, retain |
| 5. god | 17. if |
| 6. capture by assault | 18. sign, signal, standard |
| 7. flight | 19. ally, comrade |
| 8. much | 20. space, time, distance |
| 9. not even | 21. look at |
| 10. announce, declare | 22. his (her, its, their) own |
| 11. seize, occupy | 23. three hundred |
| 12. remain, hold out | 24. life |

WORD STUDY: PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES

1. New words are often formed by placing a syllable or group of syllables at the beginning or end of a word. A syllable

or group of syllables used in forming new words is called a Prefix if placed at the beginning of a word, and a Suffix if placed at the end.

LATIN PREFIXES

2. Most Latin prefixes are prepositions. For example, **ex-pugnō** is made up of **ex** and **pugnō**. There are, however, a few prefixes which are never found as separate words. The syllable **re-** of **retineō** is of this kind. Such a prefix is called an Inseparable Prefix.

CHANGES IN SPELLING

3. Often the form of a Latin prefix was changed because of the letter which immediately followed it. Thus, when **ad** was used as a prefix with **propinquō** the new word came to be **appropinquō**. This change of a consonant to the sound which follows or to a similar sound is called Assimilation.

In addition to this change in the spelling of prefixes, a vowel in the middle of a word was often changed when a prefix was joined to the original word. Thus, from **re-** and **teneō** we get **retineō**.

THE MEANING OF LATIN PREFIXES

4. Latin prepositions when used as prefixes usually have about the same meaning as when used as independent words. we shall, however, see a few differences.

The preposition **cum** has the form **com-** as a prefix, but in compounds it may appear as **col-**, **con-**, **cor-** or **co-**.¹ It most frequently means *together* or *together with*. Sometimes it means *thoroughly* or *entirely*. Occasionally a compound is found which differs scarcely at all from the original word to which the prefix was added.

The inseparable prefix **re-** means *back* or *again*.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

altitude	deity	popular	society	spectacle
annual	fugitive	retention	space	vital

¹ It is not necessary that pupils be required to memorize all the details of derivation here given. A careful reading of this material will, however, serve to make the relation of words more readily apparent.

LESSON XXV

PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE
PASSIVE: SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

THE PAST PERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE

181. The past perfect in the passive voice is formed by combining the past participle with the imperfect tense of **sum**. The future perfect passive is formed by combining the past participle with the future of **sum**.

PAST PERFECT

portātus eram,
I had been carried

monitus eram,
I had been warned

SINGULAR

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
portātus erās, *you had been carried*
portātus erat, *he had been carried*

monitus eram
monitus erās
monitus erat

PLURAL

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
portātī erant, *they had been carried*

monitī erāmus
monitī erātis
monitī erant

FUTURE PERFECT

portātus erō,
I shall have been carried

monitus erō,
I shall have been warned

SINGULAR

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

monitus erō
monitus eris
monitus erit

PLURAL

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

monitī erimus
monitī eritis
monitī erunt

THE SYNOPSIS OF VERBS

182. A group of verb forms made up by taking any one person of a verb in all the tenses in one voice and number is called a Synopsis of the verb. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular, active voice, of the indicative mood is as follows:

PRES.	portō	PERF.	portāvī
IMPF.	portābam	P. PERF.	portāveram
FUT.	portābō	F. PERF.	portāverō

183.

VOCABULARY

anteā , <i>adv.</i> , formerly, before	repudiō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reject
dominus , -ī, <i>M.</i> , master, owner	rogō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask
frumentum , -ī, <i>N.</i> , grain	stipendium , -ī, <i>N.</i> , tribute, tax
quīnque , <i>indecl. numeral</i> , five	supportō , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring up, furnish

EXERCISES

184. 1. Ille servus ā dominō saepe monitus est. 2. Multa saxa ā puerō portāta sunt. 3. Stipendium ā Germānīs numquam anteā datum erat. 4. Amicitia nostra ab hīs virīs repudiāta est. 5. Auxilium tuum in proeliō rogātum est. 6. Frumentum ā sociīs nostrīs hodiē supportātum erit. 7. In insulā quīnque hōrās fuerāmus. 8. Stipendium ā Gallīs datum magnum erat. 9. Bellum ā Germānīs renovātum erat et multa oppida expugnāta erant.

185. 1. Help had been asked but had not been given. 2. Formerly the council had often been called together. 3. Grain has been furnished and we shall now move camp. 4. Why had the Germans rejected the friendship of the Romans? 5. The lieutenant remained in Gaul four years. 6. The town will have been captured by the Gauls.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **portō** in the third person singular passive, and of **moneō** in the third person plural active, indicative mood. (2) Conjugate **videō** in the past perfect passive and the future perfect passive of the indicative, giving the English meanings. (3) Explain the case of **hōrās** in sentence 7, 184. (4) Conjugate **repudiō** in the perfect passive indicative. (5) Conjugate **sum** in the past perfect and in the future perfect of the indicative. (6) Give the vocative singular of **dominus**.

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

186. (1) The declension of **is**.
 (2) Possessives of the third person.
 (3) The imperfect indicative passive of the first and second conjugations.
 (4) The future indicative active and passive of the first and second conjugations.
 (5) The perfect indicative active.
 (6) The past perfect indicative active.
 (7) The future perfect indicative active.
 (8) The perfect, past perfect, and future perfect passive.
 (9) The past participle.
 (10) The principal parts of verbs.
 (11) The dative with special verbs.
 (12) The accusative of duration.
 (13) The ablative of means.

187. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

annual	renovate	social
council	repudiate	support
dominate	scholastic	stipend
hōrticulture	signal	vital

LESSON XXVI

FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE: PREPOSITIONS WITH
ACCUSATIVE

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

188. Latin verbs have a future active participle formed on the participial stem. It is declined like the past passive participle, from which it is to be distinguished by *-ūr*, preceding the case ending.

portātūrus, -a, -um, *about to carry*, or *going to carry*.

monitūrus, -a, -um, *about to warn*, or *going to warn*.

a. Some verbs which have no past participle have a future active participle. The future active participle of such verbs is given as the fourth principal part.

The future participle of *sum* is *futūrus*. The principal parts of *sum* are *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*. The fourth of the principal parts of *stō* is *stātūrus*.

189. The future participle is often combined with the forms of *sum* to refer to something which some one intends to do or is about to do.

Mānsūrus eram, *I was about to remain, I intended to remain*.

Laudātūrus est, *he is about to praise, he intends to praise*.

PREPOSITIONS WITH THE ACCUSATIVE

190. A number of prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. With some of these the object is used to name the place toward which motion is directed. Others express ideas of relation in situation, like the English *beyond*, *in front of*, *behind*, *around*. A few express abstract relations, such as *on account of*, *against*, *about*.

191.

VOCABULARY

ad, *prep. with accusative*, to, toward

adversus, -a, -um, unfavorable, opposed

in, *prep. w. acc.*, into

mora, -ae, f., delay

post, *prep. w. acc.*, behind, after

propter, *prep. w. acc.*, on account of

sex, *indecl. num.*, six

trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across, beyond

a. The ablative with **in** tells where an act takes place or where something exists. The accusative with **in** names the place to which an act is directed.

EXERCISES

192. 1. Propter adversum proelium socii nostri in oppidō mānsērunt. 2. Ad hunc locum sine morā Rōmānī castra mōvērunt. 3. Tibi multa dōna datūrus sum. 4. Fēmina filiam suam in hortum vocāvit. 5. Castra Germānōrum trāns eam silvam erant. 6. Fossa alta post oppidum est. 7. Sex virī in viā ambulant. 8. Hunc puerum monitūrus erās. 9. Concilium sine morā convocāvi et periculum dēmōnstrāvī. 10. Nōn diū in hōc locō mānsūrī sumus.

193. 1. On account of the great danger there will be delay. 2. The lieutenant invited the Germans to the camp. 3. The slaves carried the weapons and the grain into the town. 4. The horses and carts are behind the forest. 5. The master of the slaves lives beyond those fields. 6. You (*plur.*) have been defeated because you did not ask aid.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the future active participles of **augeō**, **moneō**, and **dō**. (2) Mention some of the prepositions which take the ablative. (3) Conjugate **dēmōnstrō** in the perfect indicative active and passive. (4) Explain the case of **hortum**, in sentence 4, and of **viā**, in sentence 7, 192. (5) Give the principal parts of **moveō**. (6) Give a synopsis of **vocō** in the first person plural of the indicative passive.

LESSON XXVII

THIRD CONJUGATION, *ō* VERBS, PRESENT INDICATIVE:
DATIVE OF PURPOSETHE THIRD CONJUGATION, *ō* VERBS

194. The present active infinitive of the third conjugation ends in *-ere*. The stem ending *-e* is replaced in most forms of the present indicative by *-i* or *-u*.

195. Verbs which have all their forms in the third conjugation are conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

dūcō, I lead

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

*dūcō, I lead**dūcor, I am led**dūcis, you lead**dūceris or dūcere, you are led**dūcit, he leads**dūcitur, he is led*

PLURAL

*dūcimus, we lead**dūcimur, we are led**dūcitis, you lead**dūciminī, you are led**dūcunt, they lead**dūcuntur, they are led*

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

196. The purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve is sometimes expressed by the dative.

Cōpiās subsidiō mīsit, he sent the troops as reinforcements
(to serve as reinforcements).

a. The dative of purpose is often used where the English idiom would require a predicate nominative.

Amīcitia tua semper mihi auxiliō fuit, your friendship
has always been a help to me (for a help to me).

197.

VOCABULARY

<i>ante</i> , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , before, in front of; <i>adv.</i> , previously	<i>mittō</i> , -ere, <i>mīsī</i> , <i>missum</i> , send
<i>cōpia</i> , -ae, <i>F.</i> , supply; <i>pl.</i> , forces	<i>relinquō</i> , -ere, <i>reliquī</i> , <i>relictum</i> , leave
<i>dūcō</i> , -ere, <i>dūxī</i> , <i>ductum</i> , lead	<i>septem</i> , <i>indecl. num.</i> , seven
<i>impedimentum</i> , -ī, <i>N.</i> , hindrance; <i>pl.</i> , baggage	<i>subsidiū</i> , -ī, <i>N.</i> , reinforcements, reserves

EXERCISES

198. 1. *Lēgātus magnās cōpiās ad proelium dūcit.* 2. *Multās epistulās ad amīcōs mittimus.* 3. *Septem Gallī in proeliō necātī sunt.* 4. *Hic mīrus magnō impedimentō fuit.* 5. *Servus ad oppidum mittitur.* 6. *Multi virī subsidiō mittuntur.* 7. *Puella librōs in viā relinquit.* 8. *Librī ante portam in viā ā puellā relinquuntur.*

199. 1. The forces of the Romans are again sent into Gaul. 2. He gave me the book as a gift (for a gift). 3. I am sending these men as reinforcements. 4. There was a large forest in front of the town. 5. The slave leaves the weapons in the street. 6. On account of the delay we shall call together a council.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate *mittō* and *relinquō* in the present indicative, active and passive. (2) Name the prepositions which have been used thus far with the accusative. (3) Give the future active participles of *dūcō* and *mittō*. (4) Explain the case of *subsidiō* in sentence 6, and of *puellā* in sentence 8, 198. (5) Give the principal parts of the verb *necō*. (6) Give the terminations of the present active infinitive in the first, second, and third conjugations.

LESSON XXVIII

FOURTH CONJUGATION, PRESENT INDICATIVE:
SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION

200. The present active infinitive of the fourth conjugation ends in **-īre**. The present indicative is as follows:

audiō, I hear

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
	SINGULAR
audiō, <i>I hear</i>	audior, <i>I am heard</i>
audīs, <i>you hear</i>	audīris or audīre, <i>you are heard</i>
audit, <i>he hears</i>	audītur, <i>he is heard</i>
	PLURAL
audīmus, <i>we hear</i>	audīmur, <i>we are heard</i>
audītis, <i>you hear</i>	audīminī, <i>you are heard</i>
audiunt, <i>they hear</i>	audiuntur, <i>they are heard</i>

THE SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

201. Adjectives are often used as nouns, especially in the masculine plural and in the neuter plural: **multī** is translated *many men*, or *many*; **multa** is translated *many things*. In military language **nostrī** means *our men* or *our soldiers*.

Multi periculum vidērunt, *many saw the danger*.

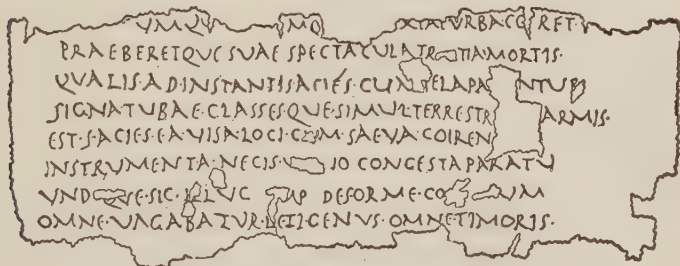
202.

VOCABULARY

audiō, -īre, audīvī, audītum, hear	mūniō, -īre, mūnīvī, mūnī- tum, fortify
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, carry, carry on; bellum gerere, wage war	octō, indecl. num., eight sonus, -ī, m., sound tuba, -ae, f., trumpet
inter, prep. w. acc., among, between	veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, come

EXERCISES

203. 1. Sonum tubārum audiō. 2. Germānī castra hodiē mūniunt. 3. Lēgatus cum sociis venit. 4. Nōn saepe bellum gerimus. 5. Castra inter silvam et oppidum ā nostris mūnuntur. 6. Octō equōs in agrō vidēmus. 7. Sonus tubae ā nostris auditur. 8. Ab hīs puerīs audimur sed nōn vidēmur. 9. Virī sonum proelī audiunt et timent. 10. Venīs quod vocātus es. 11. Rōmānī in Galliā bellum gestūrī erant.



FRAGMENT OF PAPYRUS ROLL FROM HERCULANEUM

204. 1. Our men are fortifying this town. 2. War is being waged with the Gauls. 3. This field is between the road and the forest. 4. That town had seven gates. 5. Many are coming with their weapons as reinforcements (for reinforcement). 6. We hear the sound of carts and horses in the street.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the stem and the ending of **auditur** in sentence 7, 203. (2) Point out the difference between the formation of the first person plurals of **gerō** and of **audiō**. (3) Conjugate **veniō** in the present indicative active, and **mūniō** in the present indicative active and passive. (4) Give the third person plural of **rogō**, **videō**, and **audiō** in the present indicative, active and passive. (5) Give the future active participles of **audiō** and **gerō**. (6) Explain the use of **nostris** in sentence 5, 203.

LESSON XXIX

IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: CONSTRUCTION WITH *IUBEŌ*

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

205. The imperfect tense of third conjugation verbs which are conjugated like *dūcō* is formed in exactly the same manner as the past tense of second conjugation verbs. Fourth conjugation verbs have *iē* before the tense sign.

*dūcēbam, I was leading**dūcēbar, I was being led**audiēbam, I was hearing**audiēbar, I was being heard*

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

*dūcēbam**dūcēbar**audiēbam**audiēbar**dūcēbās**dūcēbāris, -re**audiēbās**audiēbāris, -re**dūcēbat**dūcēbātur**audiēbat**audiēbātur*

PLURAL

*dūcēbāmus**dūcēbāmur**audiēbāmus**audiēbāmur**dūcēbātis**dūcēbāminī**audiēbātis**audiēbāminī**dūcēbant**dūcēbantur**audiēbant**audiēbantur*CONSTRUCTION WITH *IUBEŌ*

206. The verb *iubeō* may take as an object an infinitive with subject accusative.

Eum manēre iubēmus, we order him to remain.

207.

VOCABULARY

Helvētīi, -ōrum, M. pl., the Helvetians, an important Gallic tribe

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, order, command

prōvincia, -ae, F., province, the Province. the south-eastern part of Gaul

reperiō, -īre, repperī, reper-tum, find, find out

statim, adv., at once

trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditum, surrender (transitive)

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

vincō, -ere, vicī, victum, conquer, defeat

EXERCISES

208. 1. Helvētīī cōpiās ex castrīs dūcēbant. 2. Cūr huic virō arma tua nōn trādis? 3. Gallōs vincēbāmus quod arma bona habēbāmus. 4. Hunc puerum statim venīre iussī. 5. Nostrī auxiliō tum veniēbant. 6. Tēla ā lēgātō in hōc domiciliō reperta sunt. 7. Rōmānī bellum in Galliā gerēbant, et multa oppida Gallōrum expugnāverant. 8. Hic locus numquam tūtus fuit. 9. Bellum ā Gallīs in prōvinciā gerēbātur.

209. 1. The lieutenant orders the Helvetians to find the weapons at once. 2. The townspeople were surrendering their arms to the lieutenant. 3. The province is now safe. 4. We were sending many books and letters. 5. The boys and girls were coming from the town.



ROMAN CENTURION

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the tense signs and the personal endings in the verbs of sentences 1, 3, and 9, 208. (2) Conjugate **trādō** and **reperiō** in the present active indicative and the imperfect active indicative. (3) Explain the use of the infinitive **venīre** in sentence 4, 208. (4) Point out an adjective used as a noun in the sentences of 208. (5) Explain the case of **Galliā** in sentence 7, 208. (6) Conjugate **iubeō** in the perfect indicative active.

LESSON XXX

FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS: ABLATIVE OF TIME

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

210. The tense sign of the future in the third and fourth conjugations is **ē**, except in the first person singular, where it appears as **a**. In the fourth conjugation the tense sign is preceded by **i**. In third conjugation verbs like **dūcō**, the tense sign replaces the vowel in which the present stem ends.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

dūcam, I shall lead

dūcēs, you will lead

dūcet, he will lead

audiam, I shall hear

audiēs, you will hear

audiet, he will hear

PLURAL

dūcēmus, we shall lead

dūcētis, you will lead

dūcent, they will lead

audiēmus, we shall hear

audiētis, you will hear

audient, they will hear

PASSIVE

dūcar, I shall be led

audiar, I shall be heard

SINGULAR

PLURAL

dūcar

dūcēmur

dūcēris, -re

dūcēminī

dūcētur

dūcentur

SINGULAR

PLURAL

audiar

audiēmur

audiēris, -re

audiēminī

audiētur

audientur

THE ABLATIVE OF TIME

211. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate the time at which or within which an act is done or a situation exists. It is commonly translated with the English prepositions *in* or *at*.

Eō annō concilium convocātum est, *the council was called together in that year.*

212.

VOCABULARY

āmittō, -ere, āmisī, āmissum,	decem, indecl. num., ten
lose	excēdō, -ere, excessī, excē-
celeriter, adv., swiftly,	sum, withdraw
rapidly	nātūra, -ae, F., nature
contendō, -ere, contendī, con-	novus, -a, -um, new
tentum, contend; hasten	primus, -a, -um, first

EXERCISES

213. 1. Propter nātūram locī magnās cōpiās nōn dūcēbā-mus. 2. Gallī eō annō multa oppida āmisērunt. 3. Germānī cum cōpiīs nostrīs saepe ante castra contendunt. 4. Helvētīi eō bellō vincentur. 5. Hī virī decem hōrās labōrāvērunt. 6. Primā hōrā oppidum occupābitur. 7. Sī perīculum erit, celeriter veniam. 8. Puerōs fossam complēre iubēbit. 9. Cōpiae nostrae ex castrīs nōn excēdent. 10. Nostrī cum Germānīs ante castra contendunt.

214. 1. We shall hasten from the camp at the first hour. 2. The slave will find out the nature of the place. 3. The sound of weapons will be heard by the women. 4. The men are withdrawing from the towns to the forests. 5. The forces of the Germans are coming swiftly.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the third person singular of **dūcō** and **audiō** in the present, imperfect, and future tenses of the indicative active. (2) Give the third person plural of **mittō** and **moneō** in these three tenses of the indicative passive. (3) Conjugate **vincō** and **mūniō** in the future indicative active and passive. (4) Explain the difference between the idea of time which is expressed by the ablative and that which is expressed by the accusative (177, 211). (5) Point out the examples of the ablative of time in the sentences of 213.

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

215.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

annus, -ī, M.	audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
concilium, -ī, N.	circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum
cōpia, -ae, F.	contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
dominus, -ī, M.	dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
frūmentum, -ī, N.	gerō, -cre, gessi, gestum
fuga, -ae, F.	hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
hortus, -ī, M.	iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum
mora, -ae, F.	mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
nātūra, -ae, F.	mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
oppidānus, -ī, M.	pateō, -ēre, -uī
prōvincia, -ae, F.	relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relictum
schola, -ae, F.	reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum
signum, -ī, N.	repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
socius, -ī, M.	rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
sonus, -ī, M.	supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
stīpendium, -ī, N.	trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
tuba, -ae, F.	veniō, -īre, vērī, ventum
vīta, -ae, F.	vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum

adversus, -a, -um

anteā

ad

albus, -a, -um

celeriter

ante

honestus, -a, -um

diū

inter

periculōsus, -a, -um

ibi

post

primus, -a, -um

lātē

propter

tūtus, -a, -um

statim

trāns

216.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

adverse

interstate

primary

audible

missive

provincial

contention

natural

relinquish

copious

novelty

sonorous

decimal

postpone

transport

LESSON XXXI

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION ENDING IN *-iō*

217. There are two classes of verbs in the third conjugation, commonly distinguished as *ō* verbs and *iō* verbs. The *ō* verbs are those which are conjugated like *dūcō*. The *iō* verbs are conjugated in the present indicative partly like *dūcō* and partly like verbs of the fourth conjugation. In the imperfect indicative and the future indicative they are conjugated exactly like verbs of the fourth conjugation.

capiō, I take

PRESENT

ACTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capiō</i>	<i>capimus</i>
<i>capis</i>	<i>capitis</i>
<i>capit</i>	<i>capiunt</i>

PASSIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capior</i>	<i>capimur</i>
<i>caperis, -re</i>	<i>capimini</i>
<i>capitur</i>	<i>capiuntur</i>

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capiēbam</i>	<i>capiēbāmus</i>	<i>capiēbar</i>	<i>capiēbāmur</i>
<i>capiēbās</i>	<i>capiēbātis</i>	<i>capiēbāris, -re</i>	<i>capiēbāmini</i>
<i>capiēbat</i>	<i>capiēbant</i>	<i>capiēbātur</i>	<i>capiēbantur</i>

FUTURE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>capiam</i>	<i>capiemus</i>	<i>capiar</i>	<i>capiemur</i>
<i>capies</i>	<i>capietis</i>	<i>capieris, -re</i>	<i>capiemini</i>
<i>capiet</i>	<i>capient</i>	<i>capietur</i>	<i>capientur</i>

a. In the first person plural and the second person plural of both voices, and in the second person singular of the active voice in the present tense, the forms of the verbs of this class are to be distinguished from the corresponding forms of the fourth conjugation by the fact

that the connecting vowel, *i*, is short. In the second person singular of the passive in the present tense the connecting vowel is *e*, while in the corresponding form of the fourth conjugation it is *ī*.

218.

VOCABULARY

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum,

take, capture

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum,

make, do

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus,

flee

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum, throw

incognitus, -a, -um, unknown

nihil, indecl., N., nothing

nūntius, -ī, M., messenger

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum,

place

EXERCISES

219. 1. Nūntius in oppidō capiētur et necābitur. 2. Puer carrum parvum facit. 3. Tēla ā Germānīs et Gallīs iaciuntur. 4. Nostrī in eō oppidō multum frūmentum capiēbant. 5. Sī oppidum capiētur, fugiēmus. 6. Rōmānī castra ante silvam pōnent. 7. Is locus incognitus erat sed nōn timēbāmus. 8. Ille vir multās iniūriās faciēbat. 9. Puerī fugiēbant quod perīculum vidēbant. 10. Multī in (at) mūrūm tēla iaciēbant.

220. 1. The boy takes the sword and shield. 2. The slave will throw a weapon over (across) the wall. 3. Why were you fleeing from the camp? 4. We were making a large number of shields. 5. The town will be taken by the Germans.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate *iaciō* and *reperiō* in the present indicative passive. (2) Conjugate *pōnō* and *faciō* in the imperfect indicative active. (3) Give the tense sign of the future in the first and second conjugations. (4) Conjugate *videō* and *faciō* in the future indicative active. (5) Indicate the stem, tense sign, and personal ending of *timēbāmus*, in sentence 7, 219.

LESSON XXXII

REVIEW OF THE FOUR CONJUGATIONS IN THE PRESENT
SYSTEM, INDICATIVE MOOD

221.

PRESENT INFINITIVE

	TERMINATIONS	STEM
I. portāre	-āre	portā-
II. monēre	-ēre	monē-
III. { dūcere	-ere	dūce- }
capere		cape- }
IV. audire	-īre	audī-

THE PRESENT INDICATIVE

222. The present tense is formed by adding the personal endings to the present stem. In the first person singular of the first conjugation and of the *ō* verbs of the third conjugation the stem vowel disappears. In the third conjugation the vowel of the stem ending becomes *u* before *-nt* and *-ntur*. It becomes *i* before all other endings except *-ris*. In all *iō* verbs *-nt* and *-ntur* are preceded by *iu*.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portō	monēō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
portās	monēs	dūcis	capis	audis
portat	monet	dūcit	capit	audit

PLURAL

portāmus	monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audimus
portātis	monētis	dūcitis	capitis	auditis
portant	monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

portor	moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
portāris, -re	monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
portātur	monētur	dūcitur	capitur	auditur

PLURAL

portāmur	monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audimur
portāminī	monēminī	dūciminī	capiminī	audiminī
portantur	monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

THE IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

223. The sign of the imperfect tense, **bā**, appears in all four conjugations. In third conjugation **ō** verbs the short **e** of the stem becomes long before **bā**, making their imperfect tense identical with that of the second conjugation. Third conjugation verbs in **iō** and all fourth conjugation verbs have the tense sign preceded by **iē**.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

I.

II.

III.

IV.

portābam	monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
portābās	monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
portābat	monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat

PLURAL

portābāmus	monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
portābātis	monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
portābant	monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

portābar	monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
portābāris, -re	monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
portābātur	monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur

PLURAL

portābāmur	monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
portābāminī	monēbāminī	dūcēbāminī	capiēbāminī	audiēbāminī
portābantur	monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

THE FUTURE INDICATIVE

224. In the first and second conjugations the tense sign is **bi** except in the third person plural, in which it appears as **bu**, and in the second person singular of the passive, where it becomes **be**. The **i** disappears before **-ō** and **-or**. In the third and fourth conjugations the tense sign is **ē** (in the first person singular, **a**). The **i** of the **iō** verbs of the third conjugation and of the verbs of the fourth conjugation is retained.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

I.

II.

III.

IV.

portābō	monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
portābis	monēbis	dūcēs	capiēs	audiēs
portābit	monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet

PLURAL

portābimus	monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
portābitis	monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
portābunt	monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

portābor	monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
portāberis, -re	monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
portābitur	monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur

PLURAL

portābimur	monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
portābiminī	monēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
portābuntur	monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur

225.

VOCABULARY

captīvus, -ī, M., prisoner
 castellum, -ī, N., fort, redoubt
 cōficiō, -ere, cōfēcī, cōfec-
 tum, finish, complete
 iterum, *adv.*, again

lūna, -ae, F., moon
 magnopere, *adv.*, greatly
 pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, sub-
 due, make peaceful
 victōria, -ae, F., victory



BRIDGE OVER THE TIBER

EXERCISES

226. 1. In castrīs multī captīvī et servī erant. 2. Gallī castella Rōmānōrum oppugnābunt sed nōn capient. 3. Germānī ante novam lūnam nōn contendunt. 4. Tum castella faciēbāmus quod magnopere perīculum timēbāmus. 5. Quod Gallia pācāta erat, bellum nōn timēbātur. 6. Hoc bellum nōn celeriter cōficiētur. 7. Ea victōria magna fuit et multa oppida capta sunt. 8. Auxilium tuum, mī amīce, iterum postulō.

227. 1. We saw many prisoners in the camp. 2. The Germans will not again attack this fort, but they will capture the camp. 3. Ireland was never subdued by the Romans. 4. This victory will frighten the Gauls greatly and they will flee from their towns.

FIFTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

1. ad, *prep. with acc.*
2. addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
3. adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum
4. āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
5. ante, *prep. (with acc.), and adv.*
6. anteā, *adv.*
7. audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
8. capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
9. celeriter, *adv.*
10. cōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
11. coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum
12. contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum
13. cōpia, -ae, F.
14. dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
15. ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum
16. excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
17. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
18. faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
19. frūmentum, -ī, N.
20. gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
21. iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum
22. impedimentum, -ī, N.
23. in, *prep. with abl. and acc.*
24. indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
25. inter, *prep. with acc.*
26. intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
27. invidēō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum
28. iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum
29. magnopere, *adv.*
30. mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum
31. mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
32. nātūra, -ae, F.
33. novus, -a, -um
34. pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
35. prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
36. pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum
37. post, *prep. with acc.*
38. prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
39. propter, *prep. with acc.*
40. prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum
41. relinqūō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum
42. satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum
43. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
44. trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum
45. trāns, *prep. with acc.*
46. veniō, -īre, vēmī, ventum
47. vīctōria, -ae, F.
48. vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum

1. to	19. grain	33. new
2. lead to, influence	20. carry, accomplish	34. pacify
3. throw to, add	21. throw, hurl	35. lead through,
4. send away, lose	22. hindrance; <i>pl.</i>	extend
5. before	baggage	36. put, place
6. before	23. in, on (<i>with abl.</i>);	37. after, behind
7. hear	into (<i>with acc.</i>)	38. lead forward
8. take	24. lead in, induce	39. on account of
9. swiftly, quickly	25. between,	40. foresee
10. finish, exhaust	among	41. leave behind,
11. hurl	26. intercept,	abandon
12. struggle, hasten	cut off	42. satisfy
13. supply; <i>pl.</i> forces	27. envy	43. undertake
14. lead	28. order	44. hand over
15. throw out	29. greatly	45. across
16. go out	30. send	46. come
17. take, accept	31. fortify	47. victory
18. do, make	32. nature	48. conquer.

WORD STUDY

1. The prepositions **ad** and **in** are among the most commonly used prefixes. By assimilation **ad** becomes **ac-**, **ag-**, **af-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **at-**, and sometimes **a-**. In English derivatives and in the spelling of some Latin books it also becomes **al-** and **an-**.

Similarly, **in-** becomes **il-**, **im-**, and **ir-**.

LATIN COMPOUND VERBS

2. In the vocabulary of this lesson the following compounds may be noted:

addūcō (ad + dūcō)	ēiciō (ē + iaciō)
adiciō (ad + iaciō)	excēdō (ex + cēdō)
āmittō (ā + mittō)	excipiō (ex + capiō)
cōficiō (com + faciō)	indūcō (in + dūcō)
coniciō (com + iaciō)	intercipiō (inter + capiō)
contendō (com + tendō)	

LESSON XXXIII

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM, INDICATIVE MOOD:
WORD ORDER

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM IN THE ACTIVE VOICE

228. (1) The formation of the perfect system is the same in all four conjugations. The perfect stem (which is used only in the active voice) is found by dropping the *i* of the perfect active indicative, the third of the principal parts. The endings of the perfect indicative active are the same for all verbs.

I.	II.	SINGULAR		IV.	TERMINATIONS
		III.			
portāvī	monuī	dūxī	cēpī	audīvī	-ī
portāvistī	monuistī	dūxistī	cēpistī	audivistī	-istī
portāvit	monuit	dūxit	cēpit	audivit	-it
PLURAL					
portāvimus	monuimus	dūximus	cēpimus	audīvimus	-imus
portāvistis	monuistis	dūxistis	cēpistis	audīvistis	-istis
portāverunt	monuerunt	dūxerunt	cēperunt	audīverunt	-erunt
or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre	or -ēre

(2) The sign of the past perfect indicative is **erā**, which is added to the perfect stem. The endings are those used in the imperfect active.

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portāveram	monueram	dūxeram	cēperam	audīveram.
portāverās,	monuerās,	dūxerās,	cēperās,	audīverās,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

(3) The sign of the future perfect is **eri**, which is added to the perfect stem. Before *ō* the *i* of the tense sign disappears.

portāverō	monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audīverō
portāveris,	monueris,	dūxeris,	cēperis,	audīveris,
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

REVIEW OF THE PERFECT SYSTEM IN THE PASSIVE VOICE

229. The formation of the perfect system in the passive is the same in all four conjugations. The perfect is made up of the past passive participle and the present tense of **sum**; the past perfect of the past passive participle and the imperfect tense of **sum**; and the future perfect of the past passive participle and the future tense of **sum**.

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
portātus sum	portātus eram	portātus erō
monitus sum,	monitus eram,	monitus erō,
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

VARIATION FROM THE NORMAL WORD ORDER

230. The normal order of a Latin sentence requires that the subject, with its modifiers, stand first, and that the verb, preceded by its modifiers, stand last. But there are many requirements of emphasis which may change this order. Any word which is to be emphasized may stand in a different position in the sentence from that in which it would normally be placed. The fact that the form of a Latin word shows what its relation is to other words, makes possible a much freer arrangement in Latin than in English. If the subject is to be made emphatic, it may be placed last instead of first. But the fact that any word is put in an unusual position means that one or more of the other words in the sentence will be crowded out of the normal position. Sometimes the normal order is changed merely for the sake of variety.

231.

VOCABULARY

animus, -ī, M., mind, courage, spirit	pervenīō, -īre, pervēnī, per- ventum, arrive
cārus, -a, -um, dear	recipiō, -ere, recēpī, recep- tum, receive, take back
iūstitia, -ae, F., justice	rēgnūm, -ī, N., royal author- ity, kingdom
Labiēnus, -ī, M., Labienus, an officer in Caesar's army	trīduum, -ī, N., three days
nōndum, adv., not yet	

EXERCISES

232. 1. Rōmānīs cāra fuit patria. 2. Ibi trīduum mānsī sed audīvī nihil. 3. Ille vir propter iūstitiam laudātus est. 4. Labiēnus trīduō cum cōpiīs suis in hoc oppidum pervēnit. 5. Nōndum āmissus est animus. 6. Multōs Gallōs ad castellum dūxerat. 7. Eī virī in oppidum receptī sunt. 8. Tum rēgnum occupāvit et multōs necāvit. 9. Captīvī poenam timēbant et ex castrīs fūgērunt. 10. Ā Labiēnō saepe Gallōrum cōpiae victae erant. 11. Dūxistis; cēpistis; audīvērunt; cēpit; cēperat; cēperit. 12. Audītus est; audītus erat; audītus erit; captī sunt; captī erant; captī erunt.



THE ROMAN FORUM IN ITS PRESENT CONDITION

233. 1. In three days I shall have arrived in Gaul. 2. Our allies had placed large stones on the wall. 3. The royal authority has been seized and the towns have been captured. 4. We had fortified the camp and were awaiting the forces of the Germans. 5. I came, I saw, I conquered.

LESSON XXXIV

ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE IN *-ius*

234. There are nine adjectives which have the genitive singular ending in *-ius* and the dative singular ending in *-ī*. In the other cases of the singular and in all the cases of the plural they have the same endings as adjectives of the first and second declensions. The vocative is lacking except in rare uses of *ūnus* and *sōlus*. Most of these words are used also as pronouns. They are as follows:

<i>alius</i> , <i>alia</i> , <i>aliud</i> , another	<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um, one
<i>sōlus</i> , -a, -um, alone, only	<i>tōtus</i> , -a, -um, whole
<i>ūllus</i> , -a, -um, any	<i>nūllus</i> , -a, -um, no

alter, *altera*, *alterum*, the other (*of two*)

neuter, *neutra*, *neutrum*, neither

uter, *utra*, *utrum*, which (*of two*)

235. These adjectives are declined as follows:

SINGULAR

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>sōlus</i>	<i>sōla</i>	<i>sōlum</i>	<i>alter</i>	<i>altera</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>sōlius</i>	<i>sōlius</i>	<i>sōlius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>	<i>alterius</i>
<i>sōlī</i>	<i>sōlī</i>	<i>sōlī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterī</i>
<i>sōlum</i>	<i>sōlam</i>	<i>sōlum</i>	<i>alterum</i>	<i>alteram</i>	<i>alterum</i>
<i>sōlō</i>	<i>sōlā</i>	<i>sōlō</i>	<i>alterō</i>	<i>alterā</i>	<i>alterō</i>

PLURAL

<i>sōlī</i>	<i>sōlae</i>	<i>sōla</i> , <i>etc.</i>	<i>alterī</i>	<i>alterae</i>	<i>altera</i> , <i>etc.</i>
-------------	--------------	------------------------------	---------------	----------------	--------------------------------

a. **Alius** has the neuter **aliud**. Otherwise it is declined like the remaining words of the group. The *ī* of the genitive ending of **alter** is sometimes short (**alterius**).

b. These words are sometimes used in pairs (correlatives) as follows:

alius....alius = oneanother.

alii.....alii = someothers.

alter....alter = onethe other.

alteri....alteri = the one party....the other party.

Alius fugit, alius manet in castris, one flees, another remains in the camp.

EXERCISES

236. 1/ Ūnum virum et decem puerōs vīdimus. 2. Alter fūgit, alter captus est. 3. Aliī statim vērērunt, aliī in oppidō mānsērunt. 4/ Alius gladium gerēbat, alius nūlla arma habēbat. 5/ Gladius meus mihi auxiliō fuit. 6. Mūrus neutrīus oppidī altus est. 7/ Utrī puellae dōnum dedistī? 8. Amīcitiam tōtius Ītaliae repudiāvit. 9/ Alterī in castris mānsērunt, alterī ad silvam fūgērunt. 10/ Nūllius īnsulae; Labiēnō sōlī; ūlius morae; alterīus locī.

237. 1. The nature of the whole place was unknown. 2. The one was a Gaul, the other was a German. 3. He will give the letter to the messenger alone. 4. Some fight bravely, others hasten from the camp. 5. One demands aid, another avoids danger. 6. This boy has no book. 7. The danger of neither is great.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **auxiliō** in sentence 5, 236. (2) Decline together **neuter liber**. (3) Decline together **ūnum oppidum**. (4) Give a synopsis of **āmittō** in the third singular active of the indicative. (5) Conjugate **trādō** in the perfect passive indicative and the past perfect passive indicative. (6) Conjugate **recipiō** in the future perfect, active and passive.

LESSON XXXV

THE THIRD DECLENSION

238. The third declension has three classes of nouns, known as Consonant Stems, *i*-Stems, and Mixed Stems. The genitive ending is *-is*.

a. Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending *-s*. If the stem ends in *-c* or *-g* the combination of the final *-c* or *-g* of the stem with *-s* gives *-x*: **dux**, nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lēx** nominative from the stem **lēg-**. If the stem ends in *-d* or *-t* the final consonant is dropped before *-s*: **laus**, nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel *i* stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to *e* in the nominative: **princeps**, nominative from the stem **princip-**, **mīles**, nominative from the stem **milit-**.

Consonant stems are declined as follows:

lēx, F., *law*

BASE, **lēg-**

mīles, M., *soldier*

BASE, **milit-**

SINGULAR

NOM. **lēx**

GEN. **lēgis**

DAT. **lēgī**

ACC. **lēgem**

ABL. **lēge**

NOM. **mīles**

GEN. **militis**

DAT. **militī**

ACC. **mīlitem**

ABL. **mīlite**

TERMINATIONS

-s

-is

-ī

-em

-e

PLURAL

NOM. **lēgēs**

GEN. **lēgum**

DAT. **lēgibus**

ACC. **lēgēs**

ABL. **lēgibus**

NOM. **militēs**

GEN. **militum**

DAT. **militibus**

ACC. **militēs**

ABL. **militibus**

-ēs

-um

-ibus

-ēs

-ibus

b. Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**.

c. Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**, **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdin-**. The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

frāter, M., *brother*

BASE, **frātr-**

homō, *man*

BASE, **homin-**

		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	frāter	NOM. homō	—
GEN.	frātris	GEN. hominis	-is
DAT.	frātrī	DAT. hominī	-ī
ACC.	frātre	ACC. hominem	-em
ABL.	frātre	ABL. homine	-e
		PLURAL	
NOM.	frātrēs	NOM. hominēs	-ēs
GEN.	frātrum	GEN. hominum	-um
DAT.	frātribus	DAT. hominibus	-ibus
ACC.	frātrēs	ACC. hominēs	-ēs
ABL.	frātribus	ABL. hominibus	-ibus

d. Nouns with stems ending in **-ōn** form the nominative by dropping **n**: **legiō** from the stem **legiōn-**.

e. Most nouns with stems ending in **-l** or **-r** have the nominative identical with the stem. A long vowel of the stem is shortened before a final **l** or **r** of the nominative.

f. The base is identical with the stem in nouns with consonant stems. Since the base can always be found by dropping the genitive ending, any noun of this class can be declined according to the models given above when its genitive is known.

239.

VOCABULARY

condūcō, -ere, condūxī, con-	interficiō, -ere, interfēcī,
ductum, bring together,	interfectum, kill
collect	item, adv., also, likewise
frāter, frātris, M., brother	lēx, lēgis, F., law
homō, hominis, M., man,	mīles, mīlitis, M., soldier
human being	rēx, rēgis, M., king

EXERCISES

240. 1. Rēx multōs mīlītēs habuit. 2. Frāter meus item mīles fuit et in bellō vulnerātus est. 3. Hanc lēgem probāmus et laudāmus. 4. Ad eum locum magnum numerum mīlitum condūxit. 5. Rēx ab inimicō interfectus est. 6. Hī hominēs lēgēs nōn timent. 7. Aliī gladiōs trādidērunt, aliī interfectī sunt. 8. Is vir potentiam nūllius rēgis timet. 9. Hōrum hominum alter amīcus (est), alter incognitus est.

241. 1. This law is good, but it was then unknown. 2. The king had brought together into the town a large number of men. 3. Your brother also saw the soldiers in the forest. 4. Many Gauls were killed in flight by the soldiers. 5. This man has lost his brother and his son. 6. The slave is alone in the field.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **lēx bona**. (2) Decline together **frāter meus**. (3) Give the accusative plural of **sagitta**, **ager**, and **frāter**. (4) Give the genitive singular of the words meaning *one soldier*. (5) Give the principal parts of **trādidērunt**. (6) Give the base of the noun **rēx**.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

- 242.** (1) The third declension of nouns, consonant stems.
 (2) Adjectives with the genitive in *-īus*.
 (3) The present indicative of the third conjugation, *ō* verbs.
 (4) The present indicative of the fourth conjugation.
 (5) The imperfect indicative of the third and fourth conjugations.
 (6) The future indicative of the third and fourth conjugations.
 (7) The present, imperfect, and future of *iō* verbs of the third conjugation.
 (8) The future active participle.
 (9) The substantive use of adjectives.
 (10) The dative of purpose.
 (11) The accusative with prepositions.
 (12) The ablative of time.

243. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

animated	impediment	nullify
alternate	item	reception
captive	justice	regal
castle	legal	sole
conduct	lunar	subsidy
fact	military	total
fraternal	neutral	union
fugitive	nihilist	victory

LESSON XXXVI

THE THIRD DECLENSION, CONSONANT STEMS (Continued):
DATIVE OF REFERENCE

NEUTER CONSONANT STEMS

244. There are many neuter nouns among the consonant stems of the third declension. These, like the masculine and feminine nouns, form the nominative in different ways.

a. Nouns which have **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

flūmen, N., *river*BASE, **flūmin-****caput**, N., *head*BASE, **capit-**

SINGULAR			TERMINATIONS	
NOM.	flūmen	NOM.	caput	—
GEN.	flūminis	GEN.	capitis	-is
DAT.	flūminī	DAT.	capitī	-ī
ACC.	flūmen	ACC.	caput	—
ABL.	flūmine	ABL.	capite	-e
PLURAL				
NOM.	flūmina	NOM.	capita	-a
GEN.	flūminum	GEN.	capitum	-um
DAT.	flūminibus	DAT.	capitibus	-ibus
ACC.	flūmina	ACC.	capita	-a
ABL.	flūminibus	ABL.	capitibus	-ibus

b. Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us**: **genus** from the stem **gener-**, **corpus** from the stem **corpor-**.¹ The nominative **iter** used with the stem **itiner-** is somewhat irregular.

¹ In these words the stem ending was originally **-s**.

corpus, N., *body*BASE, **corpor-****iter**, N., *journey, road*BASE, **itiner-**

		SINGULAR	TERMINATIONS
NOM.	corpus	NOM. iter	—
GEN.	corporis	GEN. itineris	-is
DAT.	corporī	DAT. itinerī	-ī
ACC.	corpus	ACC. iter	—
ABL.	corpore	ABL. itinere	-e
		PLURAL	
NOM.	corpora	NOM. itinera	-a
GEN.	corporum	GEN. itinerum	-um
DAT.	corporibus	DAT. itineribus	-ibus
ACC.	corpora	ACC. itinera	-a
ABL.	corporibus	ABL. itineribus	-ibus

THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE

245. The dative is often used to refer to a person who is likely to be affected favorably or unfavorably by an act or situation, or with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This is called the Dative of Reference.

Librum amicō ēmī, *I bought a book for a friend.*

a. This use of the dative is sometimes found with words denoting things.

b. The dative of reference is often used in connection with a dative of purpose.

Militēs oppidānīs auxiliō erant, *the soldiers were a help (for a help) to the townspeople.*

Vir amicō auxiliō vēnit, *the man came to help (as a help for) his friend.*

246.

VOCABULARY

armātus, -a, -um, armed	flūmen, flūminis, N., river
caput, capitis, N., head	iter, itineris, N., march, jour-
corpus, corporis, N., body	ney, road
dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, exhausted	nēmō, dat. nēminī, acc. nē- minem (no genitive or abl.). ¹
emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptum, buy	no one.

EXERCISES

247. 1. Id flūmen lātum et altum est. 2. Hī hominēs magna corpora habent, sed nōn milītēs bonī erunt. 3. Frāter tuus iter longum fēcerat et dēfessus erat. 4. Hic equus pulcher caput parvum habet. 5. Tum lēgātus milītēs suōs celeriter condūxit quod Germānī appropinquābant. 6. Antea nēmō in eō oppidō armātus erat, nunc multī arma habent. 7. Hic homō equum filiō suō ēmit. 8. Gallī magnō auxiliō Rōmānīs in eō bellō erant.

248. 1. The head of that statue is beautiful. 2. The Gauls fought in the river and many were killed. 3. I saw no one on that journey. 4. The soldiers were a great help to our friends in danger. 5. The boys have worked industriously and are tired out. 6. I bought these books for my brother.



SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **emō** in the present and future indicative, active and passive. (2) Give a synopsis of **videō** in the third person singular, indicative passive. (3) Give a synopsis of **emō** in the third person plural, indicative active. (4) Decline together the words which mean a beautiful river. (5) Explain the case of **auxiliō** and of **Rōmānīs**, in sentence 8, 247.

¹ The missing genitive and ablative forms of this word are supplied by the genitive and ablative forms of **nūllus**.

LESSON XXXVII

THE THIRD DECLENSION, *I*-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

GENITIVE AND ACCUSATIVE PLURAL FORMS

249. Nouns with *i*-stems and mixed stems have the genitive plural ending in **-ium**. Masculine and feminine nouns of these classes may have either **-ēs** or **-īs** as the ending of the accusative plural. In the singular they are usually declined like consonant stems.

MASCULINE AND FEMININE *I*-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS

250. (1) Nouns which have the nominative ending in **-is** or **-ēs**, and which have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, are *i*-stem nouns.

(2) The most important mixed stems are:

- a.* Monosyllables ending in **-s** or **-x** following a consonant: **mōns**, **arx**.
- b.* Words of more than one syllable ending in **-ns** or **-rs**; **cliēns**, **cohors**.
- c.* The noun **nox**.

Nouns with *i*-stems and mixed stems are indicated in the vocabulary by the ending of the genitive plural, **-ium**, printed after that of the genitive singular.



MANNER OF WEARING THE TOGA

Masculine and feminine *i*-stems are declined thus:

hostis, M., *enemy*

Base, **host-**

caedēs, F., *slaughter*

Base, **caed-**

		SINGULAR		TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	hostis	NOM.	caedēs	-s
GEN.	hostis	GEN.	caedis	-is
DAT.	hostī	DAT.	caedī	-ī
ACC.	hostem	ACC.	caedem	-em
ABL.	hoste	ABL.	caede	-e
		PLURAL		
NOM.	hostēs	NOM.	caedēs	-ēs
GEN.	hostium	GEN.	caedium	-ium
DAT.	hostibus	DAT.	caedibus	-ibus
ACC.	hostīs, -ēs	ACC.	caedīs, -ēs	-īs, -ēs
ABL.	hostibus	ABL.	caedibus	-ibus

The declension of mixed stems is as follows:

urbs, F., *city*

Base, **urb-**

gēns, F., *nation, race*

Base, **gent-**

		SINGULAR		TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	urbs	NOM.	gēns	-s
GEN.	urbis	GEN.	gentis	-is
DAT.	urbī	DAT.	gentī	-ī
ACC.	urbem	ACC.	gentem	-em
ABL.	urbe	ABL.	gente	-e
		PLURAL		
NOM.	urbēs	NOM.	gentēs	-ēs
GEN.	urbium	GEN.	gentium	-ium
DAT.	urbibus	DAT.	gentibus	-ibus
ACC.	urbēs, -īs	ACC.	gentēs, -īs	-ēs, -īs
ABL.	urbibus	ABL.	gentibus	-ibus

251.

VOCABULARY

caedēs, caedis, -ium, F.,
slaughter, massacre

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy

dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēser-
tum, desert

fīnis, fīnis, -ium, M., end,
limit; *pl.*, country

gēns, gentis, -ium, F., nation
race

hostis, hostis, -ium, M., enemy
(*of the state*)

incendō, -ere, incendi, incēn-
sum, set on fire, burn

urbs, urbis, -ium, F., city

EXERCISES

252. 1. Gallī finīs lātōs habēbant. 2. In finibus eōrum multae urbēs erant. 3. Gentēs Germānōrum cum eīs bellum ōlim gerēbant. 4. Multās urbēs et oppida Gallōrum expugnāvērunt et incendērunt. 5. Hī saepe oppida dēseruērunt quod hostis timēbant. 6. Ā Germānīs magna caedēs facta est et multa oppida dēlēta sunt. 7. Sed Rōmānī in Galliam vērunt et Germānōs vicērunt. 8. Gallōs quoque (*also*) superāvērunt et Galliam prōvinciam Rōmānam fēcērunt.

253. 1. This nation has large cities in its territories. 2. No one fears danger and no one deserts his place. 3. This road is unknown to the enemy. 4. Our soldiers made a great slaughter of the enemy and destroyed many towns. 5. This book has been a great help (for a great help) to your son.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the nominative singular of each noun in 252. (2) Indicate the stem of each verb in the sentences of 252; and state whether it is the present, perfect, or participial stem. (3) Point out a phrase in the sentences of 253 which is translated by the dative of reference. (4) Decline *fīnis*. (5) Decline together the words for *an exhausted enemy*. (6) Name the nine adjectives which have the genitive ending *-ius*.

LESSON XXXVIII

THE THIRD DECLENSION (Continued), NEUTER *I*-STEMS:
GENDER IN THIRD DECLENSIONTHE THIRD DECLENSION, NEUTER *I*-STEMS

254. Nouns of the third declension which end in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar* are *i*-stems and are neuter in gender. They have the ablative singular ending in *-ī*, the nominative and accusative plural in *-ia*, and the genitive plural in *-ium*.

insigne, N.,
badge, decoration

BASE, **insign-**

calcar, N.,
spur

BASE, **calcār-**

animal, N.,
animal

BASE, **animāl-**

SINGULAR			TERMI- NATIONS
NOM. <i>insigne</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>animal</i>	—
GEN. <i>insignis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	<i>animālis</i>	-is
DAT. <i>insignī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>animālī</i>	-ī
ACC. <i>insigne</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>animal</i>	—
ABL. <i>insignī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>animālī</i>	-ī
PLURAL			
NOM. <i>insignia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>animālia</i>	-ia
GEN. <i>insignium</i>	<i>calcārium</i>	<i>animālium</i>	-ium
DAT. <i>insignibus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	-ibus
ACC. <i>insignia</i>	<i>calcāria</i>	<i>animālia</i>	-ia
ABL. <i>insignibus</i>	<i>calcāribus</i>	<i>animālibus</i>	-ibus

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

255. Nouns ending in *-tās* and *-tūs*, and most nouns ending in *-gō* and *-iō*, are feminine.

Nouns ending in *-tor* are masculine.

Nouns ending in *-e*, *-al*, *-ar*, *-n*, and *-t* are neuter.

256.

VOCABULARY

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build	īnsigne, īnsignis, -ium, N., badge, decoration
animal, animālis, -ium, N., animal	legiō, legiōnis, F., legion
calcar, calcāris, -ium, N., spur	nāvis, nāvis, -ium, F., ship
certē, <i>adv.</i> , certainly, at least	vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēdi- tum, sell

EXERCISES

257. 1. In hīs locīs multa animālia interfecta sunt. 2. Equus meus calcar magnopere timet. 3. Hī militēs īnsignia habent quod fortiter in bellō pugnāvērunt. 4. Labiēnus multās nāvēs aedificāvit et oppidum mūnīvit. 5. Ūna legiō ab hostibus dēlēta est. 6. Lēgātus urbem expugnāvit et multōs servōs vēndidit. 7. Hic homō certē hostis patriae fuit, sed nōn interfectus est. 8. Ōlim multae nāvēs in flūminibus patriae nostrae vīsae sunt.

258. 1. This small animal has a large head. 2. The boy wounded the horse with the spur. 3. Many ships were built by the lieutenant and the town was fortified. 4. We saw the badges and the weapons of the Gauls. 5. The soldiers were a help (for a help) to the sailors.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline *nāvis longa*. (2) Decline *animal magnum*. (3) Give the principal parts of the verbs in sentences 6, 7, and 8, 257. (4) Point out the differences between the case endings of *corpus* and of *calcar*. (5) Conjugate *vēndō* in the past perfect active indicative. (6) Explain the case use of *hostibus* in sentence 5, 257.

LESSON XXXIX

THE THIRD DECLENSION, IRREGULAR AND EXCEPTIONAL NOUNS

DECLENSION OF *vīs*

259. A few nouns of the third declension are somewhat irregular. The noun *vīs* has a different stem in the plural from that used in the singular.

vīs, *force, violence*; pl., *strength*

BASES, *vī-*, *vīr-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL
NOM.	<i>vīs</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>
GEN.	—	<i>vīrium</i>
DAT.	—	<i>vīribus</i>
ACC.	<i>vim</i>	<i>vīrīs or vīrēs</i>
ABL.	<i>vī</i>	<i>vīribus</i>

a. The accusative plural of *vīs* is to be distinguished from the dative and ablative plural of *vir* by the long *ī* of the first syllable.

DECLENSION OF *ignis* AND *turris*

260. There are a few *i*-stems which show variations from the declension of consonant stems in the singular as well as in the plural.

ignis, *M., fire*

BASE, *ign-*

turris, *F., tower*

BASE, *turr-*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	SINGULAR		PLURAL
NOM.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>turris</i>		<i>turrēs</i>
GEN.	<i>ignis</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>turris</i>		<i>turrium</i>
DAT.	<i>ignī</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turrī</i>		<i>turribus</i>
ACC.	<i>ignem</i>	<i>ignīs, -ēs</i>	<i>turrim, -em</i>		<i>turrīs, -ēs</i>
ABL.	<i>ignī, igne</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turrī, turre</i>		<i>turribus</i>

261.

VOCABULARY

bōs , ¹ bovis , M., F., ox, cow; <i>pl.</i> , cattle	neque , <i>conj.</i> , nor; neque . . . neque , neither . . . nor
ignis , ignis , -ium, M., fire	nōn numquam , <i>adv.</i> , some- times
impediō , -īre, impedivī , im- peditum , hinder	turris , turris , -ium, F., tower
mōns , montis , -ium, M., mountain	vīs , <i>see</i> 259, F., force, violence; <i>pl.</i> , strength

EXERCISES

262. 1. Hostēs urbem ignī dēlēvērunt. 2. Vim hostium nōn timēbāmus neque eōs vitābāmus. 3. In eō monte turrīm altam vīdinus. 4. Gallī iter nostrōrum impedivērunt et multōs milītēs interfēcērunt. 5. Puer territū est quod bovēs in agrō vīderat. 6. Neque rēx neque frāter eius tum in urbe erat. 7. Nōn numquam nāvēs ex hāc turri videntur. 8. Lēgātus quattuor legiōnēs ad montem dūxit et ibi castra mūnīvit.

263. 1. The Gauls destroyed the tower with fire. 2. The violence of the soldiers frightened the townspeople and many fled from the town. 3. The boy had wandered in the mountains five hours. 4. We saw horses and cattle on the islands, but we saw no men. 5. Sometimes the march of the legions was hindered by the deep rivers and the forests. 6. In that city there was neither slave nor master.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Name the three classes of nouns in the third declension. (2) Give the case endings of masculine and feminine consonant stems. (3) Give the case endings of masculine and feminine i-stems and mixed stems. (4) Give the rules for gender in the third declension. (5) Decline together **vīs magna**.

¹ The genitive, dative, and ablative of the plural of **bōs** are somewhat irregular. These forms do not occur in the exercises of this book. They may be found in the Appendix, section 3, D.

LESSON XL

ĪDEM: GENITIVE OF THE WHOLEDECLENSION OF **ĪDEM**

264. The declension of **īdem**, *same*, is as follows:

	SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	īdem	eadem	īdem
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	īdem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem
PLURAL			
NOM.	īdem <i>or</i> eīdem	eaedem	eaedem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	eīsdem <i>or</i> īsdem	eīsdem <i>or</i> īsdem	eīsdem <i>or</i> īsdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eaedem
ABL.	eīsdem <i>or</i> īsdem	eīsdem <i>or</i> īsdem	eīsdem <i>or</i> īsdem

THE GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

265. The genitive is sometimes used to designate the whole of something of which a part is denoted by the word on which the genitive depends. This use of the genitive is called the Genitive of the Whole.

Multī nostrōrum fūgērunt, *many of our men fled*.

a. The Latin uses the genitive of the whole in certain phrases where the English employs an adjective in agreement.

Nihil novī, *nothing new* (*nothing of that which is new*).

266.

VOCABULARY

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be absent, be away, be distant	eques, equitis, M., horseman; <i>pl.,</i> cavalry
aestās, aestātis, F., summer	īdem, eadem, īdēm, same, the same
apud, prep. w. acc., among, with, at the house of	pars, partis, -ium, F., part
dux, ducis, M., leader	vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, over-run, plunder

EXERCISES

267. 1. Pars equitum statim fūgit et multī interfectī sunt.
2. Iī hominēs numquam amīcōs dēseruērunt. 3. Apud Rōmānōs iūstitia semper laudāta est. 4. Īdem dux ad castra iterum cum eīdem militibus veniet. 5. Silva nōn longē ab eō flūmine abest. 6. Eam aestātem in Ītaliā cum amīcīs mānsī. 7. Germānī eandem partem Ītaliae anteā vexāverant. 8. Gallī turrim ignī dēlēverunt sed oppidum nōn expugnāverunt. 9. Nihil novī dē bellō audīvī, quod nōn in urbe fuī.

268. 1. Part of the men were absent from the town because the lieutenant feared no danger from (ab) the enemy. 2. We shall send the same leader and the same soldiers. 3. We remained in Italy one summer and saw many beautiful cities. 4. The Gauls overran part of Britain and destroyed many towns. 5. Among the soldiers, these arms are praised. 6. We saw the horsemen in the river and we fled.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **īdem dux**. (2) Decline together **eadem pars**. (3) Point out three examples of the use of the genitive of the whole in the sentences of 267. (4) Conjugate **absum** in the present indicative and the future indicative. (5) Give a synopsis of **fugiō** in the third person singular indicative active. (6) Explain the case of **aestātem**, in sentence 6, 267.

EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

269.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aestās, -tātis, F. <i>summer</i>	alius, alia, aliud
animal, animālis, N.	alter, altera, alterum
animus, -ī, M.	armatus, -a, -um
bōs, bovis, M., F.	cārus, -a, -um
caedēs, caedis, F.	dēfessus, -a, -um
calcar, caleāris, N.	īdem, eadem, idem
captīvus, -ī, M.	incognitus, -a, -um
caput, capitis, N.	neuter, neutra, neutrum
castellum, -ī, N.	nūllus, nūlla, nūllum
corpus, corporis, N.	sōlus, sōla, sōlum
dux, ducis, M.	tōtus, tōta, tōtum
eques, equitis, M.	ūllus, ūlla, ūllum
fīnis, fīnis, M.	ūnus, ūna, ūnum
flūmēn, flūminis, N.	uter, utra, utrum
frāter, frātris, M.	absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus
gēns, gentis, F.	aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
homō, hominis, M.	āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum
hostis, hostis, M.	condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
ignis, ignis, M.	dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum
impedīmentum, -ī, N.	dēserō, -ere, -uī, -tum
īnsigne, īnsignis, N.	emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum
īter, itineris, N.	excēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
iūstitia, -ae, F.	faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum
legiō, legiōnis, F.	fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
lēx, lēgis, F.	iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactum
lūna, -ae, F.	impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
mīles, mīlitis, M.	incendō, -ere, incendi, incēnsum
mōns, montis, M.	interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
nāvis, nāvis, F.	pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
nēmō, dat. nēminī, M., F.	pervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
nihil, indeclinable, N.	recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum

nūntius, -ī, M. *messenger*pars, partis, F. *part*rēgnum, -ī, N. *kingdom*rēx, rēgis, M. *king*subsidiū, -ī, N. *reinforcement*trīdium, -ī, N. *three days*turris, turris, F. *tower*urbs, urbis, F. *city*victōria, -ae, F. *victory*vīs, F. *force*

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

certē *certainly*

item

iterum *a*magnopere *much*nōndum *not*

nōn numquam

apud *at*

neque

270. RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

absent	hostile
animal	ignite
army	impede
bovine	incendiary
capital	legion
corporal	naval
desert	part
duke	turret
edifice	urban
ensign	vendor
final	vex



DRAWING ON THE OUTER WALL OF A HOUSE IN POMPEII

LESSON XLI

PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE OF REGULAR VERBS:
USE OF INFINITIVE

THE PRESENT PASSIVE INFINITIVE

271. The terminations of the present passive infinitive in the four conjugations are as follows. St

I.	II.	III.	IV.
-ārī	-ērī	-ī	-irī

The following table shows the formation and translation of the present infinitives, active and passive, of the four conjugations:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
I.	portāre, <i>to carry</i>	portārī, <i>to be carried</i>
II.	monēre, <i>to warn</i>	monērī, <i>to be warned</i>
III.	{ dūcere, <i>to lead</i> capere, <i>to take</i>	{ dūcī, <i>to be led</i> capī, <i>to be taken</i>
IV.	audīre, <i>to hear</i>	audīrī, <i>to be heard</i>

THE INFINITIVE AS MODIFIER OF A VERB (COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE)

272. The infinitive is frequently used in direct dependence on a verb, as an object, or as an adverbial modifier. When thus used, it may be said to complete the meaning of the verb on which it depends.

Mātūrat venire, *he hastens to come.*

a. A dependent English infinitive expressing purpose in such phrases as, *We came to help you*, represents a different usage, and cannot be translated by a Latin infinitive.

273.

VOCABULARY

conveniō, -īre, convēnī, conventum, come together, assemble	incipiō, -ere, incēpī, incēptum, begin
cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupitum, wish, desire	invītus, -a, -um, unwilling
ferus, -a, -um, fierce	mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten
praemium, -ī, N., reward	possideō, -ēre, possēdī, possessum, possess

EXERCISES

274. 1. Hic puer laudārī semper cupit. 2. Hostēs convenīre nōn mātūrāvērunt quod invītī erant. 3. Eī hominēs ferī fīnēs lātōs possident. 4. Lēgātus militēs ad castra hostium dūcī iubet. 5. Sonus armōrum audīrī incipit et oppidānī terrentur. 6. Urbs nostra longē ā monte abest. 7. Praemium eī nōn dabitur quod nōn honestus est. 8. Magna pars eius īnsulae Gallīs incognita erat sed Rōmānī ibi multa oppida repperērunt.

275. 1. The lieutenant wishes to be sent to Gaul. 2. You do not wish to be warned because you do not see the danger. 3. This reward was given by the king to his brother. 4. The soldiers are beginning to assemble, but the leader is absent. 5. Many hastened to flee from the city, but this man remained. 6. There are many fierce animals in the forests of that island.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the present active and passive infinitives of all the verbs of the vocabulary of this lesson. (2) Explain the use of the infinitives in sentences 1 and 2, 274. (3) Explain the case of *īnsulae*, 8, 274. (4) Give the genitive and the dative singular of the phrase which means *the same reward*. (5) Give the accusative singular and plural of *vīs*.

LESSON XLII

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION: ABLATIVE OF MANNER

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

276. Some adjectives of the third declension have only one form for the three genders in the nominative singular, others have two forms, one for the masculine and feminine and one for the neuter, and others have three forms, one for each gender. They are accordingly known as adjectives of one, two, or three endings.

Those of three endings and two endings are *i*-stems. They are declined as follows:

ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS

ācer, bold

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre	ācrēs, -īs	ācrēs, -īs	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS

omnis, all

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
GEN.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
DAT.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
ACC.	omnem	omne	omnēs, -īs	omnia
ABL.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

THE ABLATIVE OF MANNER

277. The manner in which an act is done may be expressed by the ablative with **cum**. But **cum** may be omitted if the noun is modified by an adjective. This use of the ablative is called the Ablative of Manner.

Cum virtūte pugnant, *they fight with courage.*

Cum magnā virtūte pugnant, or virtūte magnā pugnant,
they fight with great courage.

278.

VOCABULARY

ācer, ācris, ācre, spirited,
bold, sharp

Caesar, Caesaris, M., Caesar,
(*Gaius Julius Caesar, a famous Roman general and statesman*)

celeritās, -tātis, F., speed

fortis, forte, brave

omnis, omne, all, every

pedester, pedestris, pedestre,
on foot; **cōpiae pedestrēs**,
infantry

vīcus, -ī, M., village

virtūs, virtūtis, F., courage

EXERCISES

279. 1. Cōpiae pedestrēs (cum) magnā celeritāte appropinquāvērunt. 2. Nullum bellum in omnī Ītaliā eō annō erat. 3. Ille puer equum ācrem habet. 4. Gallī fortēs erant et bellum cum virtūte gerēbant. 5. Hostēs omnēs vicōs incendērunt et agrōs vexāvērunt. 6. Omnēs convenīre iussī erant sed multī invītī erant. 7. Inter montem et flūmen urbs magna erat. 8. Caesar saepe virtūtem mīlitum suōrum laudat. 9. In omnibus locīs ignēs vidēbantur et multī fugiēbant.

280. 1. The Germans attacked the city with great courage and many of them were killed. 2. Part of the village was burned by the enemy. 3. The lieutenant sent the infantry with great speed, but the horsemen had fled. 4. The danger

begins to be seen by all. ~~5.~~ You demand the aid of all your friends, but you never help them.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together *mīles ācer*. (2) Decline together *vir fortis*. (3) Give the genitive plural of *mōns* and *flūmen*. (4) Decline *pedester* in full. (5) Explain the case of *virtūte* in sentence 4 and of *flūmen* in sentence 7, 279. (6) Give the principal parts of the verbs *gerō* and *iubeō*.

LESSON XLIII

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES (Continued): ORDER OF WORDS IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

THIRD DECLENSION ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING

281. Most third declension adjectives of one ending are *i*-stems. The ablative singular sometimes ends in *-e*.

fēlix, fortunate

potēns, powerful

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēns</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>		<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentis</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>		<i>potentī</i>	<i>potentī</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>		<i>potentem</i>	<i>potēns</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>		<i>potentī, -e</i>	<i>potentī, -e</i>

PLURAL

NOM.	<i>fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>		<i>potentēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
GEN.	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>		<i>potentium</i>	<i>potentium</i>
DAT.	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>		<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>
ACC.	<i>fēlicēs, -īs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>		<i>potentēs, -īs</i>	<i>potentia</i>
ABL.	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>		<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>

282. *Vetus*, *old*, is a consonant stem, and is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>		<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
GEN.	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>		<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
DAT.	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>		<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
ACC.	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>		<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
ABL.	<i>vetere</i>	<i>vetere</i>		<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

ORDER OF WORDS IN PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES

283. Phrases consisting of a monosyllabic preposition and a noun modified by an adjective sometimes have the adjective first and the preposition between the adjective and the noun.

Magnā cum virtūte, with great courage.

Hīs dē causīs, from these causes (for these reasons).

284. VOCABULARY

<i>accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptum</i> , accept, receive	<i>fēlix, genitive fēlicis</i> , happy, fortunate
<i>centum, indecl. num.</i> , one hundred	<i>pāx, pācis, F.</i> , peace
<i>dē, prep. with abl.</i> , from, down from; about, concerning	<i>potēns, genitive potentis</i> , powerful
<i>dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum</i> , owe, ought	<i>vetus, genitive veteris</i> , old; former, of long standing

EXERCISES

285. 1. *Nihil dē frātre tuō audivimus.* 2. *Hic puer praemia magna in scholā accēpit et ab amīcō tuō laudātur.* 3. *Epistolam hodiē ad eum hominem mittere dēbēmus.* 4. *Virī bonī semper pācem cupiunt.* 5. *Omnēs cum propter iūstitiam et virtūtem eius laudant.* 6. *Hic rēx fēlix et potēns erat et multōs sociōs habēbat.* 7. *In eō locō eōsdem virōs saepe vīderāmus.* 8. *Magnā cum celeritāte centum*

virī ex agrīs convēnērunt. 9. Hae iniūriae veterēs sunt sed tamen in animō manent.



ARCH OVER ROMAN ROAD

286. 1. You (*singular*) ought to invite all your friends. 2. This powerful king had many soldiers and he waged many wars. 3. We are happy because we have received a letter today. 4. These soldiers were far distant from the battle. 5. This man is working, and we ought to help him. 6. Our old friends are now in the city.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Give the Latin equivalent for the phrase *with great speed*. (2) Explain the use of the infinitive **mittere**, in sentence 3, 285. (3) Mention adjectives illustrating each of the three classes of third declension adjectives. (4) Give the ablative singular and the genitive plural of **fortis** and **vetus**. (5) Give a synopsis of **accipiō** in the third person singular, active, and the third person plural, passive, indicative.

SIXTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum | 29. īdem, eadem, idem |
| 2. absum, -esse, āfuī,
āfutūrus | 30. impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum |
| 3. accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptum | 31. incendō, -cendere, -cendī,
-cēsum |
| 4. ācer, -cris, -cre | 32. incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptum |
| 5. addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum | 33. interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
-fectum |
| 6. aestās, -tātis, F. | 34. iter, itineris, N. |
| 7. animus, -ī, M. | 35. lēx, lēgis, F. |
| 8. apud, <i>prep. with acc.</i> | 36. mīles, mīlitis, M. |
| 9. caput, capitis, N. | 37. mōns, montis, M. |
| 10. celeritās, -tātis, F. | 38. nāvis, nāvis, F. |
| 11. centum | 39. nec <i>or</i> neque, <i>conj.</i> |
| 12. certē, <i>adv.</i> | 40. negōtium, -ī, N. |
| 13. conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,
-ventum | 41. neque . . . neque <i>or</i>
nec . . . nec |
| 14. corpus, corporis, N. | 42. nōbilis, -e |
| 15. cupiō, -ere, cupīvī,
cupītum | 43. omnis, -e |
| 16. dē, <i>prep. with abl.</i> | 44. pars, partis, F. |
| 17. dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum | 45. pāx, pācis, F. |
| 18. dēsum, -esse, -fuī | 46. pedester, -tris, -tre |
| 19. dux, ducis, M. | 47. perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,
-ventum |
| 20. ēgregius, -a, -um | 48. praemium, -ī, N. |
| 21. eques, equitis, M. | 49. recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptum |
| 22. fīnis, finis, M. | 50. rēgnum, -ī, N. |
| 23. flūmen, flūminis, N. | 51. rēx, rēgis, M. |
| 24. fortis, forte | 52. servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum |
| 25. frāter, frātris, M. | 53. terra, -ae, F. |
| 26. genus, generis, N. | 54. trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum |
| 27. homō, hominis, M. | |
| 28. hostis, hostis, M. | |

55. turris, turris, F.

57. virtūs, virtūtis, F.

56. urbs, urbis, F.

58. vīs (see 259) F.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|---|---|
| 1. put away, hide | 22. end; <i>pl.</i> boundaries, territory | 42. (knowable), noble, famous |
| 2. be away | | |
| 3. accept, receive | | 43. every; <i>pl.</i> all |
| 4. sharp, keen | 23. river | 44. part |
| 5. add | 24. brave | 45. peace |
| 6. summer | 25. brother | 46. infantry (<i>adj.</i>) |
| 7. spirit, life, soul | 26. race, kind | 47. come through, arrive |
| 8. among, at the home of | 27. man | |
| 9. head | 28. enemy (of the state) | 48. reward |
| 10. speed, swiftness | 29. the same | 49. take back; receive; <i>with sē</i> , withdraw |
| 11. one hundred | 30. hinder | |
| 12. certainly, at least | 31. set on fire | 50. kingdom |
| 13. come together | 32. begin, undertake | 51. king |
| 14. body | 33. kill | 52. save, protect |
| 15. desire | 34. journey, road | 53. land, earth |
| 16. down from, concerning | 35. law | 54. drag |
| 17. owe, ought | 36. soldier | 55. tower |
| 18. be lacking | 37. mountain | 56. city |
| 19. leader | 38. ship | 57. manliness, courage |
| 20. eminent, unusual | 39. and not, nor | |
| 21. horseman | 40. business, trouble | 58. force, violence; <i>pl.</i> strength |
| | 41. neither, neither . . . nor | |

WORD STUDY

1. Explain the formation of **accipiō**, **addō**, **absum**.
2. Find Latin words to which the following are related:

capital	final	incendiary	military
convention	fraternal	itinerary	pedestrian
duke	impede	legal	reception

LESSON XLIV

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

THE DECLENSION OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

287. The relative pronoun is declined as follows:

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

AGREEMENT OF RELATIVE PRONOUN

288. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

Homō quem vidēs amicus meus est, *the man whom you see is my friend.*

289.

VOCABULARY

causa, -ae, F., cause
 dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēn-
 sum, defend
 mare, maris, N., sea
 māter, mātris, F., mother
 pater, patris, M., father

quī, quae, quod, who, which,
 that
 resistō, -ere, restitī, (*with*
dative), resist
 tempus, temporis, N., time,
 occasion

EXERCISES

290. 1. Praemia lēgātō quī oppidum dēfendit dabuntur.
 2. Haec urbs cuius mūrum eō tempore vidēbās magna est. 3.
 Pater puerī cui praemia data sunt fēlīx est. 4. Fēmina quam
 vidēs est māter huius puerī. 5. Multae erant causae eius
 bellī veteris. 6. Hoc mare lātum et altum est. 7. Oppidānī

militibus resistēbant ā quibus oppidum oppugnātum erat.
 *8. Gallī magnā cum virtūte patriam suam dēfendēbant. 9.
 Multī erant vicī quōs militēs incendērunt.

291. 1. The cause of the war which was being waged is unknown. 2. At that time there was peace among the Gauls. 3. The father of this king resisted the enemies who wished to destroy his city. 4. The legion which had been sent, attacked the camp with great courage. 5. You feared the violence of these soldiers, but they have defended your city.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain what is meant by "simple sentence," "complex sentence," and "compound sentence." (2) State to which of these classes each of the sentences of 291 belongs. (3) Point out the subordinate clauses of the complex sentences in 291. (4) Name the antecedents of the relative pronouns in these complex sentences. (5) Explain the cases of the relative pronouns in 290.

LESSON XLV

THE FOURTH DECLENSION

292. In the fourth declension the nominative ends in **-us** for the masculine and feminine and in **-ū** for the neuter. Most nouns ending in **-us** are masculine.

exercitus, M., army

BASE, **exercit-**

cornū, N., horn

BASE, **corn-**

SINGULAR

		TERMI- NATIONS			TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	exercitus	-us	NOM.	cornū	-ū
GEN.	exercitūs	-ūs	GEN.	cornūs	-ūs
DAT.	exercituī, -ū	-uī, -ū	DAT.	cornū	-ū
ACC.	exercitum	-um	ACC.	cornū	-ū
ABL.	exercitū	-ū	ABL.	cornū	-ū

PLURAL

NOM.	exercitūs	-ūs	NOM.	cornua	-ua
GEN.	exercituum	-uum	GEN.	cornuum	-uum
DAT.	exercitibus	-ibus	DAT.	cornibus	-ibus
ACC.	exercitūs	-ūs	ACC.	cornua	-ua
ABL.	exercitibus	-ibus	ABL.	cornibus	-ibus

a. The dative and ablative plurals of a few masculine and feminine nouns of the fourth declension end in -ūbus.

293.

VOCABULARY

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, surround	manus, -ūs, F., hand; band (of men)
cornū, cornūs, N., horn; wing (of an army)	petō, -ere, petīvī or petiī, peti- tum, beg for, seek
exercitus, -ūs, M., army, body of trained men	tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, hold out
flūctus, -ūs, M., wave	vōx, vōcis, F., voice

EXERCISES

294. 1. Flūctūs maris altī erant et nāvis in periculō erat. 2. Castra in quibus exercitus est circumventa sunt. 3. Galli ad Caesarem manūs tendēbant et pācem petēbant. 4. Vōcēs Gallōrum quās militēs audivērunt eōs terruērunt. 5. Id cornū superātum est. 6. Exercitus quem Gallī condūxerant parvus erat. 7. Legiō quam Labiēnus in castrīs reliquit ab hostibus oppugnāta est. 8. Fēlix es quod patria tua pācem habet.

295. 1. The Germans will surround the town which the army is defending. 2. We heard the sound of the waves at that time. 3. The Gauls resisted the army of the Romans and fought bravely. 4. The enemy will hold out their hands and beg for peace. 5. You did not receive the letter which I sent.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together the words which mean *a small hand*. (2) Explain the gender and number of the relative pronouns in the sentences of 294. (3) Point out the complex sentences in 295. (4) Point out the subjects of the subordinate clauses in these complex sentences. (5) Indicate the personal endings, tense signs, and stems of the forms **tendēbant** and **condūxerant**. (6) Conjugate **petō** in the future indicative active.

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

296. (1) The third declension of **i**-stem nouns.
 (2) The third declension of adjectives.
 (3) The fourth declension of nouns.
 (4) The declension of **īdem**.
 (5) The relative pronoun.
 (6) The present infinitive of the four conjugations.
 (7) Gender in the third declension.
 (8) The genitive of the whole.
 (9) The ablative of manner.

297. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation.

accept	fortitude	pedestrian
celerity	inception	possession
century	manual	premium
convene	marine	resist
convention	maternal	temporary
defend	omnipresent	veteran
felicity	pacify	virtue
fluctuate	paternal	vocal

LESSON XLVI

DECLENSION OF **DOMUS**: LOCATIVE CASEDECLENSION OF **DOMUS**

298. The noun **domus**, *home*, is irregular in that some of its cases have forms both of the second and of the fourth declensions.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	domus <i>domus</i>	domūs
GEN.	domūs, domī	domuum, domōrum
DAT.	domuī, domō	domibus
ACC.	domum	domōs, domūs
ABL.	domō, domū	domibus

THE LOCATIVE CASE

299. With names of towns and small islands, also with **domus**, the place where some act is done or something exists is expressed by a form called the Locative Case. This has the same form as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions; elsewhere it has the same form as the ablative: **Rōmae**, *at Rome*. **Ocelī**, *at Ocelum*.

The locative of **domus** is **domī**.

a. The ablative of the noun **locus** (and occasionally of a few other nouns of similar meaning) is commonly used without a preposition to denote Place Where, if modified by an adjective: **hīs locīs**, *in these places*.

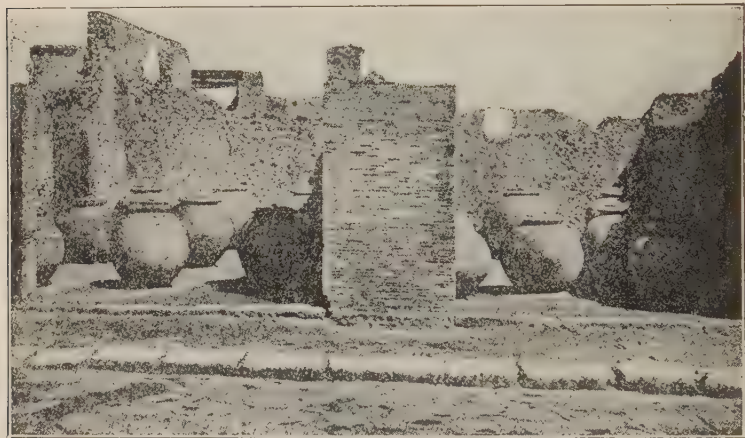
300.

VOCABULARY

clārus , -a, -um, distinguished, famous	inīquus -a, -um, unfavorable, unjust
cōscribō , -ere, cōscripsī , cōscriptum , enroll	laus , laudis , F., praise
domus , -ūs, (-ī), F., home, house	nōmen , nōminis , N., name
	Ocelum , -ī, N., Ocelum (<i>a town</i>)
	Rōma , -ae, F., Rome

EXERCISES

301. 1/ Saepe nōmen huius virī audīvistī. 2. Nōn omnēs quī fortēs sunt laudem cupiunt. 3. Hic homō clārus Rōmae domicilium habēbat. 4/ Cūr hae legiōnēs nōn Ocelī hiemābant? 5. Exercitus castra in locō inīquō posuit. 6. Caesar quattuor legiōnēs novās cōscripsit. 7. Multōs annōs domī mānsimus. 8. Ille puer labōrat quod praemium petit. 9. Id cornū exercitūs locum dēseruit et ad montem fūgit.



ROMAN OIL VAULT

302. 1. The names of these nations are unknown to Caesar. 2. The soldiers who fought bravely in an unfavorable place received praise. 3. The son of this distinguished German is in Rome. 4. At home you (*sing.*) were often unhappy. 5. The town in which the soldier's father lives is small. 6. We do not desire war, but we shall defend our homes.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the endings of the fourth declension. (2) Decline together *fluctus altus*. (3) Decline the relative pronoun in full. (4) Give a synopsis of *cōscribō* in the third person singular, active voice, indicative. (5) Explain the case of *Rōmae* in sentence 3, 301.

LESSON XLVII

NUMERALS: DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

CARDINAL NUMERALS

303. The cardinal numerals from one to twenty are as follows:

<i>ūnus</i> , -a, -um,	<i>one</i>	<i>ūndecim</i> ,	<i>eleven</i>
<i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duo</i> ,	<i>two</i>	<i>duodecim</i> ,	<i>twelve</i>
<i>trēs</i> , <i>tria</i> ,	<i>three</i>	<i>tredecim</i> ,	<i>thirteen</i>
<i>quattuor</i> ,	<i>four</i>	<i>quattuordecim</i> ,	<i>fourteen</i>
<i>quīnque</i> ,	<i>five</i>	<i>quīndecim</i> ,	<i>fifteen</i>
<i>sex</i> ,	<i>six</i>	<i>sēdecim</i> ,	<i>sixteen</i>
<i>septem</i> ,	<i>seven</i>	<i>septendecim</i> ,	<i>seventeen</i>
<i>octō</i> ,	<i>eight</i>	<i>duodēvigintī</i> ,	<i>eighteen</i>
<i>novem</i> ,	<i>nine</i>	<i>ūndēvigintī</i> ,	<i>nineteen</i>
<i>decem</i> ,	<i>ten</i>	<i>vīgintī</i> ,	<i>twenty</i>

DECLENSION OF *DUO* AND *TRĒS*

304. *Duo* and *trēs* are declined as follows:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>duo</i>	<i>duae</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
GEN.	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>duārum</i>	<i>duōrum</i>	<i>trium</i>	<i>trium</i>
DAT.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>
ACC.	<i>duōs</i> , <i>duo</i>	<i>duās</i>	<i>duo</i>	<i>trēs</i>	<i>tria</i>
ABL.	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>duābus</i>	<i>duōbus</i>	<i>tribus</i>	<i>tribus</i>

a. The declension of *ūnus* has been explained in 234. With the exception of *duo* and *trēs*, the other numerals given above are not declined. The remaining numerals from twenty-one to one thousand may be found in the Appendix, section 14.

305.

VOCABULARY

Aquitānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Aquitanians	dīvīsus, -a, -um (<i>participle as adjective</i>), divided
Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the Belgians	fortissimus, -a, -um (<i>superlative of fortis</i>), bravest
Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., the Celts	incolō, -ere, incoluī, inhabit
dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, divide, separate	quoque,¹ adv., also
	tertius, -a, -um, third

EXERCISES

GAUL AND ITS INHABITANTS

306. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs. Ūnam hārum partium incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī. Tertiam partem incolunt Celtae. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae qui longē ā prōvinciā nostrā absunt et saepe cum Germānīs bellum gerunt. Helvētīi sunt gēns Celtārum. Hī quoque cum Germānīs bellum gerunt et fortissimī Celtārum sunt.

307. 1. There are three parts of Gaul. 2. The province is far distant from the Belgians. 3. One part is inhabited by brave men. 4. War is often waged with the Germans, who have good weapons and do not fear the Gauls. 5. The third part is inhabited by the Celts.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline **ūnus**. (2) Give the accusative of the phrase meaning *three Aquitanians*. (3) Give the present passive infinitive of **dīvidō**. (4) Explain the case of **Celtārum** in the last sentence of 306. (5) Decline **omnis**. (6) Conjugate **incolō** in the perfect indicative active.

¹ The adverb **quoque** always stands after the word which it emphasizes.

LESSON XLVIII

THE FIFTH DECLENSION

308. The genitive singular of the fifth declension ends in **-ēī** (after a consonant, **-eī**). The nominative singular ends in **-ēs**.

diēs, *day*—BASE, **di-**

rēs, *thing*—BASE, **r-**

SINGULAR

PLURAL

			TERMI- NATIONS			TERMI- NATIONS
NOM.	diēs	rēs	-ēs	diēs	rēs	-ēs
GEN.	diēī	reī	-ēī (-eī)	diērum	rērum	-ērum
DAT.	diēī	reī	-ēī (-eī)	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus
ACC.	diem	rem	-em	diēs	rēs	-ēs
ABL.	diē	rē	-ē	diēbus	rēbus	-ēbus

a. **Diēs** is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine in the singular, but always masculine in the plural. The other nouns of this declension are feminine (except one compound of **diēs**).

b. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined in full. Other nouns of this declension lack some or all of the plural forms.

309.

VOCABULARY

cīvitās , -tātis , F., state	indiciūm , -ī , N., disclosure,
diēs , -ēī , M., F., day	information; per indiciūm ,
ducentī , ¹ -ae , -a , <i>num. adj.</i> ,	through informers
two hundred	Orgetorīx , Orgetorīgis , M.,
ēnūntiō , -āre , -āvī , -ātum ,	Orgetorix, a Helvetian
make known, report, dis-	chief
close	per , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , through,
finitimū , -a , -um , neighbor-	by means of
ing; M. <i>pl.</i> , neighbors	rēs , reī , F., thing, affair

¹ The numerals for two hundred, three hundred, etc., are declined like the plural of **bonus**. **Centum** is not declined.

EXERCISES

310. 1. Multōs diēs; eō diē; hīs diēbus; omnium rērum; ad eas rēs. 2. Caesar ducentōs milītēs in castrīs reliquit.

THE PLOT OF ORGETORIX

Ōlim fuit dux apud Helvētiōs cuius nōmen erat Orgetorix. Is rēgnum in cīvitāte occupāre cupiēbat, et auxilium ab duōbus ducibus cīvitātum finitimārum postulāvit. Sed ea rēs Helvētiis per indicium ēnūntiāta est, quī cōsiliis Orgetorigis restitērunt.

311. 1. Orgetorix, who wished to seize royal power, had large forces. 2. For many days this man worked industriously. 3. On that day two famous men were killed. 4. Our friends remained in Rome three days. 5. The Romans sent two armies into Gaul. 6. A reward was given to the slave who disclosed this fact (thing).

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline the phrase meaning *three days*. (2) Decline **domus**. (3) Give the rule for the locative case (299). (4) Conjugate **ēnūntiō** in the present indicative active. (5) Give the genitive plural of **hōra**, **animus**, and **diēs**. (6) Explain the case of **Helvētiis** in the last sentence of 310.



ROMAN JAVELINS

LESSON XLIX

ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT: ACCUSATIVE OF
PLACE TO WHICH

THE ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT

312. The accusative is used to express extent in space.

Fossa duo mīlia passuum patēbat, *the ditch extended two miles.*

THE ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

313. With names of towns and small islands, also with **domus**, the accusative without a preposition is used to name the place to which motion is directed. With other words a preposition, **ad** or **in**, is used.

Legiōnēs Ocelum venient, *the legions will come to Ocelum.*

Legiōnēs ad urbem venient, *the legions will come to the city.*

314.

VOCABULARY

atque, *conj.*, and
contentus, **-a**, **-um**, contented,
satisfied
itaque, *adv.*, and so, accord-
ingly
lātītūdō, **lātītūdinis**, *F.*, width
longītūdō, **longītūdinis**, *F.*,
length.

mille, *indecl. num.*, thousand,
one thousand
octōgintā, *indecl. num.*, eighty
passus, **-ūs**, *M.*, pace; **mille**
passūs (*or passuum*), *a*
(Roman) mile
quadrāgintā, *indecl. num.*,
forty

a. **Mille** in the singular is not declined and is generally used as an adjective. In the plural it is a third declension neuter noun with the forms **mīlia**, **mīlium**, **mīlibus**, etc. The Latin form of expression is always *two thousands of soldiers*, **duo mīlia mīlitum**, etc. The genitive used in these phrases is the genitive of the whole.

EXERCISES

315. 1. Nūntius Rōmam nōndum pervēnit. 2. Pater puellae domum veniet. 3. Puerī librōs suōs domum portāvērunt. 4. Exercitus per magnam silvam iter fēcerat.

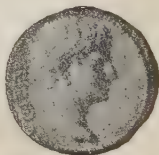
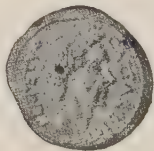
THE HELVETIAN EMIGRATION

Helvētiī finēs lātōs et agrōs bonōs possidēbant. Finēs eōrum ducenta quadrāgintā mīlia passuum in longitudinem, centum octōgintā in lātitudinem patēbant. Helvētiī nōn contentī erant quod bellum gerere semper cupiēbant et multis locīs flūmina et montēs altī ā gentibus finitimīs eōs dividēbant. Itaque vicōs incendērunt atque ē patriā suā excessērunt.

316. 1. The territories of the Helvetians extended many miles. 2. The sailor has not yet arrived at Rome. 3. We shall come home within ten days. 4. The army which was sent to Ocelum was small. 5. The legions marched (made a march) through the mountains for many days (177). 6. The Helvetians collected an army and resisted the friends of Orgetorix.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **Rōmam** in sentence 1, 315. (2) Decline **passus**. (3) Explain the case of **gentibus** in line 8, 315. (4) Indicate the personal endings in the last three verbs of 315. (5) Give the cardinal numerals from one to twenty. (6) Point out a phrase in 316 which expresses duration of time and one which expresses time within which, and name the Latin case required by each.



ROMAN COINS

LESSON L

CONJUGATION OF *eō*: ABLATIVE OF ROUTETHE CONJUGATION OF *eō*

317. The irregular verb *eō*, *go*, is conjugated in the present system in the indicative as follows:

PRESENT	IMPERFECT	FUTURE
	SINGULAR	
<i>eō</i>	<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibō</i>
<i>īs</i>	<i>ibās</i>	<i>ibis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>ibat</i>	<i>ibit</i>
	PLURAL	
<i>imus</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>ibimus</i>
<i>itis</i>	<i>ibātis</i>	<i>ibitis</i>
<i>eunt</i>	<i>ibant</i>	<i>ibunt</i>

The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem *i-*.

PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
	SINGULAR	
<i>iī</i>	<i>ieram</i>	<i>ierō</i>
<i>istī or iistī</i>	<i>ierās</i>	<i>ieris</i>
<i>iit or it</i>	<i>ierat</i>	<i>ierit</i>
	PLURAL	
<i>imus</i>	<i>ierāmus</i>	<i>ierimus</i>
<i>istis or iistis</i>	<i>ierātis</i>	<i>ieritis</i>
<i>iērunt or iēre</i>	<i>ierant</i>	<i>ierint</i>

a. Occasionally forms are found in the perfect system with the stem *iv-*: *ivit*, *iverat*, etc.

b. The compounds *exeō*, *go out*, *trānseō*, *go across*, *redeō*, *return*, etc., are conjugated like *eō*.

THE ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

318. The way or route by which one goes may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Hāc viā ibimus, *we shall go by this road.*

319.

VOCABULARY

Cassius , -ī, M., Cassius, a Roman name (<i>Lucius Cassius, a Roman consul killed in battle with the Helvetians</i>)	profectiō , -ōnis, F., setting out, departure
eō , ire, iī (ivī), itum, go	proximus , -a, -um, nearest, next to
exeō , -ire, exiī, exitum, go out, go forth (from), go from	sub , prep. with acc. or abl., under (<i>takes acc. to denote place toward which motion is directed, and abl. to denote place where something exists or occurs</i>)
iugum , -ī, N., yoke; ridge (<i>of hills or mountains</i>)	trānseō , -ire, trānsiī, trānsitum, cross
L. , abbreviation for Lūcius , a Roman first name	

EXERCISES

320. 1. Exeunt; exībant; exībunt; trānsit; trānsībit; it; ībit. 2. Omnēs eōdem itinere ībant. 3. Ex urbe cum omnibus amicis suis exiit. 4. Eō diē legiōnēs vīginti mīlia passuum ierant.

THE HELVETIANS AND THE ROMANS

Helvētiī hostēs populī Rōmānī erant et anteā exercitum Rōmānum vīcerant. L. Cassium, ducem eius exercitūs, interfecerant et exercitum sub iugum mīserant. Itaque profectiō eōrum periculōsa populō Rōmānō erat quod prōvincia Rōmāna proxima finibus Helvētiōrum erat.

321. 1. A Roman army had been defeated by the Helvetians. 2. Their territories were next to the Roman province. 3. Lucius Cassius had led an army into Gaul, but the Gauls

had defeated him. 4. They were crossing the river with all their forces. 5. The soldiers who had been enrolled in Italy were led into Gaul by this route.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **trānseō** in the third person singular, of the indicative. (2) Explain the cases of **ducem** and **finibus** in lines 6 and 9, 320. (3) Give the case endings of the fifth declension. (4) Give rules for gender in the fourth and fifth declensions. (5) Point out an example of the ablative of route in the sentences of 320. (6) Give the rule for the expression of place to which.

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

322.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

causa, -ae, F.	fortis, forte
celerit̄is, -tātis, F.	inīquus, -a, -um
cīvitās, -tātis, F.	invītus, -a, -um
cornū, -ūs, N.	mille
diēs, diēī, M. and F.	octōgintā (<i>indeclinable</i>)
domus, -ūs (-ī), F.	omnis, omne
exercitus, -ūs, M.	pedester, -tris, -tre
flūctus, -ūs, M.	potēns, <i>gen.</i> potentis
grātia, -ae, F.	proximus, -a, -um
indiciū, -ī, N.	quadrāgintā (<i>indeclinable</i>)
iugum, -ī, N.	tertius, -a, -um
lātitudō, -dinis, F.	vetus, <i>gen.</i> veteris
laus, laudis, F.	accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
longitudō, -dinis, F.	circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
manus, -ūs, F.	cōnscrībō, -scrībēre, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum
mare, maris, N.	conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
māter, mātris, F.	cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum

nōmen, nōminis, N.	dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
passus, -ūs, M.	dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum
pater, patris, M.	dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum
pāx, pācis, F.	ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
praemium, -ī, N.	eō, īre, iī <i>or</i> īvī, itum
profectiō, -ōnis, F.	exeō, -īre, -iī <i>or</i> -īvī, -itum
rēs, rei, F.	incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
tempus, temporis, N.	incolō, -ere, -uī
vīcus, -ī, M.	petō, -ere, -īvī, -itum
virtūs, virtūtis, F.	possideō, -ēre, possēdī, possessum
vōx, vōcis, F.	resistō, -ere, restitī
quī, quae, quod	tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum
ācer, ācris, ācre	trānseō, -īre, -iī <i>or</i> -īvī, -itum
centum (<i>indeclinable</i>)	quoque
clārus, -a, -um	dē
contentus, -a, -um	per
ducentī, -ae, -a	sub
fēlix, <i>gen.</i> fēlicis	atque
fīnitimus, -a, -um	

323.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

approximate	enunciate	longitude
city	exit	nominate
contented	iniquity	octogenarian
divide	latitude	subnormal
division	laudable	transition

LESSON LI

DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS: DATIVE OF POSSESSION

THE DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

324. Frequently with verbs compounded with **ante**, **ob**, **prae**, and **sub**, the noun or pronoun connected in sense with the preposition is put in the dative.¹

Prōvinciae praeest, *he is in command of the province.*

a. The dative may also be used in the same manner with compounds of **ad** and **in** when motion is not expressed.

Bellum Gallīs inferunt, *they make war on the Gauls.*

b. If the simple verb is transitive, the compound may take an accusative and a dative.

Labiēnum castrīs praefēcit, *he placed Labienus in command of the camp.*

c. Often the dative with a compound is merely an indirect object or a dative of reference, or is to be explained by the rule of Lesson XVI.

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

325. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative case, with the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of the verb meaning *to be*.

Puerō² gladius est, *the boy has a sword.*

¹ Other prepositions whose compounds sometimes take a dependent dative are **circum**, **con**, **inter**, **post**, **prō**, **super**.

² The exact force of the case in this construction cannot be rendered in idiomatic English.

326.

VOCABULARY

ācriter, *adv.*, fiercely, spirit-
edly

cōstituō, -stituere, -stitui,
-stitūtum, determine, de-
cide; draw up (*troops, an*
army, etc.)

dīcō, -ere, **dīxī**, **dictum**, say

inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly

nox, **noctis**, -ium, *F.*, night

omnīnō, *adv.*, only

praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
be in command of, be in
charge of

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, pre-
vent, restrain, keep back

ut, *adv.*, as

EXERCISES

327. 1. Labiēnus nōn tōtī exercitūī praefuit. 2. Huic hominī multī amīcī sunt. 3. In Britannīā noctēs aestāte nōn longae sunt. 4. In eō locō Gallī et Germānī ācriter contendēbant.

CAESAR INTERFERES

Eō tempore Caesar prōvinciae praerat. Is Helvētiōs prohibēre cōstituīt quod inimīcī populō Rōmānō erant, ut ante diximus. Erat omnīnō legiō ūna in eā parte Galliae, et Helvētiīs (325) magnae cōpiae erant. Sociōs (*as allies*) habēbant trēs aliās gentēs quae domōs suās relinquēbant et cum Helvētiīs ē finibus suis exhibant.

328. 1. Caesar had one legion. 2. A brave man is-in-command-of the town. 3. The Helvetians and their allies will not wage war long. 4. We shall go home and remain there two days. 5. The soldier who stands before the gate has a shield. 6. Labienus was-in-command-of the legions which were left in Gaul. 7. The enemy attacked the town fiercely that night.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **exercitūī** in sentence 1, and **hominī** in sentence 2, 327. (2) Conjugate **exeō** in the future indicative, and **trānseō** in the imperfect indicative (3) Decline **eadem nox**. (4) Conjugate **dīcō** in the perfect indicative, active and passive. (5) Give a synopsis of **praesum** in the third person plural. (6) Decline **duo**.

SEVENTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. ac or atque, <i>conj.</i> | 25. manus, -ūs, F. |
| 2. ācriter, <i>adv.</i> | 26. mare, maris, N. |
| 3. circumveniō, -venīre,
-vēnī, -ventum | 27. māter, -tris, F. |
| 4. cīvītās, -tātis, F. | 28. nōmen, nōminis, N. |
| 5. cōnscribō, -scribere,
-scripsī, -scriptum | 29. nox, noctis, F. |
| 6. cōnsul, cōsulis, M. | 30. ōrātiō, -ōnis, F. |
| 7. cornū, -ūs, N. | 31. passus, -ūs, M. |
| 8. dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī,
-fēsum | 32. pater, patris, M. |
| 9. dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum | 33. per, <i>prep. with acc.</i> |
| 10. diēs, diēi, M., F. | 34. petō, -ere, -ivī, -itum |
| 11. domus, -ūs (-ī), F. | 35. praesēns, -entis |
| 12. ducentī, -ae, -a | 36. praesum, -esse, -fui |
| 13. equester, -tris, -tre | 37. prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum |
| 14. exercitus, -ūs, M. | 38. pūblicus, -a, -um |
| 15. finitimus, -a, -um | 39. quī, quae, quod |
| 16. hiems, hiemis, F. | 40. recēns, recentis |
| 17. immortālis, -e | 41. rēs, rei, F. |
| 18. inimicus, -a, -um | 42. rēs pūblica, rei pūblīcae |
| 19. inīquus, -a, -um | 43. resistō, -sistere, -stitī |
| 20. inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,
-ventum | 44. scribō, -ere, scripsī,
scriptum |
| 21. iūdex, -dici, M. | 45. singulāris, -e |
| 22. iūdicium, N. | 46. soror, sorōris, F. |
| 23. laus, laudis, F. | 47. tempus, temporis, N. |
| 24. mille (<i>pl. mīlia</i>) | 48. ūnus . . . decem |
| | 49. ūndecim . . . vīgintī |
| | 50. vōx, vōcis, F. |

- | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. and also, and | 4. citizenship, state |
| 2. sharply, fiercely | 5. enrol |
| 3. come around, surround | 6. consul |

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| 7. horn, wing (<i>of an army</i>) | 30. speaking, speech |
| 8. defend | 31. pace (<i>about five feet</i>) |
| 9. say | 32. father |
| 10. day | 33. through |
| 11. home, house | 34. seek |
| 12. two hundred | 35. present in person |
| 13. cavalry (<i>adj.</i>) | 36. be in command of |
| 14. army | 37. prohibit, prevent |
| 15. neighboring | 38. belonging to the state,
official, public |
| 16. winter | 39. who |
| 17. without death, immortal | 40. fresh, new, recent |
| 18. hostile; <i>as noun</i> , enemy | 41. thing |
| 19. uneven, unfavorable,
unjust | 42. commonwealth, govern-
ment |
| 20. come upon, find | 43. resist |
| 21. judge, juror | 44. write |
| 22. trial, judgment | |
| 23. praise | 45. single, unusual |
| 24. one thousand | 46. sister |
| 25. hand, group, force | 47. time |
| 26. sea | 48. one . . . ten |
| 27. mother | 49. eleven . . . twenty |
| 28. name | 50. voice, speech, remark |
| 29. night | |

WORD STUDY

As a prefix **per** means *through, thoroughly, or very*.

1. Find compounds of **per** in the vocabularies of Supplementary Reviews V and VI.

2. Find four compounds of **veniō** in this and preceding Supplementary Reviews.

3. Point out Latin words in the vocabulary of this lesson to which the following are related.

defense	inimical	manual	prohibition	unit
dictionary	judicial	maternal	temporal	

LESSON LII

ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION: ABLATIVE OF PLACE
FROM WHICH

THE ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

329. Verbs meaning to separate, remove, deprive of, lack, be absent, and the like, take the Ablative of Separation, often with the prepositions **ab** or **ex**.

Hæc flūmina Gallōs ā Belgīs dīvidunt, these rivers separate the Gauls from the Belgians.

THE ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

330. With names of towns and small islands, and with **domus**, the ablative without a preposition is used to express the idea of Place from Which. With other words a preposition (**ab**, **ex**, or **dē**) is used.

Helvētīi domō excessērunt, the Helvetians departed from home.

Helvētīi ex urbe excessērunt, the Helvetians departed from the city.

331.

VOCABULARY

facile, *adv.*, easily

Genava, -ae, *F.*, Geneva

parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,

prepare

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, extend,

pertain

repellō, -ere, **reppui**, **repul-**

sum, drive back, repulse,

repel

Rhodanus, -ī, *M.*, the Rhone, a

river of Gaul

ventus, -ī, *M.*, wind

EXERCISES

332. 1. Prōvincia nostra ā marī ad montēs pertinet. 2. Propter magnam vim ventī nāvēs nostrae magnō in periculō erant. 3. Tum pars exercitūs Genavae erat. 4. Lēgātus nōndum Rōmā exiit.

THE HELVETIANS REPULSED

Caesar statim milites in provinciā conscripsit et bellum cum Helvetiis gerere paravit. Iter quō (318) exire parabant per provinciam Rōmānam erat. Flūmen Rhodanus provinciam ā finibus Helvetiōrum dividit sed id flūmen facile multis locis (299, a) transītur. His locis Caesar mūrō et fossā (130) Helvetiōs prohibuit. Tum milites Rōmāni tela iecerunt et hostes reppulerunt.



ROMAN DRINKING CUPS

333. 1. Many soldiers came from Ocelum. 2. These three nations have gone forth from home. 3. The mountains which you see separate the Helvetians from the neighboring state. 4. The Gauls will go by this road because they have no other road. 5. A river separates the Belgians from the Germans. 6. Your brother and my friend were in Geneva the same summer.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **exercitūs** and **Genavae** in sentence 3, 332. (2) Name the simple verb from which the compound **pertineō** is derived, and give principal parts of both. (3) Mention two English words derived from **repellō** and state from which stem of the verb each is derived. (4) Explain the case of **Rōmā** in sentence 4, 332. (5) Name some prepositions whose compounds may govern the dative.

LESSON LIII

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES: DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

334. (1) The comparative degree of an adjective is formed by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-ior** for the masculine and feminine and with **-ius** for the neuter.

The superlative is regularly formed by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-issimus (-a, -um)**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>altus, high</i>	<i>altior, altius, higher</i>	<i>altissimus, -a, -um,</i> <i>highest</i>
<i>fortis, brave</i>	<i>fortior, fortius, braver</i>	<i>fortissimus, -a, -um,</i> <i>bravest</i>

(2) The comparatives are third declension adjectives of two endings and are declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. <i>lātior</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
GEN. <i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōris</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>	<i>lātiōrum</i>
DAT. <i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōrī</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>
ACC. <i>lātiōrem</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātiōrēs, (-īs)</i>	<i>lātiōra</i>
ABL. <i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōre</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>	<i>lātiōribus</i>

a. The superlative is declined like **bonus**.

b. The comparative is often translated with the adverb *rather* or *too*, and the superlative with *very*.

Flūmen *lātius* erat, *the river was rather wide.*

Montem *altissimum* vīdimus, *we saw a very high mountain.*

335.

VOCABULARY

angustus, -a, -um, narrow
autem, but, however (*never
stands first in its clause*)

dēiciō, -ere, **dēiēcī**, **dēiectum**,
dislodge; disappoint

Haeduus, -ī, M., a Haeduan;
pl., the Haeduans

impendeō, -ēre, overhang,
impend

Sēquanī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the
Sequani

spēs, **speī**, F., hope

vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lay
waste

EXERCISES

336. 1. Flūmen lātissimum; mōns altior; vir clārissimus; militem fortissimum; iter angustius. 2. Germānī in Galliam trānsierant et agrōs Gallōrum vāstābant. 3. Itinere angustiōre exiērunt. 4. Montēs altiōrēs numquam vidī.

ANOTHER ROUTE FOUND

Itaque Helvētīi dē eā spē dēiectī sunt. Sed aliud iter erat per finēs Sēquanōrum. Id angustum erat et mōns altissimus impendēbat. Sēquanī autem nōn restitērunt et Helvētīi omnēs cōpiās suās hāc viā dūxērunt. Per finēs Sēquanōrum sine iniūriā iērunt et in finēs Haeduōrum pervēnērunt, quōrum agrōs vāstāvērunt.

337. 1. The Helvetians had great hopes of victory. 2. This mountain was higher and this road was narrower. 3. These boys are very brave. 4. These gifts are the most pleasing of all. 5. The most famous city of Italy was set on fire. 6. Our fields have been laid waste by our enemies and we fear their power (violence). 7. No one has kinder friends.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Compare (i. e., give the positive, comparative, and superlative of) the adjectives **angustus**, **cārus**, **benignus**, and **longus**. (2) Decline the comparative of **tūtus**. (3) Explain the case of **itinere** in sentence 3, 336. (4) Give the genitive of the phrase **vir clārrior**. (5) Decline together **diēs longior**. (6) Point out the compound sentences in 337.

LESSON LIV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued): ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued)

338. Adjectives ending in **-er** form the superlative by adding **-rimus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the nominative singular masculine of the positive.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
ācer	ācrior, ācrius	ācerrimus, -a, -um

a. The comparative is formed like that of other adjectives.

339. The following adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative by replacing the genitive ending of the positive with **-limus**: **facilis**, **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **humilis**.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis	facilior, -ius	facillimus, -a, -um
similis	similior, -ior	simillimus, -a, -um

a. Other adjectives ending in **-lis** form the superlative regularly with **-issimus**.¹

THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

340. With a comparative, if **quam**, *than*, is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made, is put in the ablative.

Ille puer fortior frātre est, *that boy is braver than his brother.*

¹ *gracilis*, *slender*, is sometimes given in this list of adjectives, but its superlative is so rare as to make it of little importance.

a. If **quam** is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared.

Ille puer fortior quam frāter est, *that boy is braver than his brother.*

b. If the word denoting the person or thing compared stands in any other case than the nominative or accusative, **quam** must be used.

341.

VOCABULARY

Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, the Alps

difficilis, -e, difficult

facilis, -e, easy

interea, *adv.*, meanwhile,
in the meantime

perterreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -ter-
ritum, frighten thoroughly

quam, *adv.*, than, how, as

similis, -e, like

ūtilis, -e, useful

EXERCISES

342. 1. Rēs difficillima; iter facillimum; ager simillimus; in locō difficillimō. 2. Is homō miserrimus omnium erat. 3. Nostrī hostēs ācerrimī superātī sunt. 4. Mihi amīcus ūtilissimus fuistī. 5. Nēmō honestior hōc homine est. 6. Nēmō honestior quam hic homō est.

THE HAEDUANS ASK AID

Haeduī quī erant amīcī et sociī populī Rōmānī statim ad Caesarem nūntiōs misērunt et auxilium petiērunt. Perterritī sunt, et vim hostium vix ab oppidīs prohibēbant. Caesar interea quīnque legiōnēs ex aliā parte prōvinciae per Alpēs dūxerat et cum omnibus cōpiīs ad hostēs contendēbat.

343. 1. Meanwhile the fields of the Haeduans were being laid waste. 2. The road by which the Helvetians went forth was very difficult. 3. The Germans were braver than the Haeduans. 4. This man is taller than his brother. 5. This

girl is the unhappiest of all. 6. At that time flight was very easy. 7. The cart was very useful on (in) the journey.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Compare **difficilis**, **ūtilis**, **pulcher**, and **liber**. (2) Give the rule for expressions of place from which. (3) Give the rule for the dative of possession. (4) Give the rule for expressions of extent in space. (5) Give the present infinitives, active and passive, of **petō**, **prohibeō**, and **oppugnō**.

LESSON LV

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (Continued): ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

ADJECTIVES COMPARED IRREGULARLY

344. There are a few adjectives which form their comparatives and superlatives irregularly. The most important are the following:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um	melior, -ius	optimus, -a, -um
malus, -a, -um	peior, -ius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus, -a, -um	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
multus, -a, -um	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um
parvus, -a, -um	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um

DECLENSION OF **PLŪS**

345. **Plūs** is an adjective in the plural, but in the singular it is a neuter noun. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	—	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	plūs	plūrēs or -īs	plūra
ABL.	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

a. **Complūrēs**, *several*, is declined like the plural of **plūs** except that the neuter may have either **-ia** or **-a** in the nominative and accusative.

b. **Citerior**, **ulterior**, and a few other comparatives have no positive. The comparison of **superus** and **īferus** is as follows:

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
superus	superior	suprēmus <i>or</i> summus
īferus	īferior	īnfirmus <i>or</i> īmus

THE ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

346. The ablative is used to express the degree or measure of difference between two objects or persons compared.

Turris duōbus pedibus altior quam mūrus est, *the tower is two feet higher than the wall (higher by two feet).*

a. A frequent use of this construction is to be seen in **multō**, the ablative of the neuter **multum**, used as a noun: **multō clārior**, *much more distinguished (more distinguished by much).*

347.

VOCABULARY

Arar , Araris , m. , the Saône, <i>a river of Gaul</i>	impetus , -ūs , m. , attack
itrā , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , on this side of	imprōvisō , <i>adv.</i> , unexpectedly
concīdō , -ere , concīdī , concī- sum , cut to pieces, kill	pēs , pedis , m. , foot
impeditus , -a , -um , impeded, hindered	reliquus , -a , -um , remaining, rest of; m. pl. as noun, the rest
	trādūcō , -dūcere , -dūxī , -duc- tum , lead across

EXERCISES

348. 1. Haec urbs multō maior eō oppidō est. 2. Ea fēmina ūnō pede altior quam filia est. 3. Gallī nōn fortiorēs Germānīs erant. 4. Lēgātus reliquīs legiōnibus prae-

erat quae citrā flūmen relictæ erant. 5. Maxima pars; maior ager; minor exercitus.

THE HELVETIAN DISASTER AT THE SAÔNE

Hī tum flūmen Ararim¹ trānsibant et trēs partēs cōpiārum trādūxerant. Caesar imprōvisō impetum in eam partem fēcit quae citrā tūmen erat. Maguam partem eōrum impeditōrum concēdit. Reliquī in silvās proximās fūgērunt.



ROMAN SOLDIERS STORMING A TOWN

349. 1. The larger part remained on this side of the river. 2. The river is much wider than the ditch. 3. This route is many miles longer. 4. This school is the best but not the largest. 5. We saw a better place in the forest. 6. The Gauls made an attack unexpectedly on the legion which was crossing the river. 7. The tower is ten feet higher than the wall.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline the comparatives of **magnus** and **parvus**. (2) Point out examples of the ablative of degree of difference in 348. (3) Explain the case of **Germānis** in sentence 3, and of **legiōnibus** in sentence 4, 348. (4) Decline together **impetus ācrior** in the singular. (5) Give a synopsis of **trānseō** and of **trādūcō** in the third person singular, active voice, in the indicative mood, giving English meanings throughout.

¹ A few i-stem proper nouns have the accusative singular in **-im**.

ELEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

350. (1) The fifth declension of nouns.
 (2) The comparison of adjectives.
 (3) The conjugation of *eō*.—
 (4) Numerals. —
 (5) The dative with compounds.
 (6) The dative of possession.
 (7) The accusative of extent. —
 (8) The accusative of place to which. —
 (9) The ablative of comparison.
 (10) The ablative of degree of difference.
 (11) The ablative of place from which.
 (12) The ablative of route.
 (13) The ablative of separation.
 (14) The locative case. —

351. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

constitution	impetuous	relic
dejected	inimical	repel
dictionary	nocturnal	repulse
difficult	pedal	similar
facility	pertinent	utility
impending	prohibition	ventilation



ROMAN SPOONS AND BOWL

LESSON LVI

GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION: ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

THE GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

352. The genitive modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō magnae virtūtis, *a man of great courage.*

a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to express measure.

Mūrus trium pedum, *a three-foot wall (a wall of three feet).*

THE ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

353. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō magnā virtūte, *a man of great courage, i. e., a man with great courage.*

a. In many phrases such as the example above, either the genitive or the ablative may be used, but physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative, and measure always by the genitive.

354.

VOCABULARY

altitūdō, **altitūdinis**, F.,

height, depth

auctōritās, **-tātis**, F., influence,

authority

calamitās, **-tātis**, F., disaster

commemorō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**,

mention

pōns, **pontis**, M., bridge

praedicō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**,

announce, boast

respōnsum, **-ī**, N., reply,

answer

trānsportō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**,

convey across

EXERCISES

355. 1. Orgetorix magnā auctōritāte apud Helvētiōs fuerat. 2. Lēgātī Gallōrum hoc respōsum dēdērunt neque vim Rōmānōrum timēbant. 3. Mūrus magnā altitūdine erat. 4. Militēs iter sex diērum fēcērunt. 5. Exercitus magnī animī est quod saepe hī hostēs victī sunt.

CAESAR CROSSES THE SAÔNE

Post id proelium Caesar pontem fēcit et exercitum trādūxit. Helvētīi flūmen vīgintī diēbus trānsierant sed Caesar ūnō diē omnem exercitum trānsportāvit. Tum Helvētīi lēgātōs mīsērunt et pācem petiērunt. Lēgātī autem multa (*much*) praedicāvērunt dē virtūte suae gentis et calamitātem veterem populī Romānī commemorāvērunt.

356. 1. The river was of great width. 2. The soldiers were of great courage and defended the camp bravely. 3. A journey of five days was made by the army. 4. The soldier whom you see is much braver than his brother. 5. The men went by the most difficult road. 6. He is not a boy of great strength, but he works energetically. 7. You ask for peace, and this is my answer.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Mention some English words derived from the words in the vocabulary of this lesson. (2) Give the Latin adjective from which the noun *altitūdō* is derived. (3) Explain the derivation of *trāspōrtō*. (4) Explain the case of *altitūdine* in sentence 3, and of *diērum* in sentence, 4, 355. (5) Explain the gender of *multa*, line 9, 355. (6) Give the genitive of the phrase which means *one day*.

LESSON LVII

THE FORMATION OF ADVERBS

357. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives by the use of certain adverbial endings. Those derived from adjectives of the first and second declension regularly take *-ē* in place of the genitive ending of the adjective. Those derived from third declension adjectives regularly have *-ter* or *-iter* (*-er* only, if the genitive ending follows *-nt*), in place of the genitive ending.

lātus, *wide*fortis, *brave*audāx, *bold*prūdēns, *prudent*lātē, *widely*fortiter, *bravely*audācter, *boldly*prūdentē, *prudently*

a. The neuter accusative singular of some adjectives is used as an adverb: **facile**, *easily*; **multum**, *much*.

b. The adverb of **magnus** is **magnopere**; of **bonus**, **bene**. Some adverbs do not have a corresponding adjective: e.g., **saepe**, *often*.

358.

VOCABULARY

complūrēs, *-a*, (*-ia*), several,
some

condiciō, *-ōnis*, *F.*, terms,
condition

fidēs, **fideī**, *F.*, confidence;
fidem habēre, trust (*with*
dative)

obses, **obsidis**, *M.*, hostage

paucī, *-ae*, *-a* (*singular not*
often used), few; *masculine*
as noun, a few

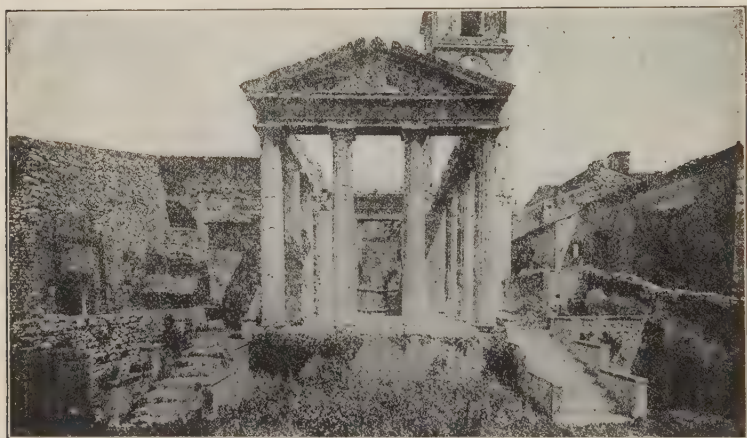
poscō, *-ere*, **poposci**, demand
prōcēdō, *-ere*, **prōcessī**, **prō-**
cessum, advance

EXERCISES

359. 1. *Helvētiī quī in finēs Haeduōrum pervēnerant agrōs lātē vāstābant.* 2. *Exercitus noster celeriter flūmen trānsiit sed hostēs fūgerant.*

MARCHING AND FIGHTING

Caesar quod eīs fidem nōn habēbat obsidēs poposeit. Hī autem eam condiciōnem nōn accēpērunt neque pāx est facta. Tum Helvētiī castra mōvērunt et ex eō locō prōcessērunt. Caesar item castra mōvit et iter paucīs milibus passuum post eōs fēcit. Complūrēs diēs idem factum est. Hīs diēbus equitēs Rōmānī in hostēs impetum fēcērunt sed repulsī sunt et paucī sunt interfectī.



ROMAN TEMPLE AT CORI

360. 1. The enemy fiercely made an attack on our horsemen. 2. The fields of the Haeduans, who were allies of the Romans, were laid waste widely. 3. Several men advanced toward (*ad*) Caesar. 4. These men who were killed in war certainly loved their country. 5. The hostages greatly desired to see their friends.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Form adverbs from the adjectives *altus*, *grātus*, and *honestus*. (2) Explain the derivation of *ācritēr* and *fēlicitēr*. (3) Explain the meaning of the phrase *bona fide*. (4) Explain the derivation of the words *transportation* and *procession*. (5) Decline *complūrēs*.

LESSON LVIII

THE COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

361. The comparative of an adverb is the same as the accusative singular neuter form of the comparative of the adjective from which the adverb is derived. The superlative is formed by changing the ending **-us** of the superlative of the corresponding adjective to **-ē**.

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ADJ.	<i>lātus</i>	<i>lātior</i>	<i>lātissimus</i>
ADV.	<i>lātē</i>	<i>lātius</i>	<i>lātissimē</i>
ADJ.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācrior</i>	<i>ācerrimus</i>
ADV.	<i>ācriter</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
ADJ.	<i>facilis</i>	<i>facilior</i>	<i>facillimus</i>
ADV.	<i>facile</i>	<i>facilius</i>	<i>facillimē</i>

a. The following are irregular:

POSITIVE		COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
<i>bene,</i>	<i>well</i>	<i>melius</i>	<i>optimē</i>
<i>male,</i>	<i>badly</i>	<i>peius</i>	<i>pessimē</i>
<i>magnopere,</i>	<i>greatly</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>multum,</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>magis</i>	<i>maximē</i>
<i>multum,</i>	<i>much</i>	<i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimum</i>
<i>parum,</i>	<i>little</i>	<i>minus</i>	<i>minimē</i>
<i>prope,</i>	<i>near</i>	<i>propius</i>	<i>proximē</i>
<i>saepe,</i>	<i>often</i>	<i>saepius</i>	<i>saepissimē</i>
<i>diū,</i>	<i>long</i>	<i>diūtius</i>	<i>diūtissimē</i>

b. Occasionally adverbs (and also adjectives) are compared with **magis**, *more*, and **maximē**, *most*.

362.

VOCABULARY

dēterreō, -ēre, dēterrui, dē-	prīnceps, prīncipis, m., leader,
territum, hinder, prevent	chief
Dumnorix, Dumnorigis, m.,	prōmittō, -ere, prōmisī, prō-
Dumnorix, a Gaul	missum, promise
imperium, -ī, n., power, su-	satis, adv., enough
preme power, authority	summus, -a, -um, highest, su-
magis, adv., more	preme, highest part of

EXERCISES

363. 1. Belgae longissimē absunt. 2. Facilius eīs persuāsit.
3. Tum ācerrimē bellum gerēbant. 4. Ea loca lātius explō-
rābimus sī id cupis. 5. Nōn magnopere impetum hostium
timēmus quod arma meliōra habēmus.

FAILURE OF SUPPLIES

Caesarī erat impedimentō (196) quod¹ exercitus eius satis
frūmentī nōn habēbat. Haeduī frūmentum prōmiserant sed
nōn dabant. Erant multī inter eōs quī Rōmānīs inimicī
erant et aliōs dēterrēbant. Prīnceps hōrum erat Dumnorix.
Is amicus Orgetorigis, ducis Helvētiōrum, fuerat et in cīvitate
Haeduōrum summō imperiō studēbat. *Caes.*

364. 1. Caesar desired supreme power. 2. We have not
enough grain, but we are expecting aid from Italy. 3. The
enemy were more often driven back. 4. The Romans crossed
very easily because they had many boats (*nāvēs*). 5. Nothing
pleases the Gauls more than war. 6. This wing of the army
which had made an attack, drove back the horsemen.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Compare the adverbs **fortiter** and **certē**. (2) Give the endings
which are regularly used in the formation of adverbs. (3) Point out
the irregularity in the formation of the adverb **male**. (4) Explain the
comparison of the adverb **parum**. (5) Give the rules for the ablative
of comparison and the ablative of degree of difference.

¹ Translate *that* or *the fact that*.

EIGHTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. altitūdō, -dinis, F. | 22. permovere, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum |
| 2. auctoritās, -tātis, F. | 23. perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum |
| 3. autem, <i>conj.</i> (<i>post-positive</i>) | 24. pertineō, -ēre, -uī |
| 4. commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum | 25. princeps, principis, M. |
| 5. communis, -e | 26. pōns, pontis, M. |
| 6. condiciō, -ōnis, F. | 27. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī |
| 7. cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum | 28. quam, <i>adv.</i> |
| 8. dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum | 29. reliquus, -a, -um |
| 9. difficilis, -e | 30. remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum |
| 10. excludō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum | 31. removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum |
| 11. facile, <i>adv.</i> | 32. repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum |
| 12. facilis, -e | 33. satis, <i>adv.</i> |
| 13. familiāris, -e | 34. sescentī, -ae, -a |
| 14. fidēs, -eī, F. | 35. similis, -e |
| 15. imperium, -ī, N. | 36. spēs, speī, F. |
| 16. inopia, -ae, F. | 37. submittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum |
| 17. integer, -gra, -grum | 38. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum |
| 18. pār, <i>gen.</i> paris | |
| 19. parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | |
| 20. paucī, -ae, -a | |
| 21. permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum | |

- | | |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. height, depth | 5. common |
| 2. influence | 6. condition, terms |
| 3. moreover, on the other hand | 7. consult |
| 4. alarm, excite | 8. throw down |
| | 9. difficult |

- | | |
|--------------------------------|--|
| 10. shut out | 26. bridge |
| 11. easily | 27. go forward, advance |
| 12. easy | 28. than, how |
| 13. of the household, intimate | 29. the rest, remaining,
remainder of |
| 14. good faith, protection | 30. send back |
| 15. command, power | 31. move back, remove |
| 16. need, lack | 32. drive back, repulse |
| 17. whole, unimpaired | 33. enough, quite |
| 18. equal | 34. six hundred |
| 19. get ready, prepare for | 35. like |
| 20. few | 36. hope |
| 21. permit, grant, entrust | 37. send to the assistance of,
yield to |
| 22. arouse, disturb | 38. lead across |
| 23. alarm | |
| 24. reach, extend, pertain | |
| 25. leader, chief man | |

WORD STUDY

1. In addition to the preposition **in**, which has already been seen as a prefix, there is an inseparable prefix **in-** meaning *not* or *un-* (as English prefix). It takes by assimilation the forms **il-**, **im-**, **ir-**. Examples of its use in preceding Supplementary Review vocabularies are the following:

iniūria (in + iūs, *right*)

immortālis (in + mortālis, *mortal*)

inīquus (in + aequus)

NOTE—In Latin compounds **ae** becomes **i** except when it stands in the first syllable of the compound.

2. Indicate the compounds of **per** and **re-** in the vocabulary of this lesson.

3. What form does **trāns** take as a prefix in this lesson?

4. Find a compound of **satis** in Supplementary Review V.

5. Give English words which are related in derivation to the following Latin words:

commoveō	exclūdō	familiāris	permittō	removeō	similis
cōnsulō	facilis	fidēs	prōcēdō	repellō	submittō

LESSON LIX

PRESENT PARTICIPLE: ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

365. The present active participle of a Latin verb ends in **-ns**, and is formed on the present stem. Its formation in the regular verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portō	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
portāns,	monēns,	dūcēns,	capiēns,	audiēns,
<i>carrying</i>	<i>warning</i>	<i>leading</i>	<i>taking</i>	<i>hearing</i>

a. Like the other participles, the present participle agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs. It is declined as an adjective of the third declension with the stem ending in **-nt**.

SINGULAR

<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM. portāns	portāns
GEN. portantis	portantis
DAT. portanti	portanti
ACC. portantem	portāns
ABL. portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)

PLURAL

NOM. portantēs	portantia
GEN. portantium	portantium
DAT. portantibus	portantibus
ACC. portantēs (-īs)	portantia
ABL. portantibus	portantibus

b. The present active participle is used in Latin less frequently than in English. There is no present passive participle in Latin.

THE ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

366. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

Miles Gallōs virtūte praecēdēbat, *the soldier surpassed the Gauls in courage.*

367.

VOCABULARY

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, sum- mon	implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, en- treat, ask, ask for, implore
condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pardon	noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (<i>with dative</i>), injure
Dīviciācus, -ī, m., Diviciacus, <i>a Gaul</i>	praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces- sum, surpass
graviter, <i>adv.</i> , heavily, severely	prō, <i>prep. w. abl.</i> , for, on behalf of

EXERCISES

368. 1. Accūsāns; implōrāns; mūnientēs; iacientēs; dūcentēs. 2. Vōcēs captīvōrum auxilium implōrantium audiēbantur. 3. Puerō impigrē labōrantī favēmus. 4. Ille vir melior cōsiliō (*judgment*) est. 5. Frātre meum cōsiliō nōn praecēdis. 6. Nūllī militēs fortiōrēs animō sunt. 7. Hic homō frātrī suō nocērē cūpit.

DUMNORIX CENSURED BY CAESAR

Dumnorīgī (**325**) erat frāter nōmine¹ Dīviciācus quī amīcus populī Rōmānī erat. Is frūmentum supportāre cupiēbat sed Dumnorīx maiōrem potentiam in cīvitatē habēbat. Caesar hōs duōs frātrēs adhibuit atque Dumnorīgem graviter accūsāvit. Quod Dīviciācus prō frātre Caesarem implōrāvit, Caesar eam rem condōnāvit.

369. 1. Caesar's army surpassed the Germans in courage. 2. They are few in number, but brave in spirit. 3. The man

¹ nōmine, *by name*, is here an ablative of respect.

imploring help was heard by all. 4. The mountain overhanging is very high. 5. An arrow wounded the fleeing soldier. 6. The fire had injured the tower and the bridge.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the present active participles of **adhibeō**, **veniō**, **tendō**, and **aedificō**, with the English meanings. (2) Decline the present participles of **mūniō**, **accūsō**, and **dūcō**. (3) Explain the case of **cōnsiliō** in sentence 4, and of **animō** in sentence 6, 368. (4) Explain the case of **frātri**, in sentence 7, 368. (5) Compare the adverb **graviter** (from the adjective **gravis**).

LESSON LX

X'

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

370. A noun or pronoun in the ablative case, together with a participle, an adjective, or another noun in agreement, may be used to refer to some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

Monte occupatō militēs expectābant, *the mountain having been seized (after seizing the mountain), the soldiers waited.*

Nūllō prohibente iter fēcērunt, *no one preventing, they made their march.*

Helvētiīs invītīs Orgetorīx haec fēcīt, *the Helvetians being unwilling, Orgetorix did these things.*

Labiēnō duce montem ascendērunt, *Labiēnus being leader, they ascended the mountain.*

a. The original force of the case may be seen if these phrases are translated with the English preposition *with*.

with the mountain seized

with no one preventing

with the Helvetians unwilling

with Labienus (as) leader

b. The participle *being*, which is often employed in translating the ablative absolute, has no equivalent in Latin.

371. Often the ablative absolute is best translated by a clause introduced by *when, after, if, since, or although*, as the sense of the main clause may suggest.

Monte occupātō, *when the mountain had been seized.*

a. Various prepositional phrases, also, may be employed in translating this ablative.

Sēquanīs invitīs, *against the will of the Sequani.*

Caesare cōsule, *in the consulship of Caesar.*

372.

VOCABULARY

ascendō, -ere, **ascendī**, **ascēsum**, ascend

cognōscō, -ere, **cognōvī**, **cognitum**, find out; *perf.*, know

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight to a finish; **proeliō**

dēcertāre, fight a decisive battle

explōrātor, -tōris, *m.*, scout

lūx, **lūcis**, *f.*, light; **prīma**

lūx, daybreak

praemittō, -ere, **praemīsī**,

praemisum, send ahead

teneō, -ēre, -uī, hold

Cōnsidius, -ī, *m.*, Considius, *an officer in Caesar's army*

EXERCISES

373. 1. **Legiōne cōscriptā**, Caesar bellum gerere parābat.

2. Duce interfectō, milītēs repulsī sunt. 3. Hīs rēbus cognitīs, explōrātōrēs in eō locō mānsērunt.

CAESAR PLANS AN ATTACK

Eōdem diē Helvētīi sub monte castra posuērunt octō milia passuum ā castrīs Rōmānōrum. Ilāc rē cognitā, Caesar quī proeliō dēcertāre cupiēbat Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus montem ascendere iussit. **Prīmā lūce** summus mōns¹ ā Labiēnō tenēbātur et Caesar cum cōpiīs suis nōn longē aberat.

¹The mountain top.

Tum Caesar hominem nōmine Cōnsidium cum explōrātōribus praemisit. Is multōs annōs in exercitū fuerat atque Caesar eī fidem habēbat.

374. 1. After Considius had been sent ahead (*abl. abs.*) Caesar advanced at daybreak. 2. With Caesar as leader the soldiers fought bravely. 3. When the king had been killed the army fled. 4. If the legion is defeated the town will be captured. 5. The Germans do not surpass our soldiers in courage. 6. When this was known, scouts were sent ahead.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Translate the examples of the ablative absolute in 373 literally, then suggest clauses which are equivalent to these phrases. (2) State which of the original uses of the ablative (33) is seen in the ablative absolute. (3) Give English phrases which are equivalent to the subordinate clauses of the sentences of 374 in the form (literal equivalents) of the ablative absolute. (4) Give the present active participles of *ascendō* and *teneō*.

TWELFTH REVIEW LESSON

375.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

altitūdō, -dinis, F.	respōnsum, -ī, N.	ūtilis, -e
auctōritās, -tātis, F.	ventus, -ī, M.	ācriter
calamitās, -tātis, F.	angustus, -a, -um	facile
condiciō, -ōnis, F.	complūrēs, -a or -ia	graviter
explōrātor, -tōris, M.	difficilis, -e	imprōvisō
fidēs, -eī, F.	facilis, -e	intereā
imperium, -ī, N.	impeditus, -a, -um	quam
impetus, -ūs, M.	inimīcus, -a, -um	satis
lūx, lūcis, F.	paucī, -ae, -a	ut
nox, noctis, F.	reliquus, -a, -um	citrā
pōns, pontis, M.	similis, -e	prō
prīnceps, prīncipis, M.	summus, -a, -um	autem

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēsum
 cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum
 commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 concīdō, -ere, concīdī, concīsum
 condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 cōstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum
 dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectum
 dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum
 impendeō, -ēre
 noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 pertineō, -ēre, -uī
 poscō, -ere, poposcī
 praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
 praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus
 prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
 prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 repellō, -ere, reppulī, repulsum
 teneō, -ēre, -uī
 trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
 trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

altitude	deter	proceed
ascend	fidelity	procession
ascension	imperial	pro-slavery
calamity	implore	response
commemorate	lucid	tenant
condone	principal	transportation

LESSON LXXIII

QUĪDAM, QUISQUE: IMPERSONAL VERBSDECLENSION OF **QUĪDAM** AND **QUISQUE**

436. The indefinite pronoun or adjective **quĭdam**, *a certain*, *a certain one*, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quĭdam	quaedam	quoddam <i>or</i> quiddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quoddam <i>or</i> quiddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam

PLURAL

NOM.	quĭdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrūdam	quārūdam	quōrūdam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

a. The form **quiddam** is used as a pronoun, **quoddam** as an adjective.

b. **Quidam** may sometimes be translated by the indefinite article *a* or *an*.

437. **Quisque**, *each*, when used as a pronoun is declined as follows in the singular:

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	quisque	quidque
GEN.	cuiusque	cuiusque
DAT.	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemque	quidque
ABL.	quōque	quōque

a. As an adjective the nominative is **quisque, quaeque, quodque**, and the other case forms are the same as those of the relative, with the suffix **-que**. The plural is rare.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

438. Impersonal verbs have only the third person singular, the infinitives, and occasionally the participles. They are sometimes translated by English impersonal verbs with *it* as subject, but the English equivalent is often a verb with a personal subject. Many of these may take a clause or an infinitive with or without the accusative as subject. Among the most important are **oportet** and **licet**.

Eum venīre oportet, *he ought to come (it is necessary for him to come).*

a. Many intransitive verbs also are used impersonally in the passive.

Pugnātur, *it is being fought (a fight is going on).*

Perventum est, *it was arrived (they arrived).*

439.

VOCABULARY

Cimberius , -ī, m., Cimberius, <i>a German chief</i>	quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam , a certain, a certain man, etc.
licet , -ēre, licuit , it is permitted	quisque, quidque , <i>pron.</i> , each one, each; <i>as adj.</i> , quisque, quaeque, quodque , each
Nasua , -ae, m., Nasua, <i>a German chief</i>	Rhēnus , -ī, m., the Rhine
oportet , -ēre, oportuit , it is necessary, it is proper, one ought	rīpa , -ae, f., bank (<i>of a stream</i>)
	Suebī , -ōrum, m. <i>pl.</i> , the Suebi

EXERCISES

440. 1. Statim prōcēdere licet. 2. Amīcum manēre oportet. 3. Quisque sēcum frūmentum tulit. 4. Quendam militem

ad castra hostium misit. 5. Fortiter pugnātum est. 6. Diū ab Helvētiīs pugnātum erat. 7. Quīdam Gallus cum epistulā ad urbem missus est. 8. Quemque frūmentum domō portāre iussērunt.

THE SUEBI AT THE RHINE

Intereā nova manus Germānōrum ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerat et trānsire cōnābātur. Hī erant Suēbī, quae gēns est magnae virtūtis inter Germānōs.

Duo frātrēs, Nasua et Cimmerius, eīs praeerant. Lēgātī Haeduōrum et Trēverōrum eam rem Caesarī ēnūntiāvērunt. Hīs rēbus audītis, Caesar frūmentum comparāvit et ad Ariovistum contendit.

441. 1. We gave a reward to each. 2. A certain man demanded aid. 3. The soldier ought to fight bravely. 4. They ordered each one to carry a weapon. 5. No one ought to fear. 6. The Germans did not attack Vesontio, because they could not cross the river.



ROMAN MOSAIC

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline together **quīdam cīvis**. (2) Give all the forms of **oportet** in the indicative. (3) Give the perfect infinitives of **licet** and **oportet**. (4) Explain the case of **amicum** in sentence 2, and of **domō** in sentence 8, 440. (5) Give the Latin noun with which the English word *riparian* is connected in derivation, and explain its meaning in the phrase *riparian rights*.

LESSON LXXIV

SEMI-DEPONENTS: THE ENCLITIC *-QUE*

SEMI-DEPONENTS

442. There are four verbs which are deponent in the perfect system but which have active forms in the present system. Their principal parts are as follows:

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, dare
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, trust

a. The compounds of *fīdō*, also, are semi-deponents.

b. The synopsis of *audeō* in the first person singular of the indicative is as follows:

PRES. <i>audeō</i>	PERF. <i>ausus sum</i>
IMPF. <i>audēbam</i>	P. PERF. <i>ausus eram</i>
FUT. <i>audēbō</i>	F. PERF. <i>ausus erō</i>

THE ENCLITIC *-QUE*

443. The enclitic conjunction *-que*, *and*, connects more closely than *et*. It is translated before the word to which it is joined.

Legiō equitātusque, *the legion and the cavalry.*

444.

VOCABULARY

<i>audeō, audēre, ausus sum,</i>	<i>prior, prius, comparative</i>
<i>dare</i>	<i>adjective, former, first, pre-</i>
<i>cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctum,</i>	<i>vious</i>
<i>surround</i>	<i>-que, and</i>
<i>facultās, -tātis, F., opportu-</i>	<i>soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be</i>
<i>nity, supply</i>	<i>accustomed</i>
<i>paene, adv., almost</i>	<i>ūsus, -ūs, M., use, advantage</i>

EXERCISES

445. 1. Paene omnēs equitēs in eō proeliō interfectī sunt. 2. Quod ea legiō nōn prior trānsīre audēbat, proelium nōn commissum est. 3. Militēs veterānī nōn fugere solent, sed eō diē perterritī sunt. 4. Nēmō dicere ausus est. 5. Obsidēs accipere solitī erant. 6. Dux militēsque interfectī sunt. 7. Caesarem eōs prohibēre oportet. 8. Quandam urbem incendērunt. 9. Mēcum ire licet.

THE RACE FOR VESONTIO

Ariovistus Vesontiōnem occupāre cōnātus est. Id erat maximum oppidum Sēquanōrum et magnam facultātem habēbat cārum rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī (196) erant. Flūmen paene tōtam urbem cingēbat atque ūnā ex parte erat mōns magnā altitūdine. Quod hoc oppidum facile dēfendī poterat Caesar quoque id occupāre cupiēbat. Itaque magnīs itineribus eō contendit et prior advēnit.

446. 1. The soldiers did not dare complain. 2. They had always been accustomed to do this. 3. The town and the camp will be set on fire. 4. We ought to go at once. 5. Caesar said that (395) the town was easily defended. 6. He will hasten to that place with the cavalry. 7. Slave, do you dare kill Gaius Marius?

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **soleō** in the third person singular and plural in the indicative. (2) Give a synopsis of **fīdō** in the first person singular and the third person singular in the indicative. (3) Decline **prior**. (4) Give the accusative singular and plural of **quīdam**. (5) Conjugate **cingō** in the perfect active and the past perfect passive of the indicative.



LESSON LXXV

ALIQUIS, QUISQUAM: ABLATIVE OF CAUSETHE INDEFINITES *ALIQUIS* AND *QUISQUAM*

447. The indefinite pronoun *aliquis*, *someone*, *anyone*, is declined as follows:

SINGULAR			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>aliquis or aliqui</i>	<i>aliqua</i>	<i>aliquid or aliquod</i>
GEN.	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>	<i>alicuius</i>
DAT.	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>	<i>alicui</i>
ACC.	<i>aliquem</i>	<i>aliquam</i>	<i>aliquid or aliquod</i>
ABL.	<i>aliquō</i>	<i>aliquā</i>	<i>aliquō</i>

PLURAL			
NOM.	<i>aliqui</i>	<i>aliquae</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
GEN.	<i>aliquōrum</i>	<i>aliquārum</i>	<i>aliquōrum</i>
DAT.	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>
ACC.	<i>aliquōs</i>	<i>aliquās</i>	<i>aliqua</i>
ABL.	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>	<i>aliquibus</i>

a. The forms *aliquis* and *aliquid* in the singular are used as pronouns; the forms *aliqui*, *aliqua*, and *aliquod* are adjectives, with the meaning *some*.

448. The indefinite pronoun *quisquam*, *any one at all*, is declined as follows:

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
NOM.	<i>quisquam</i>	<i>quiequam</i>
GEN.	<i>cuiusquam</i>	<i>cuiusquam</i>
DAT.	<i>cuiquam</i>	<i>cuiquam</i>
ACC.	<i>quemquam</i>	<i>quiequam</i>
ABL.	<i>quōquam</i>	<i>quōquam</i>

a. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in sentences containing a negative or a comparative, or in conditions. It has no plural. The plural forms of **ūllus** are used when a plural is needed.

THE ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

449. The ablative with or without a preposition (**ab**, **dē**, **ex**) is used to express cause.

Multis dē causis, *for many reasons (because of many reasons).*

Numerō suō glōriāti sunt, *they boasted of their numbers (because of their numbers).*

450.

VOCABULARY

aliquis , aliquid , <i>pron.</i> , some one ; aliqui , aliqua , aliquod , <i>adj.</i> , some	magnitūdō , magnitūdinis , <i>F.</i> , size, magnitude
fleō , flēre , flēvī , flētum , weep, lament	quisquam , quicquam , any one at all
glōrior , -ārī , glōriātus sum , boast	tabernāculum , -ī , <i>N.</i> , tent
	testāmentum , -ī , <i>N.</i> , will
	timor , timōris , <i>M.</i> , fear

EXERCISES

451. 1. **Lēgātus** aliquem cum epistulā mīsit 2. **Nūllus** sonus in eō locō audītus est neque quisquam visus est. 3. **Caesar** virtūte ūnius legiōnis glōriātus est. 4. **Intellegimus** eum glōriātum esse. 5. **Exīstimāvit** eam legiōnem fortissimam esse.

PANIC IN THE ROMAN ARMY

In eō oppidō exercitus paucōs diēs mānsit. Hīs diēbus milītēs perterriti sunt quod Gallī dixērunt Germānōs magnā virtūte et ingentī magnitūdine corporum esse. Is timor tōtum exercitum occupāvit. Multī flentēs ad tabernacula sua iērunt et testāmenta fēcērunt. Magnae silvae inter Ariovistum et exercitum Rōmānum erant, et iter erat periculōsum.

452. 1. Some one saw the boy in the forest. 2. You often boast of the friendship of the Romans. 3. For (from) these reasons the town will be easily defended. 4. Roman soldiers were not always brave, but they defeated many enemies. 5. Diviciacus, weeping, implored aid from Caesar. 6. I have never given praise to anyone who did not work.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of *glōrior* in the third person singular in the indicative. (2) Explain what is meant by an *impersonal verb*. (3) Give all the forms of *licet* in the indicative. (4) Decline the interrogative pronoun. (5) Explain the case of *virtūte* in sentence 3, 451.

FIFTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

453. (1) Interrogative pronouns.
 (2) The declension of *quīdam* and *quisque*.
 (3) The declension of *aliquis* and *quisquam*.
 (4) Deponent verbs.
 (5) The conjugation of *ferō*.
 (6) Semi-deponent verbs.
 (7) The imperative mood.
 (8) The predicate nominative with passive verbs.
 (9) The ablative of cause.
 (10) The ablative with *ūtor*, etc.

454. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

appeal	license	respond
audacious	magnitude	tabernacle
colloquy	memory	testament
faculty	priority	timorous
ingredient	querulous	

TENTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | 19. -ne (<i>enclitic</i>) |
| 2. audeō, -ēre, ausus sum | 20. obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum |
| 3. cīvis, cīvis, M. | 21. oportet, -ēre, oportuit |
| 4. coepī, coepisse, coeptum | 22. perītus, -a, -um |
| 5. dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum | 23. posteā, <i>adv.</i> |
| 6. etiam, <i>adv.</i> | 24. potestās, -tātis, F. |
| 7. exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | 25. -que, <i>conj. (enclitic)</i> |
| 8. expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum | 26. quis, quid |
| 9. exstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum | 27. respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum |
| 10. impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum | 28. sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum |
| 11. iūs, iūris, N. | 29. senātus, -ūs, M. |
| 12. legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum | 30. sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum |
| 13. levis, -e | 31. sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum |
| 14. licet, -ēre, licuit | 32. supplicium, -ī, N. |
| 15. locō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | 33. sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum |
| 16. magnitūdō, -dinis, F. | 34. timor, -ōris, M. |
| 17. memoria, -ae, F. | |
| 18. multitūdō, -dinis, F. | |

- | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. name, call | 10. drive on, excite |
| 2. dare, venture | 11. justice, right |
| 3. citizen | 12. pick, gather, read |
| 4. began | 13. light (<i>in weight</i>) |
| 5. sleep | 14. it is lawful, permitted |
| 6. even, also | 15. place, put, set |
| 7. think, consider | 16. size, importance |
| 8. drive out | 17. memory |
| 9. pile up, erect | 18. multitude |

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 19. (<i>sign of a question</i>) | 27. answer |
| 20. besiege | 28. sit |
| 21. it is fitting | 29. senate |
| 22. skilled, experienced | 30. feel, realize |
| 23. afterwards | 31. take, assume |
| 24. power, authority, chance | 32. punishment |
| 25. and | 33. hold up, sustain |
| 26. who (<i>interrogative</i>) | 34. fear |

WORD STUDY: LATIN SUFFIXES

1. It is usually difficult to give exact meanings to Latin suffixes. Often we can only say that they are used in forming certain classes of words. They differ from prefixes in that they are not usually added to whole words to form new ones. Instead, words with which suffixes are employed are usually altered by the loss or change of one or more letters when a suffix is added. Thus, *civitās* is derived from *cīvis*, but the ending *-tās* instead of being added to *cīvis* is used with *cīvi-*.

2. There are numerous English adjectives and nouns which end in *-ant* or *-ent*, such as *independent*, *patient*, *tenant*, *apparent*, *constant*. Most of these words came from Latin present participles, which have stems ending in *-ant*, *-ent*, or *-ient*. These different endings all became *-ant* in French, and hence we have some words, as for example *tenant*, with the ending *-ant*, although the form of the Latin word from which it comes would lead us to expect the ending *-ent*. In many cases, however, we have the ending which we should expect from the spelling of the original Latin word.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

3. Explain the meaning of the following words and give Latin words with which they are connected in derivation.

audacious	expulsion	license
civic	locate	memorial
dormitory	jury	

LESSON LXXVI

THE SUBJUNCTIVE: PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

455. The subjunctive mood has four tenses, the present, the imperfect, the perfect, and the past perfect.

The present subjunctive of the first and second conjugations is as follows:

ACTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
portem	portēmus	moneam	moneāmus
portēs	portētis	moneās	moneātis
portet	portent	moneat	moneant

PASSIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
porter	portēmur	monear	moneāmur
portēris, -re	portēminī	moneāris, -re	moneāminī
portētur	portentur	moneātur	moneantur

a. The sign of the present subjunctive in the first conjugation is *ē*, which replaces the characteristic *ā* of the conjugation. In the second conjugation the sign is *ā*, which is added to the present stem.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE

456. The subjunctive expresses a variety of ideas, among the most important of which is *desire* (*will* or *wish*).

a. The expression of desire may consist in urging someone to act with the speaker.

Eum iuvēmus, let us help him.

b. The act desired may be expressed in the form of an order to be carried out by someone else than the person addressed.

Legiō impetum faciat, *let the legion make an attack.*

c. The negative used with the subjunctive of desire is **nē**.

Nē eum moneāmus, *let us not warn him.*

457.

VOCABULARY

centuriō, centuriōnis , M., centurion, <i>an officer in the Roman army</i>	incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum , reprimand
cupiditās, -tātis , F., eagerness, desire	mēns, mentis , F., mind, disposition, attitude
decimus, -a, -um , tenth	nē, adv. , not (<i>with subj. in expressions of desire, etc.</i>)
doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum , teach, tell	praecipuē, adv. , especially
	vehementer, adv. , severely

EXERCISES

458. 1. Hōs militēs moneāmus. 2. Servi gladiōs et scūta portent. 3. Centuriō in eō locō maneat. 4. Nē eum vehementer incūsēmus. 5. Impigrē hodiē labōrēmus et hoc opus cōficiāmus.

ORDER AND COURAGE RESTORED

Convocatō conciliō Caesar militēs et centuriōnēs vehementer incūsāvit. Eōs docuit (*told*) nūllam causam esse timōris. Decimam legiōnem quae nōn timuerat praecipuē laudāvit. Verbīs eius mentēs eōrum conversae sunt et cupiditās bellī inlāta est. Tum castra mōvit et septem diēs iter fēcit ad ea loca in quibus Ariovistum esse audierat.

459. 1. Let us move camp at once. 2. Let the legion make an attack. 3. Let us praise the centurions of this legion. 4. Let them not fear this enemy whom they have

often conquered. 5. The mountain which overhung was of great height. 6. The legions have not dared to follow the Germans through the forests.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **doceō** and **incūsō** in the present subjunctive, active and passive. (2) Conjugate **cōnor** and **polliceor** in the present subjunctive. (3) Name the tense and the mood of each verb in the sentences of 458. (4) Decline **quisque**. (5) Name the semi-deponent verbs.

LESSON LXXVII

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE: PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

460. The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses introduced by **ut**, *that*, or **nē**, *that not*, to express the purpose of the main act.

Fugit ut periculum vītet, *he flees that he may avoid danger (in order to avoid danger).*

Auxilium mittit nē hostēs oppidum capiant, *he sends aid that the enemy may not capture the town.*

a. The act which is expressed by a clause of this form is one which is desired (or one the prevention of which is desired). Hence the force of the mood is the same as in the independent clauses of the preceding lesson, that is, it expresses *desire* or, more exactly, *will*.

b. In English, purpose is commonly expressed by the infinitive or by phrases introduced by *in order to*, or by clauses introduced by *that* or *in order that*.

He came to see his friend; he came in order to see his friend; he came in order that he might see his friend.

Such phrases or clauses cannot be translated into Latin by the infinitive, but are rendered by **ut** (or **nē**) and the subjunctive. If the purpose clause is negative, **nē** is used.

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

461.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

dūcam	capiam	audiam
dūcās	capiās	audiās
dūcat	capiat	audiat

PLURAL

dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
dūcant	capiant	audiant

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

dūcar	capiar	audiar
dūcāris, -re	capiāris, -re	audiāris, -re
dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur

PLURAL

dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

462.

VOCABULARY

adventus, -ūs, m., arrival, approach	pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier; pl., infantrymen, infantry
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice	proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, set out
īnsīdiae, -ārum, f. pl., treachery, ambush	quīntus, -a, -um, fifth
nē, conj., that not (in clauses of purpose)	ut, conj., that
	uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, each

EXERCISES

463. 1. Uterque proficiscitur ut urbem capiat. 2. Ūnam legiōnem relinquit ut locus mūniātur. 3. Iter āvertunt ut cōpiās Rōmānās sequantur. 4. Aciem instruit ut proelium committat. 5. Auxilium implōrant nē urbēs incendantur. 6. Cum omnibus cōpiīs proficiscāmur. 7. Caesar gāvīsus est quod Ariovistus colloquium postulāverat.

A CONFERENCE IS ARRANGED

Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mīsit et colloquium postulāvit. Diēs colloquiō cōstitutus est ex eō diē quīntus. Uterque ad colloquium cum equitātū et sine peditibus vēnit quod Ariovistus dixit sē verērī īnsidiās. Sed Caesar decimam legiōnem prō equitātū dūxit quod equitātūī fidem nōn habēbat.

464. 1. He sends envoys in order to demand (that he may demand) a conference. 2. He remains in the city to see his friend. 3. He sends the soldiers that the town may be defended. 4. He brings (leads) the legion that he may not be surrounded (**circumvenire**) through treachery. 5. Let us bring the cavalry and one legion with us (387).

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **mittō** and **veniō** in the present active subjunctive. (2) Conjugate **proficiscor** and **potior** in the present subjunctive. (3) Give the third person plural of the present active subjunctive of **laudō**, **moveō**, **dēfendō**, and **mūniō**. (4) Conjugate **proficiscor** in the future tense. (5) Indicate the tense sign and personal ending of **moveat**.



ROMAN SEAL RINGS

LESSON LXXVIII

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE: PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE
OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

465. Sometimes a relative pronoun is used to introduce a purpose clause.

Lēgātum mittit quī colloquium postulet, he sends an envoy who shall demand (to demand) an interview.

a. The relative clause of purpose is frequently employed in dependence upon a main clause which has a form of *mittō* or some one of its compounds as its verb.

466. The present subjunctive of *sum* and *possum* is as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>	<i>possim</i>	<i>possīmus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>possīs</i>	<i>possītis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>possit</i>	<i>possint</i>

467.

VOCABULARY

arroganter, adv., insolently
ita, adv., so, thus
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum,
 speak

parātus, -a, -um, prepared
postulātum, -ī, N., demand,
 request
priusquam, conj., before

EXERCISES

468. 1. *Homō mittitur quī sit dux exercitūs.* 2. *Exer-
 citum dīvidit ut hostēs circumvenīre possit.* 3. *Legiōnem
 in castris relinquit quae hostēs repellat.* 4. *Lēgātōs mittet
 quī eadem postulent.* 5. *Sint omnēs fortēs.*

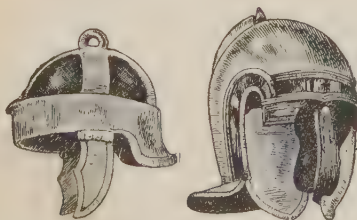
ARIOVISTUS IS DEFIANT

In eō colloquiō Caesar iterum questus est dē iniūriis quās Ariovistus fēcerat, et quaedam (*certain things*) postulāvit. His postulātis Ariovistus arroganter respondit, atque ita locūtus est: Ego in Galliam vēnī priusquam populus Rōmānus. Nōn ego bellum Gallīs intulī sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt. Omnēs cōpiās eōrum proeliō superāvī. Parātus sum iterum dēcertāre. Sī tū in Galliā manēbis hostis tuus erō. Sī dēcēdēs amīcus erō.

469. 1. He demands help, that the city may not be captured. 2. I am leaving ten men to fortify this place (who shall fortify). 3. They are collecting forces that they may be able to lay waste the fields. 4. Caesar enrolls two new legions in order to defend the province. 5. Let us be brave in danger.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **loquor** in the present subjunctive and the future indicative. (2) Explain the mood of **sit** in sentence 1, and of **sint** in sentence 5, 468. (3) Give the principal parts of **questus**, **respondit**, **intulī**, and **vēnī**. (4) Decline **quīdam**. (5) Conjugate **dēcēdō** in the present indicative and subjunctive, active voice.



ROMAN HELMETS

LESSON LXXIX

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERBS OF DESIRE: IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES DEPENDING ON WORDS OF DESIRE

470. Many verbs expressing or implying an idea of desire, such as those meaning *to persuade, command, urge, determine, wish*, and the like, may take as object a clause with its verb in the subjunctive. The conjunction is **ut**, negative **nē**. A clause of this kind is usually translated into English by an infinitive phrase.

His persuāsit ut exīrent, he persuaded them to go forth.

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

471. The imperfect subjunctive of all regular verbs has the tense sign **rē**¹ before the personal endings. Its forms are made on the present stem.

ACTIVE

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret

PLURAL

portārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
portārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

¹As has been previously stated, a long vowel in a tense sign or stem ending becomes short before the personal endings **-m**, **-t**, **-nt**, **-r**, and **-ntur**.

PASSIVE

SINGULAR

portārer	monērer	dūceret	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audirēris
<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>	<i>or</i>
portārēre	monērēre	dūcerēre	caperēre	audirēre
portārētur	monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audirētur

PLURAL

portārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audirēmur
portārēminī	monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audirēminī
portārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audirentur

a. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive, with the necessary changes in quantity. This statement applies to all irregular verbs as well as regular verbs.

472.

VOCABULAR

colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus	imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
sum, confer, converse	command (<i>with dative</i>)
comprehendō, -hendere,	lapis, lapidis, m., stone
-hendī, -hēsum, seize	patior, patī, passus sum,
discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -ces-	permit, allow
sum, withdraw	redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reduc-
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge	tum, lead back

EXERCISES

473. 1. Eī persuādet ut dēcēdat. 2. Eī persuāsīt ut dēcēderet. 3. Eōs hortātur ut impetum sustineant. 4. Caesar legiōnem hortātus est ut impetum hostium fortiter sustinēret. 5. Militem ad amīcum mīsīt quī eum hortārētur ut venīret.

A TREACHEROUS ATTACK

Intereā equitēs Germānōrum appropinquāvērunt et tēla lapidēsque in Rōmānōs iacere coepērunt. Caesar ex colloquiō discessit et suōs (201) ad castra redūxit. Eīs imperāvit nē tēla in Germānōs iacerent. Postēa Ariovistus lēgātōs mīsit et aliud colloquium postulāvit. Caesar duōs lēgātōs mīsit quī cum eō colloquerentur. Sed Ariovistus eōs comprehendit neque dīcere passus est.



CAESAR'S TRIUMPH

474. 1. I persuaded the boy to remain. 2. The man persuaded his brother to withdraw. 3. The soldiers urged the centurions to lead them to the camp. 4. No one commanded (**imperāre**) you to do this. 5. The king persuaded the Germans to cross the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **hortor** and **colloquor** in the imperfect subjunctive. (2) Decline together **īdem lapsis**. (3) Give a synopsis of **potior** in the third person singular, in the indicative and in the present and the imperfect subjunctive. (4) Explain the mood of **hortārētur** and of **venīret** in sentence 5, 473. (5) Analyze the forms **sustinērent** and **hortārētur**.

LESSON LXXX

SUBJUNCTIVE OF **FERŌ** AND **EŌ**: ANTICIPATORY
SUBJUNCTIVETHE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF **FERŌ** AND **EŌ**

475. PRESENT

ACTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
feram	ferāmus
ferās	ferātis
ferat	ferant

PASSIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
ferar	ferāmur
ferāris <i>or</i> ferāre	ferāminī
ferātur	ferantur

IMPERFECT

ACTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
ferrem	ferrēmus
ferrēs	ferrētis
ferret	ferrent

PASSIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
ferrer	ferrēmur
ferrēris <i>or</i> ferrēre	ferrēminī
ferrētur	ferrentur

PRESENT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
eam	eāmus
eās	eātis
eat	eant

IMPERFECT

SINGULAR	PLURAL
īrem	īrēmus
īrēs	īrētis
īret	īrent

THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

476. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to refer to an act as expected or anticipated.

Exspectāvit dum frāter redīret, he waited until his brother should return.

a. The Anticipatory Subjunctive is most frequently used after conjunctions meaning *until* or *before*.

477.

VOCABULARY

commeātus, -ūs, m., supplies	dum, <i>conj.</i> , until
cōnsidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -ses-	interclūdō, -ere, interclūsī,
sum, encamp	interclūsum, cut off
contineō, -ēre, continuī, con-	postridiē, <i>adv.</i> , the next day
tentum, restrain	ultrā, <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , beyond

EXERCISES

478. 1. Auxilium mīsit priusquam urbs caperētur. 2. In castrīs exspectābant dum auxilium ferrētur. 3. Ad oppidum pervēnit priusquam hostēs fugerent. 4. Ex urbe exeāmus ut proelium committāmus. 5. Domī puer manēbat dum frāter redīret. 6. Auxilium ferāmus et amīcōs iuvēmus.

CAESAR OFFERS BATTLE

Eōdem diē Ariovistus castra mōvit et sex milibus passuum ā Caesaris castrīs cōnsēdit. Postridiē castra ultrā Caesarem fēcit ut eum commeātū interclūderet. Caesar aciem instrūxit sed Ariovistus suōs castrīs (*in camp*) continuit, neque proelium commisit. Equitēs autem Germānōrum cum equitātū Rōmānōrum proeliō contendēbant.

479. 1. The Germans waited until Caesar should move camp. 2. We seized the camp before the enemy fled. 3. The soldiers will set out to bring aid. 4. The centurion urged the legion to go by this road (that it should go, etc.). 5. Ariovistus restrained his men until the Romans should move their camp.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **cōnferō** in the present subjunctive passive and the imperfect subjunctive active. (2) Conjugate **trānseō** in the present and imperfect subjunctive. (3) Give a synopsis of **exeō** in the third person plural of the indicative and in the present and imperfect subjunctive. (4) Explain the mood of **fugerent** in sentence 3, 478.

SIXTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

480.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

adventus, -ūs, M.	aliquis, aliquid
commeātus, -ūs, M.	quidam, quaedam, quoddam
cōsulātus, -ūs, M.	quis? quid?
cupiditās, -tātis, F.	quisquam, quicquam
facultās, -tātis, F.	quisque, quidque
īnsidiæ, -ārum, F.	uterque, utraque, utrumque
lapis, lapidis, M.	appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
mēns, mentis, F.	audeō, -ēre, ausus sum
pedes, peditis, M.	cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnetum
postulātum, -ī, N.	coepī, coepisse, coeptum
rīpa, -ae, F.	colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum
tabernāculum, -ī, N.	contineō, -ēre, continuī, contentum
testāmentum, -ī, N.	doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum
timor, timōris, M.	gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum
ūsus, -ūs, M.	glōrior, -ārī, glōriātus sum
parātus, -a, -um	hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum
prior, prius	imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
arroganter	ingredior, ingredī, ingressus sum
eō	licet, licēre, licuit
īnsolenter	loquor, loquī, locūtus sum
ita	oportet, -ēre, oportuit
paene	patior, patī, passus sum
postridiē	queror, querī, questus sum
praecipuē	redūcō, -ere, redūxī, reductum
vehementer	soleō, -ēre, solitus sum

481.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

arrogantly	docile	loquacious
comprehend	exhort	mental
contain	imperative	reduce
cupidity	insidious	vehemently

LESSON LXXXI

IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF **SUM** AND **POSSUM**:
RESULT CLAUSESTHE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF **SUM** AND **POSSUM**

482. The irregular verb **sum** and its compound, **possum**, are conjugated in the imperfect subjunctive as follows:

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

a. These forms may be found by adding the personal endings to the present infinitives (471, a).

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

483. Subordinate clauses expressing result are introduced by **ut** (occasionally by a relative pronoun) and have their verbs in the subjunctive.

ita arroganter respondit ut omnēs irātī essent, *he answered so arrogantly that all were angry.*

a. The negative used in clauses of result is **nōn**.

b. The subjunctive in these clauses usually states a fact and is translated by the English indicative, as in the example above.

484.

VOCABULARY

dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum, choose, select	perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, per- fectum, complete
diligenter, <i>adv.</i> , diligently	tam, <i>adv.</i> , so (<i>with adjectives</i> <i>or adverbs</i>)
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, ap- propriate	undique, <i>adv.</i> , on all sides

EXERCISES

485. 1. Tam celeriter milites castra undique circumvenērunt ut nēmō fugere posset. 2. Pueri tam diligenter laborāvērunt ut multi eōs laudārent. 3. Illis hominibus persuāsimus ut nobis amīci essent. 4. Legiō pervenire contendēbat priusquam oppidum expugnārētur. 5. Militēs ita ācriter pugnāvērunt ut omnēs hostēs fugerent.

THE ROMANS FORTIFY ANOTHER CAMP

Ubi (*when*) Caesar vīdit Germānōs castris sē continēre, aliud cōsilium cēpit (*formed*). Locum idōneum dēlēgit et castra parva mūnīre coepit. Ariovistus equitēs ad eum locum mīsit quī Rōmānōs terrērent. Illi autem repulsi sunt atque opus perfectum est.

486. 1. The Gauls fought so fiercely that we could not drive them back. 2. The horsemen were so brave that they dared to make an attack on the legion. 3. We could not persuade the soldiers to choose (that they choose) a suitable place. 4. The Romans tried to complete the work before the Helvetians should cross the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **sum** in the third person singular of the indicative and of the present and the imperfect subjunctive. (2) Give a synopsis of **possum** in the third person plural of the indicative and of the present and the imperfect subjunctive. (3) Explain the subjunctive **expugnārētur** in sentence 4, 485. (4) Compare the adverb **diligenter** (from the adjective **diligēns**). (5) Conjugate **perficiō** in the present and the imperfect subjunctive, active voice.

sum

LESSON LXXXII

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: INDIRECT QUESTIONS

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

487. The perfect active subjunctive is formed on the perfect stem, with the tense sign **erī**.

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.	IV.
portāverim	monuerim	dūxerim	audīverim
portāverīs	monuerīs	dūxerīs	audīverīs
portāverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audīverit

PLURAL

portāverīmus	monuerīmus	dūxerīmus	audīverīmus
portāverītis	monuerītis	dūxerītis	audīverītis
portāverint	monuerint	dūxerint	audīverint

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

488. The perfect passive subjunctive is made up of the past participle and the present subjunctive of **sum**.

portātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	audītus sim
portātus sīs,	monitus sīs,	ductus sīs,	audītus sīs,
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

489. An indirect question is a question which is quoted with changed form. Indirect questions depend on words of *asking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like:

He asked who the man was. (Direct, *Who is the man?*)

In Latin, an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Sciō cūr timeās, *I know why you fear.* (Direct, **Cūr timēs?** *Why do you fear?*)

490.

VOCABULARY

arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum,
think

cōfidō, -ere, cōnfisus sum
(442), trust (usually takes
dative)

dēmum, adv., at last

ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductum,
lead out

quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quae-
sītum, ask

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, know

vesper, vesperī, M., evening

EXERCISES

491. 1. Quaerō quis hic homō sit. 2. Nēmō intellegit quis hoc dōnum mīserit. 3. Scīmus cūr omnēs hunc puerum monuerint. 4. Nōn reperīre possum in quō locō amīcī nostrī habitāverint. 5. Pater tuus huic hominī nōn cōnfīdit quod eum honestum esse nōn arbitrātur. 6. Tam diū in silvā mānsit ut ante noctem domum pervenīre nōn posset.

before my time

THE BATTLE BEGINS

Caesar duās legiōnēs in castrīs minōribus reliquit nē comēatū prohibērētur. Reliquōs in castra maiōra redūxit. Ariovistus statim partem cōpiārum mīsīt quae impetum in eās legiōnēs faceret. Ācritur ad vesperum pugnātum est (438, a), sed Germānī repulsī sunt. Tum dēmum Ariovistus omnēs cōpiās ēdūxit ut proeliō dēcertāret.

492. 1. We know who has heard this. 2. The man asks who has promised a reward. 3. No one thinks that the enemy are brave. 4. The leader knows who has captured the town. 5. We shall find out where you have been. 6. The camp was so placed that the soldiers could see the bank of the river.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **possum** in the perfect indicative and the perfect subjunctive. (2) Conjugate **ferō** in the perfect subjunctive, active and passive. (3) Give a synopsis of **cōfidō** in the third person singular of the indicative. (4) Explain the mood of **mīserit** in sentence 2, and of **posset** in sentence 6, 491. (5) Explain the mood of **faceret**, line 10, 491, and of **dēcertāret**, line 12, 491.

Caesar was looking for

LESSON LXXXIII

PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

493. The past perfect subjunctive in the active voice is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign *issē*.

SINGULAR

I.	II.	III.	IV.
portāvissem	monuissēm	dūxissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	monuissēs	dūxissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	monuisset	dūxisset	audīvisset

PLURAL

portāvissēmus	monuissēmus	dūxissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	monuissētis	dūxissētis	audīvissētis
portāvissent	monuissent	dūxissent	audīvissent

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE VOICE

494. The past perfect subjunctive in the passive voice is made up of the past participle and the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
portātus essem	monitus essem	ductus essem	audītus essem
portātus essēs, <i>etc.</i>	monitus essēs, <i>etc.</i>	ductus essēs, <i>etc.</i>	audītus essēs, <i>etc.</i>

495.

VOCABULARY

comminus, <i>adv.</i> , hand to hand	prōcurrō, -ere, prōcurrī, prō-
dexter, dextra, dextrum, right hand, right	cursum, run forward
firmus, -a, -um, firm, strong	sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, left hand, left
minimē, <i>adv.</i> , least	videor, vidērī, vīsus sum (passive of videō as de-
premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, press hard, press	ponent), seem

EXERCISES

496. 1. Puer quaesivit cūr amicus suus auxilium postulā-
risset. 2. Lēgātus repperit cūr militēs urbem nōn dēfendis-
sent. 3. Crassus auxilium tulit nē ea pars repellerētur. 4.
Tam celeriter prōcurrērunt ut statim comminus pugnārētur.
5. Centuriō locum castris (*for a camp*) dēlēgit quī idōneus
vidēbātur.

A HARD-FOUGHT BATTLE

Caesar a dextrō cornū proelium commisit quod ea pars
hostium minimē firma erat. Militēs Rōmānī ācriter impetum
fēcērunt et Germānī celeriter prōcurrērunt. Comminus pug-
nātum est. Germānī ā sinistrā parte repulsī sunt sed ā
dextrā parte vehementer Rōmānōs premēbant. Ad eam
partem P. Crassus quī equitātuī praeerat auxilium tulit.

497. 1. No one knew why the soldiers had come. 2. We
asked why the soldiers had not been sent. 3. We know
who is defending the town. 4. The centurion persuaded
the scouts to set out. 5. Caesar made an attack before the
enemy fortified their camp.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give a synopsis of **pugnō** and of **portō** in the third person sin-
gular, active voice, in the indicative and the subjunctive. (2) Give
the tense signs of the past perfect indicative, the perfect subjunctive,
and the past perfect subjunctive in the active voice. (3) Explain the
mood of **repellerētur** in sentence 3, 496. (4) Decline in the singular
the words **cornū dextrum**.

LESSON LXXXIV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

498. A direct quotation is one which repeats the exact words of the original speaker.

He said, "I will come."

An indirect quotation is one which repeats the thought, but not the exact words of the original speaker.

He said that he would come.

In English, an indirect quotation is commonly introduced by the conjunction *that*; sometimes no conjunction is used.

499. In Latin, indirect quotations are expressed as follows:

- (1) A main clause containing a statement has its verb in the infinitive with the subject in the accusative.
- (2) A main clause containing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.
- (3) All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

*Lēgātus dīxit locum quem centuriōnēs
dēlēgissent nōn idōneum esse, the lieu-
tenant said that the place which the
centurions had chosen was not suitable.*

a. The constructions of indirect discourse are used after words of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like. For this use in simple sentences see 395.

500.

VOCABULARY

incolumis, -e, safe

nam, conj., for

regiō, *regiōnis*, F., region

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī,

-mānsum, remain

salūs, *salūtis*, F., safety

tergum, -ī, N., back

uxor, *uxōris*, F., wife

vertō, -ere, *vertī*, *versum*,

turn; *terga vertere*, flee

EXERCISES

501. 1. Nūntius dīcit hostēs oppidum mūnīre quod impetum timeānt. 2. Labiēnus cognōverat eās legiōnēs quae trāns flūmen essent in periculō magnō esse. 3. Cōnsidius renūntiāvit Gallōs eum montem tenēre ad quem Labiēnus profectus esset. 4. Ariovistus dīxit sē bellum gerere quod Gallī sē oppugnāvissent. 5. In eā regiōne diū remānsī.

ROUT OF THE GERMANS

Dēnique Germānī repulsī sunt et terga vertērunt. Ad flūmen Rhēnum contendērunt quī ex eō locō circiter quīnque mīlia passuum aberat. Ibi paucī trānsiērunt et sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, sed fīlia eius atque duae uxōrēs interfectae sunt. Nām Ariovistus duās uxōrēs habebat. Eī lēgātī quōs Caesar mīserat repertī sunt et incolumēs reductī sunt.

502. 1. The centurion said that the place which had been chosen for a camp was not suitable. 2. We think the boy is working because he fears his father. 3. The scouts reported to Caesar that the army which was approaching was large. 4. The enemy crossed the river so quickly that we were not able to fortify our camp. 5. The soldiers saw that Caesar was in danger.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Indicate the base of the nouns **regiō** and **salūs**. (2) Give the three stems of the verb **vertō**. (3) Give the principal parts of **proficiscor** and of **reperiō**. (4) Conjugate **absum** in the imperfect indicative and imperfect subjunctive. (5) Give all the infinitives of **premō**, active and passive.



ROMAN CHARIOT RACE

ELEVENTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. adventus, -ūs, M. | 21. mēns, mentis, F. |
| 2. celer, celeris, celere | 22. mors, mortis, F. |
| 3. cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum | 23. nam, <i>conj.</i> |
| 4. cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F. | 24. necessārius, -a, -um |
| 5. contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī,
-tentum | 25. ōdī, ōdisse |
| 6. cupiditās, -tātis, F. | 26. officium, -ī, N. |
| 7. dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī,
-lēctum | 27. oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī,
-positum |
| 8. dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī,
-positum | 28. ostendō, -tendere, -tendī,
-tentum |
| 9. dexter, -tra, -trum | 29. perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
-fectum |
| 10. dīlīgenter, <i>adv.</i> | 30. premō, -ere, pressī,
pressum |
| 11. discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī,
-cessum | 31. quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī,
quaesītum |
| 12. doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tum | 32. redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī,
-ductum |
| 13. dolor, -ōris, M. | 33. remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī,
-mānsum |
| 14. ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī,
-ductum | 34. salūs, -ūtis, F. |
| 15. expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī,
-positum | 35. sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum |
| 16. idōneus, -a, -um | 36. serviō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum |
| 17. imperātor, -ōris, M. | 37. sinister, -tra, -trum |
| 18. imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum | 38. vulnus, -neris, N. |
| 19. incolumis, -e | |
| 20. interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī,
-clūsum | |

-
1. a coming (to), arrival
2. swift
3. trust

4. custom, habit
5. hold together, contain,
confine

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 6. desire, greed | 23. for |
| 7. select, choose | 24. necessary, urgent |
| 8. put down, put aside | 25. hate |
| 9. right (hand), <i>as adj.</i> | 26. duty, service, courtesy |
| 10. with care | 27. put against, oppose |
| 11. go away, depart | 28. show |
| 12. teach, show | 29. accomplish |
| 13. grief | 30. press, oppress |
| 14. lead out | 31. seek, inquire |
| 15. set forth, explain | 32. lead back |
| 16. fit, suitable | 33. stay behind, remain |
| 17. commander, general | 34. safety |
| 18. command, order | 35. know |
| 19. unharmed, safe | 36. serve |
| 20. shut off, cut off, stop | 37. left (hand), <i>as adj.</i> |
| 21. mind | 38. wound |
| 22. death | |

WORD STUDY

1. Among the suffixes which are used in forming nouns are **-ia, -tia, -ium, (-t)iō, -dō, -tās, -tūs, -tus (-sus)**

Examples of their use in forming nouns from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs are the following:

From nouns:	From adjectives:	From verbs:
altitūdō (altus)	cīvitās (cīvis)	adventus (adveniō)
amīcitia (amīcus)	servitūs (servus)	cupiditās (cupiō)
celeritās (celer)	virtūs (vir)	oppugnātiō (oppugnō)

2. Some of these suffixes are represented in English derivatives from Latin as follows:

-ia appears as -y memoria , <i>memory</i>	(-t)iō appears as (-t)ion nātiō , <i>nation</i>
-tia appears as -ce (or -cy) diligentia , <i>diligence</i>	-tās appears as -ty nobilitās , <i>nobility</i>
-ium appears as -y (or -e) subsidium , <i>subsidy</i>	-tus often drops t adventus , <i>advent</i>

LESSON LXXXV

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued): *EŌ* (Completed)

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Continued)

503. The infinitive in indirect discourse is present, past, or future, according as the verb in the direct discourse expressed present, past, or future time.

The subjunctive is regularly present or perfect if the verb on which the indirect discourse depends is present or future. It is regularly past or past perfect if the verb on which the indirect discourse depends is in any tense of past time.

THE CONJUGATION OF *EŌ* (Completed)

504. The imperatives, participles, and infinitives of *eō* are as follows:

<i>Imperatives</i>	<i>Participles</i>	<i>Infinitives</i>
SING. <i>ī</i>	PRES. <i>iēns</i> (<i>gen. euntis</i>)	PRES. <i>īre</i>
PLUR. <i>īte</i>	PAST <i>itum</i>	PAST <i>isse</i> (<i>iisse</i>)
	FUT. <i>itūrus</i>	FUT. <i>itūrus esse</i>

505.

VOCABULARY

citerior, -ius, comparative
adj., nearer, hither

crēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum,
believe

pecūnia, -ae, F., money

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-
tum, put in command of

redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāc-
tum, reduce

servitūs, servitūtis, F., slav-
ery, servitude

Ubiī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Ubii,
a German tribe

EXERCISES

506. 1. *Centuriō oppidō¹ praefectus est.* 2. *Labiēnus centuriōnem oppidō praefēcit.* 3. *Caesar vīdit Belgās exercitum condūxisse.* 4. *Omnēs exīstimābant hostēs impetum*

¹ See 324.

factūrōs esse. 5. Lēgātus dīcit Germānōs discēdere quod pugnāre nōn cupiant. 6. Belgae crēdidērunt Rōmānōs in Galliā remanēre ut eam regiōnem in servitūtem redigerent. 7. Galli auxilium petivērunt et pecūniam pollicitī sunt.

THE END OF THE CAMPAIGN

Hōc proeliō cognitō trāns Rhēnum, Suēbī quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant domum redire coopērunt. Ubī quī eās regiōnēs incolēbant impetum in eōs in itinere fēcērunt atque magnum numerum interfēcērunt. Itaque duo bella ūnā aestāte cōnfecta sunt. Haec erant bellum Helvētiōrum et bellum Germānōrum.) Caesar Labiēnum castrīs praefēcit; ipse in Galliam citeriōrem profectus est.

507. 1. The Ubii said that their fathers had inhabited that region. 2. The Romans found out that the Germans were brave. 3. Labienus knew that the scouts would set out. 4. The Ubii had not been reduced to (in) slavery. 5. We did not promise money to the slave.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Decline together **meus liber**. (2) Explain the case of **oppidō** in sentence 2, 506. (3) Explain the case of **hostēs** in sentence 4, 506. (4) Give the accusative singular and the genitive plural of **citerior**. (5) Explain the mood of **redigerent** in sentence 6, 506.

SEVENTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

508. (1) The imperative, infinitives, and participles of **eō**.
 (2) The present subjunctive of regular verbs.
 (3) The present subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**.
 (4) The subjunctive of regular verbs.
 (5) The subjunctive of **sum** and **possum**.
 (6) The perfect and past perfect subjunctive.

- (7) The use of the subjunctive in main clauses.
- (8) Clauses of purpose.
- (9) Substantive clauses of desire.
- (10) The anticipatory subjunctive.
- (11) Indirect questions.
- (12) Indirect discourse.

509. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

arbitration	pecuniary	salutary
confide	perfect	servitude
credit	pressure	sinister
dexterity	remain	version
firm	requisition	vespers

LESSON LXXXVI

TENSES OF SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES: DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

TENSES IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

510. The relation between the tense of a subjunctive¹ in a subordinate clause and the tense of the verb of the main clause on which it depends is usually as follows:

(1) If the tense of the main verb denotes present or future time, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.

(2) If the tense of the main verb denotes past time, the tense of the dependent subjunctive is imperfect or past perfect.

(3) The present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses denote acts incomplete at the time of the

¹ The relation between the tense of a dependent indicative and that of the main verb is sufficiently evident from the English to cause the pupil no difficulty.

main verb. The perfect and past perfect denote acts complete at the time of the main verb.

a. If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, the dependent subjunctive is sometimes present or perfect.

b. A result clause occasionally has its verb in the perfect after a main tense of past time.

DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION

511. A clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*, with its verb in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive, is used to describe the situation in which the act of the main clause took place.

Cum pōns factus esset, exercitus flūmen trānsiit, *when the bridge had been made, the army crossed the river.*

512.

VOCABULARY

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,

league together, plot

cum, conj., when, since, although

libertās, -tātis, f., liberty

mereor, merērī, meritus sum, deserve

ob, prep. with accusative, on account of

occidō, -ere, occidī, occisum, kill

tantus, -a, -um, so great

inter sē, among themselves, to one another, one another

EXERCISES

513. 1. Militēs eō diē magnam laudem meritī sunt. 2. Cum Belgae inter sē coniūrāvissent, bellum parāre coepērunt. 3. Ob eam rem Caesar statim profectus est. 4. Timor tantus erat ut multī flērent. 5. Cum nūntius hoc dīxisset, discessit. 6. Cum multī occīsī essent, reliquī fūgērunt.

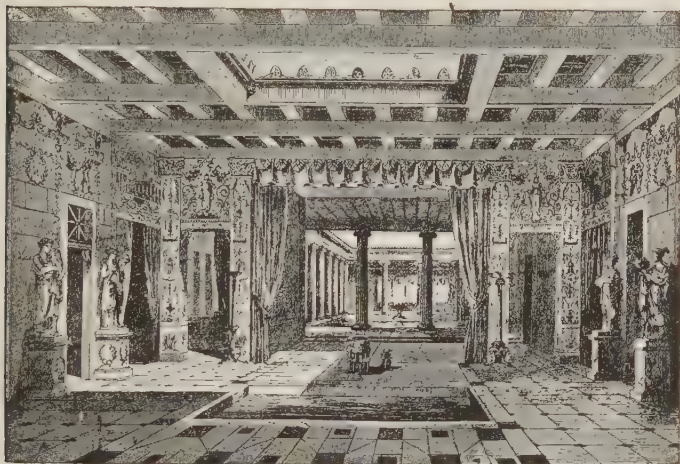
PLOTS AMONG THE BELGIANS

Cum Caesar in ceteriōre Galliā esset, Belgae contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre coepērunt. Eae gentēs quae proximae

to plot

to

erant ā Rōmānīs superātae erant. Exercitus Rōmānus in Galliā hiemābat, quod numquam antea factum erat. Itaque Belgae potentiam populi Rōmānī timēbant et libertātem suam dēfendere cōstituērunt. Cōpiās in ūnum locum condūxērunt et bellum parāvērunt.



INTERIOR OF A HOUSE AT POMPEII (RESTORATION)

514. 1. When the lieutenant had drawn up the line of battle, the enemy advanced. 2. The danger was so great that all remained in the city. 3. On account of this fact (*thing*) a legion was sent. 4. When the Belgians had seen this, they began to league together. 5. We cannot remain longer in this region.

SUGGESTED DRILL

- (1) Conjugate **sum** and **possum** in the past perfect indicative and the past perfect subjunctive.
- (2) Give a synopsis of **possum** in the third person, singular and plural, of the indicative and subjunctive.
- (3) Give the infinitives of **exeō** and **trānseō**.
- (4) Explain the mood of **coniūrāvissent** in sentence 4, and of **flērent** in sentence 6, 513.
- (5) Conjugate **occidō** in the perfect subjunctive, active voice.

LESSON LXXXVII

CONJUGATION OF *FIŌ*: SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACTTHE CONJUGATION OF *FIŌ*

515. The verb *fiŏ*, *become* or *be made*, is used as the passive of *faciŏ* in the present system. The perfect system of *faciŏ* in the passive is regularly formed with the past participle and the forms of *sum*. The endings of *fiŏ* are those of the active voice. Its forms will be found in the Appendix, section 35.

a. In this verb the vowel *i* is long before another vowel except in the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive.

b. The third person singular, when followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is commonly translated *it happens*, *it results*, *the result is*.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF FACT¹ INTRODUCED BY *UT*

516. Some verbs and phrases which express the bringing about of an act or situation may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a dependent clause introduced by *ut*, with its verb in the subjunctive.

The words with which this type of clause is most frequently used are *faciŏ* and its compounds, and words meaning *to happen*.

Fīēbat ut omnēs tīmērent, *it resulted (the result was) that all feared*.

Ea rēs effēcit ut castra tūta essent, *this fact brought it about that the camp was safe (made the camp safe)*.

¹ With the compounds of *faciŏ* a substantive clause of desire is sometimes used (470).

517.

VOCABULARY

certus, -a, -um, certain
fīō, **fieri**, **factus sum**, become,
 be made
frūmentārius, -a, -um, of
 grain; **rēs frūmentāria**,
 grain supply
pābulum, -ī, N., forage
Pedius, -ī, M., Pedius, a Ro-
 man name

Q., abbreviation for **Quīntus**,
 a Roman name
Rēmī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Remi,
 a tribe of Gaul
alterior, **ulterius**, farther
certiōrem (**certiōrēs**) **facere**,
 to inform (*lit.* to make more
 certain); **certior** (**certiōrēs**)
fieri, to be informed

a. The phrases **certiōrem** (-ēs) **facere**, **certior** (-ēs) **fieri**, may be followed by an infinitive with subject accusative.

Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt hostēs fūgis, *they in-
 formed Caesar that the enemy had fled.*

EXERCISES

518. 1. **Fīēbat ut nōn facile domō exīre possent.** 2. **Dumnorīx fit dux equitātūs.** 3. **Hic vir certior factus est moram esse periculōsam.** 4. **Dē hīs rēbus omnēs certiōrēs fiunt.** 5. **Rēmī Caesarem certiōrem faciunt.**

(**CAESAR ORGANIZES A LARGER ARMY**)

Caesar ā Labiēnō dē eā rē certior factus est. Itaque duās novās legiōnēs in Galliā ceteriōre cōscripsit. Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsīt quī eās in Galliam ulteriōrem dūceret. Ipse, cum cōpia pābuli esset, ad exercitum vēnit. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra mōvit et quīndecim diēbus ad finēs Belgārum pervēnit. Cum eō (*there*) vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt lēgātōs mīsērunt et pācem petiērunt.

519. 1. All things (**omnia**) which you command are being done. 2. The lieutenant is being informed concerning the danger. 3. The centurion was informed that the enemy were approaching. 4. We have informed the man that this

place is dangerous. 5. When the camp had been moved, the Remi sent envoys.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline the phrase **rēs frūmentāria** (used only in the singular).
 (2) Give the Latin noun from which the adjective **frūmentārius** is derived.
 (3) Conjugate the verb **petō** in the perfect and the past perfect subjunctive passive.
 (4) Explain the case of **dux** in sentence 2, 518.
 (5) Explain the mood of **dūceret**, line 7, 518.

LESSON LXXXVIII

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES: GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

520. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since*, has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, auxilium ā Caesare petēbant, *since they could not defend themselves, they requested aid from Caesar.*

THE GENITIVE OF MATERIAL

521. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed or the persons making up a collective noun.

Multitūdō Belgārum convēnit, *a multitude of Belgians assembled.*

a. This use is found chiefly with collective nouns.

522.

VOCABULARY

adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutū-	liberāliter, <i>adv.</i> , generously
rus, be present, be at hand	onus, oneris, N., burden,
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flow	weight
gravis, -e, heavy, hard to bear,	ōrdō, ordinis, M., rank, order
serious	vallēs, vallis, -ium, F., valley

EXERCISES

523. 1. Cum magnus numerus militum in oppidō esset, hostēs impetum nōn fēcērunt. 2. Ariovistus magnam multitudinem Germānōrum trādūxerat. 3. Cum iniūriæ hostium gravēs sint, auxilium tuum petimus. 4. Quod onus armōrum magnum erat, nostrī vix flūmen trāsiērunt. 5. Huic puerō persuādere potes ut domī maneat. 6. Eō diē omnēs ordinēs aderant. 7. Hoc flūmen per magnam vallem fluit, et multis locīs trānsitūr.

SUBMISSION OF THE REMI

Dixērunt sē parātōs esse obsidēs dare et Rōmānōs frumentō iuvāre. Dē hīs rēbus quæ apud Belgās fiēbant, et dē numerō quem quæque civitās ad hoc bellum pollicita erat Caesarem certiōrem fēcērunt. Caesar eīs liberāliter respondit et obsidēs eōrum accēpit. Dīviciācum Haeduū hortātus est ut cōpiæ Haeduōrum in finēs Belgārum dūcerentur.

524. 1. Since Ariovistus remained in camp, Caesar led back his forces to the town. 2. Since the scouts are not present, we shall send three soldiers. 3. A multitude of Gauls and Germans were killed in flight. 4. The road was so narrow that a few could defend it. 5. When the first ranks had crossed, the rest followed at once.

h

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **Germānōrum** in sentence 2, and of **puerō** in sentence 5, 523. (2) Explain the case of **diē** in sentence 6, 523. (3) Explain the mood of **esset** in sentence 1, 523. (4) Give a synopsis of **adsum** in the third person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive. (5) Give the genitive plural of **ōrdō** and **vallēs**.

LESSON LXXXIX

CONJUGATION OF *VOLŌ*: *CUM* ADVERSATIVE CLAUSESTHE IRREGULAR VERB *VOLŌ*

525. The verb *volō*, *wish, be willing*, is irregular. Its principal parts are *volō, velle, volui*.

PRESENT

<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>volō</i>	<i>volumus</i>	<i>velim</i>	<i>velimus</i>
<i>vīs</i>	<i>vultis</i>	<i>velis</i>	<i>velitis</i>
<i>vult</i>	<i>volunt</i>	<i>velit</i>	<i>velint</i>

IMPERFECT

<i>volēbam</i>	<i>volēbāmus</i>	<i>veliem</i>	<i>vellēmus</i>
<i>volēbās</i>	<i>volebātis</i>	<i>vellēs</i>	<i>vellētis</i>
<i>volēbat</i>	<i>volēbant</i>	<i>vellet</i>	<i>vellent</i>

FUTURE

<i>volam</i>	<i>volēmus</i>
<i>volēs</i>	<i>volētis</i>
<i>volet</i>	<i>volent</i>

PERFECT

<i>voluī</i>	<i>voluimus</i>	<i>voluerim</i>	<i>voluerimus</i>
--------------	-----------------	-----------------	-------------------

PAST PERFECT

<i>volueram</i>	<i>voluerāmus</i>	<i>voluissē</i>	<i>voluissēmus</i>
-----------------	-------------------	-----------------	--------------------

FUTURE PERFECT

<i>voluerō</i>	<i>voluerimus</i>
----------------	-------------------

*Participle**volēns**Infinitives*PRES. *velle*PAST *voluisse*

a. This verb has no imperatives.

CUM ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

526. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum**, meaning *although*, has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum periculum magnum sit, tamen impetum faciēmus,
although the danger is great, still we shall make an attack.

a. The adverb **tamen** usually stands in the main clause with which an adversative clause is connected.

527.

VOCABULARY

Axona , -ae, F., the Aisne, a river of France	extrēmus , -a, -um, last, farthest, farthest part of
bene , adv., well	prōpōnō , -ere, prōposuī , prōpositum , point out, explain
Bibrax , Bibractis , F., Bibrax, a town of Gaul	tardē , adv., slowly
difficultās , -tātis, F., difficulty	volō , velle , voluī , wish, will

EXERCISES

528. 1. Cum paucī in oppidō essent, tamen hostēs id expugnāre nōn poterant. 2. Caesar proelium committere volēbat. 3. Cum nōn bene meritī sītis, tamen vōs iuvābimus. 4. Tardius appropinquāvērunt quod magna onera portābant. 5. Fīēbat ut nēmō huic hominī cōnfīderet. 6. Magnae difficultātēs itineris prōpōnēbantur, sed tamen omnēs proficiēscī volēbant. 7. Vult, volet, vīs, volent.

LOCATION OF THE ROMAN CAMP

Ipse exercitum trāns flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs finibus Rēmōrum, dūxit et ibi castra posuit. Rīpae eius flūminis latus castrōrum mūniēbant. Itaque factum est ut commeātūs ad eum sine periculō portārī possent. Nam finēs Rēmōrum post eum erant. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum

nōmine (366) Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id Belgae magnō impetū oppugnāre coepērunt.

529. 1. Although the town is large, still a few soldiers can defend it. 2. This man wishes to live in the city. 3. Although the river was not deep, the legion advanced slowly. 4. The centurions could not persuade the soldiers to cross (470) the ditch. 5. The Germans wish to cross the Rhine.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Give the derivation of the English words *extreme*, *tardy*, and *proposition*. (2) Give the Latin adjective from which the noun *difficultās* is derived. (3) Explain the case of *homīni* in sentence 5, 528. (4) Give the principal parts of *volēbant* and *cōfidāmus*. (5) Explain the mood of *cōfideret* in sentence 5, 528.

LESSON XC

CONJUGATION OF *NŌLŌ*: CLAUSES OF FEAR

CONJUGATION OF *NŌLŌ*

530. The verb *nōlō* is a compound of *volō* and *nōn*. Its forms will be found in the Appendix, section 36.

CONSTRUCTIONS WITH EXPRESSIONS OF FEAR

531. Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by *nē*, meaning *that*, or *ut*, meaning *that not*.

Verēbantur nē exercitus noster in Galliā manēret, *they feared that our army would remain in Gaul.*

Timeō ut sē fortiter dēfendant, *I fear that they will not defend themselves bravely.*

a. The English future tense depending on a word or phrase of fear in the present tense is translated by the present subjunctive.

532.

VOCABULARY

aedificium, -ī, N., building, house	Iccius, -ī, M., Iccius, a chief of the Remi
dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum, give up, yield, surrender	nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, not wish, be unwilling
dēpopulor, -ārī, dēpopulātus sum, lay waste	paulisper, adv., a little while
	propinquus, -a, -um, near

EXERCISES

533. 1. Labiēnus veritus est nē hostēs flūmen trānsīrent.
2. Belgae, quī obsidēs mittere nōlēbant, paulisper restitē-
runt. 3. Verēmur nē aedificia incendantur. 4. Gallī timē-
bant ut sē dēfendere possent. 5. Cum aedificia vīcōsque
trāns Rhēnum habērent, eō redīre volēbant. 6. Iccius sē
hostibus dēdere nōluit.

THE DEFENSE OF BIBRAX

Oppidānī vix sē dēfendēbant. Iccius quī oppidō praefuit
nūntiōs ad Caesarem mīsit quī auxilium peterent. Dixit sē
nōn posse diūtius sustinēre. Cum Caesar haec cognōvisset,
auxilium statim mīsit. Hostēs ab oppidō discessērunt sed
agrōs Rēmōrum dēpopulātī sunt et multa aedificia vīcōsque
incendērunt. Ad castra Caesaris contendērunt et sua castra
in locō propinquō posuērunt.

534. 1. We fear that the town may be captured. 2. The
army was unwilling to advance. 3. The Romans feared that
the enemy would lay waste the province. 4. The Haeduan
were unwilling to furnish the grain which they had promised.
5. We feared that the messenger would not come.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) State the difference between the use of conjunctions in purpose
clauses and in clauses of fear. (2) Point out the difference between
the forms of negative clauses of purpose and of negative clauses of
result. (3) Name the three kinds of cum clauses, giving the meaning
of cum with each. (4) State what tenses of the subjunctive are used
with cum meaning when.

EIGHTEENTH REVIEW LESSON

535.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aedificium, -ī, N.	adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus	
difficultās, -tātis, F.	arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum	
libertās, -tātis, F.	cōnfīdō, -ere, cōnfisus sum	
onus, oneris, N.	coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum	
ōrdō, ordinis, M.	dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum	
pābulum, -ī, N.	dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum	
pecūnia, -ae, F.	dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum	
regiō, -ōnis, F.	fīō, fierī, factus sum	
salūs, salūtis, F.	mereor, -ērī, meritus sum	
servitūs, -tūtis, F.	nōlō, nōlle, nōlū	
tergum, -ī, N.	occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsum	
uxor, uxōris, F.	perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, perfectum	
vallēs, vallis, F.	praefficiō, -ere, praefecī, praefectum	
vesper, vesperī, M.	premō, -ere, pressī, pressum	
citerior, citerius	prōpōnō, -ere, prōposuī, prōpositum	
dexter, -tra, -trum	quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum	
extrēmus, -a, -um	redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāctum	
firmus, -a, -um	sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum	
frūmentārius, -a, -um	vertō, vertere, vertī, versum	
gravis, grave	volō, velle, voluī	
idōneus, -a, -um	bene	tam
incolumis, incolume	comminus	tardē
propinquus, -a, -um	dēmum	undique
sinister, -tra, -trum	liberāliter	cum
tantus, -a, -um	minimē	nam
ulterior, ulterius	paulisper	ubi
		ob

536.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

certain	merit	tardy
difficulty	ordinal	ulterior
extreme	propinquity	valley
grave	propose	volition

LESSON XCI

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE: DATIVE OF AGENT

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

537. The Latin verb has a future passive participle, formed on the present stem, with the endings **-ndus**, **-nda**, and **-ndum**.

I.	II.	III.	IV.
amandus, -a, -um	monendus	dūcendus capiendus	audiendus

a. This participle refers to something that is to be done or ought to be done.

Homō monendus est, *the man is to be (must be) warned.*

THE DATIVE OF AGENT

538. With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly indicated by the dative.

Homō frātrī monendus est, *the man must be warned by his brother.*

a. In translating expressions of obligation or necessity into Latin with this construction it is often necessary to change the verb from the active to the passive.

We must send help (help must be sent by us), **auxilium nōbīs mittendum est.**

539.

VOCABULARY

cotīdiē , <i>adv.</i> , daily, every day	sōl , sōlis , <i>m.</i> , the sun
fortūna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , fortune	supersedeō , -sedēre, -sēdī,
opīniō , opīniōnis , <i>f.</i> , belief,	-sessum, refrain from
expectation	umquam , <i>adv.</i> , ever (<i>used</i>
rēgīna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , queen	<i>with negatives</i>)

EXERCISES

540. 1. Caesarī aciēs instruenda est. 2. Castra militibus dēfendenda sunt. 3. Ōlim fortūna eius cīvitātis melior erat quod cīvēs meliōrēs habēbat. 4. Rēmī verēbantur nē oppidum caperētur. 5. Domum redīre nōn vult. 6. Auxilium nōbīs statim ferendum est. 7. Eō diē iter nostrum per silvam magnam fuit neque sōlem vīdimus. 8. Rēx et rēgīna fūgērunt neque umquam ad urbem rediērunt.

BATTLE AT THE AISNE

Prīmō Caesar propter multitūdinem hostium et propter opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēbat. Equitēs eius autem cum equitibus Belgārum cotīdiē proeliō contendēbant. Cum ipse vīdisset Rōmānōs nōn minus fortēs esse, (in) locō idōneō aciem instrūxit. Hostēs item cōpiās suās instrūxērunt. Sed eō diē proelium nōn commissum est. Posterō diē Belgae ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt et trānsīre cōnātī sunt. Sed multīs interfectīs repulsī sunt.

541. 1. The army ought to cross the river (the river ought to be crossed, *etc.*). 2. The centurion ought to lead back the soldiers to camp. 3. No one ought to be sent into danger by the leader. 4. The enemy led out their army every day, but they did not begin battle. 5. The towns of our allies ought not to be burned by the legion.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the case of **militibus** in sentence 2, and of **nōbīs** in sentence 6, 540. (2) Give the future active and the future passive participles of **postulō**, **habeō**, **dīcō**, and **mūniō**. (3) Give a synopsis of **volō** in the third person singular of the indicative and the subjunctive. (4) Give a synopsis of **nōlō** in the second person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive. (5) Explain the mood of **caperētur** in sentence 4, 540.

LESSON XCII

CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ* GENITIVE OF OBJECTTHE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*

542. The verb *mālō*, *prefer*, is a compound of *magis* and *volō*. Its forms will be found in the Appendix, section 36.

Mālō has no imperatives or participles.

THE GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS

543. The verbs *meminī* and *reminīscor*, *remember*, and *oblīviscor*, *forget*, frequently take a noun in the genitive as object. But if the object is a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

544.

VOCABULARY

ēgredior, *ēgredī*, *ēgressus*
sum, set out, depart from
mālō, *mālle*, *māluī*, *prefer*
meminī, *meminisse*, *defective*
verb, *remember* (*the perfect is translated as present, the past perfect as past, and the future perfect as future*)

oblīviscor, *oblīviscī*, *oblītus*
sum, forget
prīstinus, -a, -um, former,
old-time
reminīscor, *reminīscī*, *remember*, recall
secundus, -a, -um, second
vigilia, -ae, f., watch (*one fourth of the night*)

EXERCISES

545. 1. Caesar veterum iniuriarum Helvetiorum reminiscēbatur. 2. Pristinæ virtutis eorum non oblītus est. 3. Hās condiciōnēs pācis non accēpērunt quod in libertāte manēre mālēbant. 4. Domō exīre māvult quod numquam domī contentus fuit. 5. Semper periculōrum eius bellī meminērō. 6. Cōpiæ instruendæ sunt et proelium committendum est.

THE BELGIANS DISPERSE

Cum Belgae magnam cōpiam rei frūmentāriae nōn habērent, in eō locō nōn diū remanēre poterant. Itaque conciliō convocātō, domum redire cōstituērunt. Secundā vigiliā castris ēgressi sunt. Cum quisque primum locum itineris peteret, fēcērunt ut Rōmāni eōs fugere existimārent.

546. 1. The Romans remembered the victory of the Helvetians. 2. On that day Caesar preferred to refrain from battle. 3. Labienus did not forget the flight of the cavalry of the Gauls. 4. The Belgians remembered the liberty in which their fathers had lived (remained): 5. The soldiers seemed to fear the Germans.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **volō**, **nōlō**, and **mālō**, in the present indicative and the present subjunctive. (2) Give the future passive participles of **ēgredior** and **convocō**. (3) Explain the case of **virtūtis** in sentence 2, and of **domō** in sentence 4, 545. (4) Conjugate **ēgredior** and **oblivīscor** in the present indicative. (5) Conjugate **meminī** in the perfect subjunctive.

LESSON XCIII

THE SUPINE: PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

THE SUPINE

547. The Supine is a verbal noun with only two case forms, the accusative and the ablative of the singular number. The accusative ends in **-um** and the ablative in **-ū**.

I.	II.	III.		IV.
portātum	monitum	ductum	captum	auditum
portātū	monitū	ductū	captū	auditū

a. The accusative of the supine may be used to express purpose in a clause in which the finite verb expresses motion.

Lēgātōs pācem petitum mīsērunt, *they sent envoys to ask peace.*

b. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

Optimum factū, *best to do (the best thing to do).*

REVIEW OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

548. a. Place to Which is regularly expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**.

b. Place Where is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in**.

c. Place from Which is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

d. With names of towns or small islands, and with **domus**, Place to Which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition, and Place from Which by the ablative without a preposition.

e. With names of towns and small islands, and with **domus**, Place Where is expressed by the locative, which in the singular of the first and second declensions is identical with the genitive; with other words it is identical with the ablative.

f. The locative of **domus** is **domī**. A few words, among which are **locus** and **pars**, may omit the preposition in expressing Place Where, especially if modified by an adjective.

549.

VOCABULARY

agmen, agminis, N., line,
column (*of an army*)

cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
spare, protect

incrēdibilis, -e, incredible, ex-
traordinary

moror, -ārī, morātus sum,
delay

Noviodūnum, -ī, N., Noviodu-
num, *a town of Gaul*

novissimus, -a, -um (*superla-
tive of novus*), last; rear

**subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus
sum**, follow, follow closely

Suessiōnēs, -um, M. *pl.*, the
Suessiones, *a tribe of Gaul*

EXERCISES

550. 1. Haeduī ad Caesarem auxilium rogātum vērunt. 2. Id facillimum est factū. 3. Omnēs quī arma trādidērunt ab eō cōservātī sunt. 4. Proximā nocte domum vērunt et paulisper domī mānsērunt. 5. Domō proficisci volēbant quod numquam contentī fuerant. 6. Caesar Noviodūnī nōn diū morātus est. 7. In eā insulā magnus numerus equōrum erat. 8. Incrēdibili celeritāte flūmen trāsiērunt.

THE ROMANS PURSUE

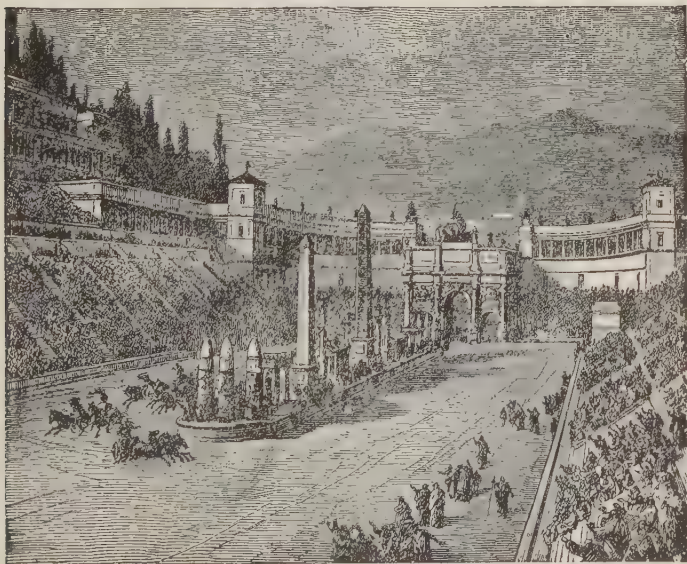
Prīmā lūce Caesar omnem equitātum mīsīt quī novissimum agmen morārētur. Labiēnum cum tribus legiōnibus subsequi iussit. Hae magnam multitudinem hostium fugientium concidērunt. Caesar exercitum in finēs Suessiōnum dūxit quī Rēmīs proximī sunt. Suessiōnēs in oppidum Noviodūnum

convēnērunt sed cum Caesar omnia comparāvisset lēgātōs pācem petītum mīsērunt.

551. 1. Those who have returned home ought to be protected. 2. The Belgians set out for home in the second watch. 3. Iccius sent men to ask aid. 4. Some will remain at home, others will set out for the city. 5. This is the best thing to do (is best to do). 6. The courage of these men is incredible.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Decline **domus**. (2) Give a synopsis of **moror** in the third person singular of the indicative and the subjunctive. (3) Give a synopsis of **subsequor** in the third person plural of the indicative and the subjunctive. (4) Give all the infinitives and all the participles of **cōservō**. (5) Give the supines of **videō** and **dīcō**.



CIRCUS MAXIMUS

LESSON XCIV

THE GERUND

552. The Gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension. It is in the neuter gender, and its only forms are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases of the singular number. Its nominative is supplied by the infinitive. Its declension is as follows:

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
GEN.	portandī	monendī	dūcendī	audiendī
DAT.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō
ACC.	portandum	monendum	dūcendum	audiendum
ABL.	portandō	monendō	dūcendō	audiendō

a. The gerund of **capiō** is declined like the gerund of **audiō**.

553. (1) The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with an adjective or a noun. With the ablative **causā** it expresses purpose.

Cupidus bellandī, *desirous of engaging in war.*

Resistendī causā, *for the sake (purpose) of resisting.*

(2) The dative of the gerund is little used.

(3) The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition **ad** to express purpose.

Ad oppugnandum, *for attacking, to attack.*

(4) The ablative may be used to express means or cause, or as the object of the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, **ex**, or **in**.

pugnandō, *by fighting.*

in quaerendō, *on inquiring.*

a. The gerund when used as the object of a preposition cannot have an object. For expressions of this kind the Latin employs a different construction.



VIEW OF MODERN ROME FROM THE CAPITOLINE HILL

554.

VOCABULARY

accēdō, -ere, accessi, accessum, accessus (usually with *ad* and the accusative)

Ambiānī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Ambiani, a tribe of Gaul

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, engage in war, carry on war

Bellovacī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Bellovaci, a tribe of Gaul

cohors, cohortis, F., cohort, one of the ten divisions of the legion

cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond of

pandō, -ere, pandī, passum, hold out

parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum, spare (with dative)

EXERCISES

555. 1. Ariovistus cupidus bellandī erat. 2. Spem amīcōs videndī nōn habēbam. 3. Pācem petendī causā vērunt. 4. Ad hoc oppidum cum cohortibus accēdet. 5. Omnia ad proficiscendum parāvērunt. 6. In quaerendō Caesar reperit arma trādita esse.

SURRENDER OF THE BELLOVACI

Obsidibus acceptis Caesar eis pepercit et in fines Bellovacorum profectus est. Cum ad oppidum eorum accessisset, pueri feminaeque ex muro manus pandērunt, et pacem implorāvērunt. Pro his Diviciacus Haeduus locutus est. Caesar eis quoque pepercit sed magnum numerum obsidum poposcit. His datis et armis traditis ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervēnit qui se sine morā dēdērunt.

556. 1. They have hope of capturing the city. 2. The enemy prepared everything for making an attack (for attacking). 3. I have this army for the purpose of carrying on war. 4. The Belgians preferred to return home. 5. You cannot help your friend by pleading (**implorāre**). 6. Caesar protected the Bellovaci because he thought this was best (to do).

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Point out the gerunds in sentences 1-6, 555. (2) Give the gerunds of **habeō** and **moror**. (3) Give the past infinitives, active and passive, of **dēdō**. (4) Explain the case of **obsidibus** and of **eis**, line 5. 555. (5) Give the principal parts of **patior** and of **pandō**.

LESSON XCV

THE GERUNDIVE: ORDINAL NUMERALS

557. The future passive participle of a transitive verb is often used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in phrases which are equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.¹

Spēs urbis capiendae. The meaning is the same as **Spēs urbem capiendī**, *hope of capturing the city.*

The future passive participle when thus used is called the Gerundive. The gerundive may be used in either number and in any case to agree with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

a. Since the gerund cannot stand as the object of a preposition and at the same time govern an object, gerundive phrases are frequently used with the forms of transitive verbs. The English translation of such phrases is the same as if the gerundive were a gerund having as its object the word with which the gerundive agrees.

b. The case uses of the gerundive construction are in general the same as those of the gerund.

Cupidus oppidī expugnandī, *desirous of storming the town.*

Auxilī ferendī causā, *for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid.*

Ad eas rēs cōficiendās, *for accomplishing these things.*

Dē auxiliō mittendō, *about (concerning) sending aid.*

Lapidibus portandīs, *by carrying stones.*

¹ The gerundive construction was not a substitute for the gerund in the thought of the Romans, but was probably the usage from which the gerund was derived.

558. The following distinctions between the gerund and gerundive are to be observed:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
A noun	A participle
Active in meaning	Passive
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers

ORDINAL NUMERALS

559. The first twenty ordinals are as follows:

prīmus, <i>first</i>	ūndecimus, <i>eleventh</i>
secundus, <i>second</i>	duodecimus, <i>twelfth</i>
tertius, <i>third</i>	tertius decimus, <i>thirteenth</i>
quārtus, <i>fourth</i>	quārtus decimus, <i>fourteenth</i>
quīntus, <i>fifth</i>	quīntus decimus, <i>fifteenth</i>
sextus, <i>sixth</i>	sextus decimus, <i>sixteenth</i>
septimus, <i>seventh</i>	septimus decimus, <i>seventeenth</i>
octāvus, <i>eighth</i>	duodēvicēsīmus, <i>eighteenth</i>
nōnus, <i>ninth</i>	ūndēvicēsīmus, <i>nineteenth</i>
decimus, <i>tenth</i>	vicēsīmus, <i>twentieth</i>

a. The ordinals are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Compound ordinals, such as **tertius decimus**, have both parts declined.

560.

VOCABULARY

accidō, -ere, accidī, happen
experior, -irī, expertus sum,
 try
Nerviī, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Nervii, a tribe of Belgians
plēnus, -a, -um, full

Sabis, Sabis, m., the Sambre,
a river of Gaul
tempestās, -tātis, f., storm,
 tempest
ūnā, adv., together, at the
 same time

EXERCISES

561. 1. Hostēs quī trāns flūmen cōnsēdērunt spem oppidī capiendī habent. 2. Ad eās rēs cōficiendās Orgetorīx dēlēctus est. 3. Lapidibus iaciendīs multōs vulnerāvērunt. 4. Pācis petendae causā lēgātōs mīsī. 5. Accidit ut lūna plēna esset. 6. Tempestātēs tantae erant ut proficīscī nōn possēmus.

THE NERVII PREPARE FOR WAR

Proximī hīs erant Nervīi quī maximē ferī inter eōs exīstīmābantur. Hī trāns Sabim cōnsēderant ibique adventum Rōmānōrum exspectābant. Unā cum hīs erant duae gentēs finitimae quae eandem fortūnam bellī experīri volēbant. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar centuriōnēs explōrātōrēsque praemisit quī locum castrīs (196) dēligerent.

562. 1. The cohort was left in the town for the purpose of defending the townspeople. 2. We shall send a legion to capture the town (*ad with gerundive phrase*). 3. By throwing stones we drove back the enemy who were crossing the river. 4. Orgetorix will be chosen to accomplish these things. 5. The Nervii set out that they might try the fortune of war.

SUGGESTED DRILL

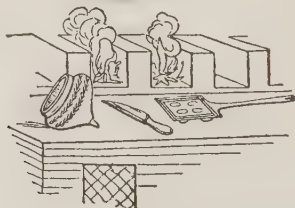
(1) Point out the gerundives in 561. (2) Give the gerunds of *capiō*. (3) State whether *capiendī* in sentence 1, 561, is a gerund or a gerundive, and give proof. (4) Give a synopsis of *iaciō* in the third person plural. (5) Conjugate *possum* in the imperfect indicative and the imperfect subjunctive.

NINETEENTH REVIEW LESSON

563. (1) The conjugation of *fiō*.
(2) The conjugation of *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.
(3) Future passive participles.
(4) The supine.
(5) The gerund.
(6) The gerundive.
(7) The genitive of material.
(8) The genitive with verbs of remembering and forgetting.
(9) The dative of agent.
(10) **cum** descriptive clauses.
(11) **cum** causal clauses.
(12) **cum** adversative clauses.
(13) Clauses of fear.

564. Give Latin words with which the following English words are connected in derivation:

accession	fortune	reminiscence
accident	incredible	second
conservation	moratorium	solar
cupidity	oblivion	subsequent
egress	opinion	tempest
experiment	pristine	vigil



ROMAN KITCHEN RANGE

LESSON XCVI

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES: NEGATIVE COMMANDS

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES

565. The Latin verb has four participles, the present active, the past passive, and the future, active and passive.

PRESENT		PAST		FUTURE	
ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
portāns	—	—	portātus	portātūrus	portandus
monēns	—	—	monitus	monitūrus	monendus
dūcēns	—	—	ductus	ductūrus	dūcendus
capiēns	—	—	captus	captūrus	capiendus
audiēns	—	—	audītus	audītūrus	audiendus

a. In English there is a present passive participle, *being carried*, etc., and a past active participle, *having carried*, etc. These two participles are lacking in the Latin verb.

b. Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs: *cōnāns*, *cōnātus*, *cōnātūrus*, *cōnandus*, etc. The past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning, but sometimes it is passive. The sense of the sentence in which the participle stands will make it possible to decide in which voice it is used.

c. The present participle is declined as an adjective of the third declension: *portāns*, *portantis*, etc. The other participles are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions: *portātus*, *-a*, *-um*, etc.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

566. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are frequently expressed by the imperative of *nōlō* (*nōlī*, *nōlīte*), followed by the infinitive of the verb expressing the act forbidden: *Nōlī eum iuvāre*, *do not help him*.

567.

VOCABULARY

efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectum,	lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, remain
bring about	concealed
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, put to	nesciō, -īre, -īvī, not know
flight, rout	silvestris, -tre, wooded, forest
expeditus, -a, -um, unim-	covered
peded, ready for action	vergō, -ere, slope

EXERCISES

568. 1. Belgae crēdidērunt Rōmānōs in Galliā remanēre quod eam regiōnem in servitūtem redigere vellent. 2. Nōlī huic puerō pecūniam dare. 3. Nesciō ubi castra posita sint. 4. Hostēs, flūmen trānsīre cōnātī, fugātī sunt. 5. Nōlī exercitum in perīculum dūcere. 6. Haec rēs effēcīt ut Germānī discēdere nōllent. 7. Nōlīte hostium impetum timēre.

POSITION OF THE ARMIES

Locum castrīs dēlēgērunt in colle quī ad flūmen Sabim vergēbat. Trāns id flūmen alter collis erat cuius pars magna erat silvestris. In hīs silvīs hostēs latēbant. Altitūdō flūminis nōn magna erat. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequitur omnibus cōpiīs. Quod hostibus appropinquābat duās legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat.

569. 1. We shall find out who is in the town. 2. The boy said that his brother who had been in the war had been wounded. 3. The Romans did not know in what place the Nervii were lurking. 4. Having promised aid, we returned to Gaul. 5. Do not receive money from this man.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Name a Latin noun with which **servitūs** is connected in derivation. (2) Give the noun from which **silvestris** is derived. (3) Give an English word which is connected in derivation with **pecūnia**. (4) Explain the mood of **vellent** in sentence 1, 568. (5) Explain the mood of **sint** in sentence 3, 568. (6) Give the principal parts of **dō, crēdō, dēdō, and trādō**.

LESSON XCVII

CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS: NON-COMMITTAL
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

570. A conditional sentence is a complex sentence, the subordinate clause of which is introduced by *if*. The subordinate clause is called the Condition, the main clause is called the Conclusion.

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES¹

571. In Latin, a conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false regularly has both verbs in the indicative.

Sī puer domī est, māter laeta est, *if the boy is at home, his mother is glad.*

Sī hostēs flūmen trānsiērunt, nostrī pontem nōn dēfendērunt, *if the enemy have crossed the river, our men did not defend the bridge.*

a. Sometimes an imperative or a subjunctive of desire is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this kind instead of an indicative.

Sī pācem cupitis, arma trādite, *if you desire peace, surrender your arms.*

b. A non-committal conditional sentence referring to future time is commonly called a Future More Vivid conditional sentence. The verb of its conditional clause is usually translated by an English present tense, but the Latin sentence has the verb of the condition as well as of the conclusion in the future or future perfect.

¹ Conditional sentences of this type are sometimes called *neutral conditional sentences*.

572.

VOCABULARY

claudō, -ere, clausi, clausum,	prōvolō, -āre, -āvi, rush forth,
close	fly forth
nisi, <i>conj.</i> , if not, unless	subitō, <i>adv.</i> , suddenly
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum,	trānsgridior, -gredi, -gressus
rout, put to flight	sum, cross

EXERCISES

573. 1. Sī hostēs in silvā latent, periculum est. 2. Sī Gallī flūmen trānsgridiuntur, periculum nostrum magnum est. 3. Peditēs ad proelium committendum prōcessērunt. 4. Equitātus proelī committendī causā praemissus est. 5. Sī omnēs legiōnēs in castrīs sunt, portās claudite. 6. Nisi peditēs pervenient, hostēs flūmen trānsgridientur.

BEGINNING OF THE BATTLE

Equitēs Rōmānī flūmen trānsgressī cum equitātū hostium proelium commīsērunt. Hostēs ad silvās sē recēpērunt ac rūsus ex silvīs in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Interim sex legiōnēs quae vēnerant castra mūnīre coepērunt. Tum hostēs quī in silvīs latēbant subitō prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs pulsīs flūmen trānsiērunt et incrēdibilī celeritātē ad castra contendērunt.

574. 1. If the cavalry are crossing the river, the enemy do not see them. 2. The legion set out for the purpose of burning the town. 3. Caesar did not think the enemy would cross the river. 4. If the enemy are collecting an army, they wish to wage war. 5. We do not know in what place the Belgians are lurking.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the meaning and the derivation of the English words *latent* and *transgress*. (2) Give the rules for the use of moods and tenses in indirect discourse. (3) State what the difference is between the English and the Latin usage in regard to conjunctions introducing indirect discourse. (4) Give the method of expressing negative commands. (5) Give the past and future infinitives of **trānsgridior**.

LESSON XCVIII

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT:
REVIEW OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, CONTRARY TO FACT

575. A conditional sentence which implies by its form that the condition is not true and that the actual situation is not that which is referred to in the conclusion is called a conditional sentence Contrary to Fact.

If he had seen the danger, he would have avoided it (implying that he did not see the danger and that he did not avoid it).

576. In Latin, a conditional sentence contrary to fact has its verbs in the imperfect or the past perfect subjunctive; the imperfect to express present time, and the past perfect to express past time.

Sī fortēs milītēs habērēmus, in periculō nōn essēmus,
if we had brave soldiers, we should not be in danger.

Sī fortēs milītēs habuissēmus, in periculō nōn fuissēmus,
if we had had brave soldiers, we should not have been in danger.

REVIEW OF CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

577. The following prepositions used in this book always have their objects in the ablative case: **ā** (ab), **dē**, **ē** (ex), **cum**, **prō**, **sine**.

In phrases denoting the place toward which motion is directed, **in** and **sub** have their objects in the accusative case; in phrases denoting the place in which something exists or some act is done, they have their objects in the ablative case.

All other prepositions used in this book have their objects in the accusative case.

578.

VOCABULARY

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, drive. do, carry on	necessitās, -tātis, f., necessity. urgency
exercitātus, -a, -um, trained	ratio, ratiōnis, f., theory, reason
incursus, -ūs, m., attack	superior, superius, compar. adj., higher, preceding, previous
militāris, -e, military; rēs militāris, military science, warfare	



VIEW ON THE APPIAN WAY

EXERCISES

579. 1. Si hostēs in silvā latērent, periculum esset. 2. Si peditēs sē recēpissent, castra capta essent. 3. Si omnēs legiōnēs in castris essent, nōn timērēmus. 4. Si lēgāti Caesaris imperia expectāvissent, exercitus repulsus esset. 5. Hic locus militibus dēfendendus est.

ROMAN DISCIPLINE

Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore agenda erant. Incursus hostium magnam partem eārum rērum impediēbat quās ratiō rei militāris postulābat. Militēs autem superiōribus proeliis exercitātī fuerant, et lēgātī quī legiōnibus praeerant imperium Caesaris nōn exspectāvērunt. Itaque exercitus instrūctus est magis ut (*as*) necessitās temporis (postulābat) quam ut ratiō rei militāris postulābat.

580. 1. If the soldiers had fortified the camp, the enemy would not have made an attack. 2. If the soldier had set out from the camp, he would have been captured. 3. If the enemy were not laying waste our fields, we should not be asking aid of (from) the Romans. 4. If you are brave soldiers, defend the camp. 5. If the man were not lazy, he would be working today.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Name the class of conditional sentences to which sentences 1, 2, and 3, 579, belong. (2) Point out the verb of the conclusion in each of these three sentences. (3) Explain the use of the tenses of the verbs in sentence 3, 579. (4) Explain the case of *militibus* in sentence 5 and of *Caesarī*, line 6, 579.

LESSON XCIX

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: *ISTE*

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

581. A conditional sentence which implies doubt on the part of the speaker or writer as to the fulfillment of the condition, and which has as its conclusion a verb denoting an act as conceivable or imaginable, is called a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence. Its verbs stand in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

Sī hosten videat, fugiat, if he should see the enemy, he would flee.

a. The perfect is used in the place of the present when the completion of the act is prominent in thought.

b. The verbs of a future more vivid conditional sentence are translated with the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*, or (in the condition) by the present tense. The verbs of a future less vivid conditional sentence are translated with *should* and *would*.

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ISTE*

582. Besides *hic*, *ille*, and *is*, there is another demonstrative, *iste*, translated *that of yours*, or simply *that*. It is less frequently used than the others and commonly refers to something associated with the person addressed. It is declined like *ille*.

<i>iste</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
iste		ista	istud
istius		istius	istius, etc.

a. **Iste** is sometimes used to express contempt.

583.

VOCABULARY

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum, collect, compel	revertor, revertī, revertī, re- versum, return (<i>deponent</i> <i>in present system</i>)
duodecimus, -a, -um, twelfth	
nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, strip, leave unprotected	septimus, -a, -um, seventh spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hope

EXERCISES

584. 1. Istud dōnum parvum esse vidētur. 2. Sī amīcus meus essēs, nōn haec dīcerēs. 3. Tāntus erat numerus Germānōrum ut Gallī quī eam regiōnem incolēbant eīs resistere nōn possent. 4. Sī discessissent, Caesar eōs secūtus esset. 5. Magnae cōpiae coactae sunt quod hostēs appropinquābant. 6. Mīlitēs spērant lēgātum auxilium missūrum esse.¹

¹ Spērō is followed by indirect discourse.

THE NERVII IN THE ROMAN CAMP

Pars hostium ab Rōmānīs repulsa statim fūgit. Sed cum castra Rōmāna nūdāta essent, magnus nūmerus Nerviorum ad eum locum contendit. Eō tempore equitēs Rōmānī in castra sē recipiēbant, sed, hostibus vīsīs in castrīs, aliam in partem fugam petiērunt. Interim duodecima legiō et septima ab hostibus premēbantur.

585. 1. They fled so swiftly that the legion which had crossed the river did not make an attack. 2. Since the scouts who had been sent ahead had not seen the enemy, the soldiers did not fear danger. 3. If the town had been captured, many would have been killed. 4. If the legion should cross the river, the cavalry would flee.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Explain the mood of **possent** in sentence 3, 584. (2) State what form of conditional sentences is illustrated by 2 and 4, 584. (3) Conjugate **revertor** in the present indicative and the perfect indicative.

LESSON C

FUTURE IMPERATIVE: SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

586. The forms of the future imperative are found in the second and third persons. They are as follows:

ACTIVE				
SINGULAR				
2. portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	audītō
3. portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	audītō
PLURAL				
2. portātōte	monētōte	mittitōte	capitōte	audītōte
3. portantō	monentō	mittuntō	capiuntō	audiuntō

PASSIVE				
SINGULAR				
2. portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	auditor
3. portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	auditor
PLURAL				
2. [Lacking]	_____	_____	_____	_____
3. portantor	monentor	mittuntor	capuntor	audiuntor

a. The future imperative is used when there is a clear reference to future time indicated by an adverb or other expression of time. It is translated *thou shalt carry, he shall carry, or let him carry, etc.*

b. The verbs **meminī** and **sciō** regularly (and **habeō** occasionally) use the future imperative instead of the present.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

587. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

Ita ācritēr pugnāvērunt ut omnēs quī in proeliō essent vulnerārentur. *they fought so fiercely that all who were in the battle were wounded.*

588.

VOCABULARY

Atuatucī, -ōrum, <i>M. pl.</i> , the Atuatuci a Belgian tribe	hiberna, -ōrum, <i>N. pl.</i> , winter quarters, winter camp
cohortor, -ārī, -ātus <i>sum</i> , urge, encourage	rōbur, -ōris, <i>M.</i> , oak, strength
dīmittō, -ere, dīmīsī, dīmīs- sum, send away, dismiss	supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be left, survive
paulum, <i>adv.</i> , a little	tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, hinder, check

EXERCISES

589. 1. Mementōte hanc patriam meam esse. 2. Scītō me amicum eius hominis semper fuisse. 3. Galli tempestates non timebant quod naves eorum ex rōbre factae sunt. 4. Equites dimissi sunt sed legiōēs in hibernis manent. 5. Signum datum est ut ei qui profecti essent reverterentur.

END OF THE BATTLE

Tum Caesar scītum cōpit et ipse in prīmam aciem prōcessit. Centuriōēs militesque cohortatus est. Eius adventus spem militibus intulit et impetus hostium paulum tardātus est. Eodem tempore Labienus, qui advēnerat, auxilium mīsīt et omnēs hostes fugāti sunt. Postea ei qui supererant sē dēdiderunt. Eo bellō cōfectō Atuatuē qui socii Nerviorum fuerant Caesari resistere cōnāti sunt. Sed oppidum eorum captum est et paene omnēs servi facti sunt. Tum Caesar legiōēs in hibernis reliquit atque in Italiam profectus est.

590. 1. They came to the camp because they wished to beg for peace. 2. We sent them away because we did not trust them (*dative*). 3. Remember that your fathers were brave men. 4. Be assured (know) that the danger is not great.

SUGGESTED DRILL

(1) Conjugate **supersum** in the present and the imperfect subjunctive. (2) Mention two other compounds of **sum**. (3) Give the rule for the use of tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. (4) Give the future imperatives of **probō**, **videō**, and **mūniō**. (5) Give all the imperatives, present and future, of **laudō**.

TWENTIETH REVIEW LESSON

591.

VOCABULARY REVIEW

agmen, agminis, N.
 cohors, cohortis, F.
 incursus, -ūs, M.
 necessitās, -tātis, F.
 opīniō, -ōnis, F.
 ratiō, -ōnis, F.
 rōbur, rōboris, N.
 sōl, sōlis, M.
 tempestās, -tātis, F.
 vigilia, -ae, F.
 cupidus, -a, -um
 exercitātus, -a, -um
 incredibilis, -e
 mīlītāris, -e
 plēnus, -a, -um
 prīstinus, -a, -um
 secundus, -a, -um
 silvestris, -e
 superior, superius
 cotīdiē
 paulum
 subitō
 umquam
 ūnā
 nisi

accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessum
 accidō, -ere, accidī
 agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
 attribuō, -ere, attribui, attribūtum
 claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum
 cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum
 cohortor, -ārī, cohortātus sum
 cōnsīdō, -ere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum
 efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum
 ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum
 lateō, -ēre, -uī
 mālō, mālle, mālui
 meminī, meminisse
 moror, -ārī, morātus sum
 nesciō, -scīre, -scīvī
 oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus sum
 parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsum
 pandō, -ere, pandī, passum
 pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum
 reminīscor, reminīscī
 spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum
 supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus
 trānsgrēdior, -gredī, -gressus sum
 vergō, vergere

592.

RELATED ENGLISH WORDS

act	expedite	retard
agent	latent	revert
close	necessity	superior
cogent	nude	transgress
efficient	rational	verge

TWELFTH SUPPLEMENTARY REVIEW

VOCABULARY REVIEW

1. adsum, adesse, adfuī
2. agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum
3. amplē, *adv.*
4. amplus, -a, -um
5. bene, *adv.*
6. certus, -a, -um
7. claudō, -ere, clausī,
clausum
8. cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum
9. cohors, cohortis, F
10. cōservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
11. cōsistō, -sistere, -stitī
12. crēber, -bra, -brum
13. cupidus, -a, -um
14. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
-fectum
15. dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī,
-stitutum
16. dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
17. difficultās, -tātis, F.
18. dignitās, -tātis, F.
19. dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī,
-missum
20. enim, *conj. (postpositive)*
21. ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī,
-reptum
22. exitus, -ūs, M.
23. fortūna, -ae, F.
24. factum, -ī, N.
25. frūmentārius, -a, -um
26. gravis, -e
27. iam, *adv.*
28. intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī,
-missum
29. libertās, -tātis, F.
30. militāris, -e
31. nōtus, -a, -um
32. ob, *prep. with acc.*
33. ōrdō, -dinis, M.
34. pecūnia, -ae, F.
35. pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum
36. plēnus, -a, -um
37. praecipio, -cipere, -cēpī,
-ceptum
38. prae-ficio, -ficere, -fēcī,
-fectum
39. primus . . . decimus
40. propinquus, -a, -um
41. prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī,
-positum
42. ratiō, -ōnis, F.
43. redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum
44. reficio, -ficere, -fēcī,
-fectum
45. rēgīna, -ae, F.
46. rēs frūmentāria
47. rēs militāris
48. servitūs, -tūtis, F.
49. spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
50. tālis, -e

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. be near, be present | 25. pertaining to grain |
| 2. drive, do | 26. heavy, serious |
| 3. fully | 27. by this time, already |
| 4. large, distinguished | 28. interrupt, discontinue |
| 5. well | 29. freedom |
| 6. fixed, certain | 30. military |
| 7. close, confine | 31. known |
| 8. drive together, collect,
compel | 32. on account of |
| 9. cohort | 33. rank, class |
| 10. save fully, preserve | 34. money |
| 11. take one's place, stop | 35. drive, defeat |
| 12. frequent, thick | 36. full |
| 13. desirous, eager | 37. order, instruct, advise |
| 14. fail, revolt, rebel | 38. put in charge of |
| 15. desist from, cease | 39. first . . . tenth |
| 16. lose hope, despair | 40. near; <i>as noun</i> , a relative |
| 17. difficulty | 41. put before, propose |
| 18. worth, position | 42. account, theory, manner |
| 19. send away | 43. drive back, reduce, render |
| 20. for | 44. repair |
| 21. snatch away | 45. queen |
| 22. a going forth, outcome,
departure | 46. grain supplies |
| 23. fortune, wealth | 47. military affairs, art of war |
| 24. thing done, act, deed | 48. slavery |
| | 49. hope |
| | 50. such |

WORD STUDY

1. In the following phrases explain the meaning and origin of the italicized words:

A *cogent* reason

Conservation of national resources

A narrow *exit*

The *gravity* of the situation

A brief *intermission*

A *notorious* fact

The *expulsion* of the king

On account of *propinquity*

Ordinal numerals

A wise *precept*

EUTROPIUS' HISTORY OF ROME

(SELECTIONS)

BOOK ONE

Romulus and the Founding of Rome

Rōmānum imperium ā Rōmulō exōrdium habet, quī Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, fīlius et, quantum putātus est, Mārtis erat. Is decem et octō annōs nātus urbem exiguam in Palātīnō monte cōstituit, post Trōiae excidium annō trecentēsīmō nōnāgēsīmō quārtō.

5

Conditā cīvitatē, quam ex nōmine suō Rōmam vocāvit, haec ferē ēgit. Multitūdinem finitimōrum in cīvitatē recēpit, centum ex seniōribus lēgit, quōrum cōsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. Tum, cum uxōrēs ipse et populus suus nōn habērent, invitāvit ad spectāculum lūdōrum vicīnās urbī Rōmae nātiōnēs atque eārum virginēs rapuit. Commōtis bellīs propter raptārum iniūriam Caenīnēsēs vīcit, Antemnātēs, Crustumīnōs, Sabīnōs, Fidēnātēs, Vēientēs. Haec omnia oppida urbem cingunt. Et cum ortā subitō tempestāte nōn com- 15 pāruisset, annō rēgnī tricēsīmō septimō ad deōs trānsisse crēditus est et cōsecrātus. Deinde Rōmae per quīnōs diēs senātōrēs imperāvērunt et hīs rēgnantibus annus ūnus complētus est.

Numa, the Peaceful King

Posteā Numa Pompilius rēx creātus est, quī bellum 20 quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitatī quam Rōmulus prōfuit. Nam et lēgēs Rōmānīs mōrēsque cōstituit, quī cōsuētūdine proeliōrum iam latrōnēs ac

sēmibarbarī putābantur, et annum dēscripsit in decem mēnsēs prius sine aliquā supputātiōne cōnfūsum, et infīnīta Rōmae sacra ac templa cōstituit. Morbō dēcessit quadrāgēsīmō et tertiō imperiī annō.

Tullus Hostilius, the Warrior

5 Huic successit Tullus Hostilius. Hic bella reparāvit, Albānōs vīcit, quī ab urbe Rōmā duodecimō mīliārīō sunt, Vēientēs et Fīdēnātēs, quōrum aliī sextō mīliārīō absunt ab urbe Rōmā, aliī octāvō decimō, bellō superāvit, urbem ampliāvit adiectō Caeliō monte. Cum trīgintā et duōs
10 annōs rēgnāsset, fulmine ietus cum domō suā ārsit.

Ancus Marcius. Expansion of Roman Power

Post hunc Ancus Mārcius, Numae ex filiā nepōs, suscepit imperium. Contrā Latīnōs dīmīcāvit, Aventīnum montem cīvitātī adiēcīt et Iāniculum, apud ōstium Tiberis cīvitātem suprā mare sextō decimō mīliārīō ab urbe Rōmā
15 condidit. Vīcēsīmō et quārtō annō imperiī morbō periit.

Tarquin the Elder. Development of the City

Deinde rēgnum Prīscus Tarquinius accēpit. Hic numerum senātōrum duplicāvit, circum Rōmae aedificāvit, lūdōs Rōmānōs īstituit, quī ad nostram memoriā permanent. Vīcit īdem etiam Sabīnōs et nōn parum agrōrum
20 sublātum īsdem urbis Rōmae territōriō iūnxīt, prīmusque triumphāns urbem intrāvit. Mūrōs fēcīt et cloācās, Capitōlium inchoāvit. Trīcēsīmō octāvō imperiī annō per Ancī filiōs occīsus est, rēgis eius, cui ipse successerat.

Servius Tullius. Further Expansion

Post hunc Servius Tullius suscepit imperium, genitus ex
25 nōbili fēminā, captīvā tamen et ancillā. Hic quoque Sabīnōs subēgit, montēs trēs, Quirīnālem, Vīminālem,

Ēsquilīnum, urbī adiūnxit, fossās circum mūrū dūxit. Prīmus omnium cēsum ordināvit, quī adhūc per orbem terrarū incognitus erat. Sub eō Rōma omnibus in cēsum dēlātis habuit capita LXXXIII mīlia cīvium Rōmānōrum cum hīs, quī in agrīs erant. Occīsus est scelere generī suī Tarquinī Superbī, filiī eius rēgis, cui ipse successerat, et filiae, quam Tarquinius habēbat uxōrem.

Tarquin the Proud. End of the Kings

L. Tarquinius Superbus, septimus atque ultimus rēgum, Volscōs, quae gēns ad Campāniam euntibus nōn longē ab urbe est, vīcit, Gabiōs cīvitatē et Suessam Pōmētiam subēgit, cum Tuscīs pācem fēcit et templum Iovī in Capitoliō aedificāvit. Postea Ardeam oppugnāns, in octāvō decimō mīliārīō ab urbe Rōmā positam cīvitatē, imperium perdidit. Cumque imperāssset annōs quattuor et vīgintī cum uxōre et liberīs suis fūgit. Ita Rōmae rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs annīs ducentīs quadrāgintā tribus, cum adhūc Rōma, ubi plūrimū, vix usque ad quīntum decimū mīliārīum possidēret.

Beginning of the Republic

Hinc cōsulēs coepēre, prō ūnō rēge duo, hāc causā creatī, ut, sī ūnus malus esse voluisset, alter eum habēns potestātē similem coērceret. Et placuit nē imperium longius quam annuum habērent, nē per diūturnitātē potestātis insolentiōrēs redderentur, sed cīvīlēs semper essent, quī sē post annum scīrent futūrōs esse prīvātōs. Fuērunt igitur annō primō ab expulsīs rēgibus cōsulēs L. Iūnius Brūtus, quī maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pelleretur, et Tarquinius Collātīnus, marītus Lucrētiae. Sed Tarquiniō Collātīnō statim sublāta est dignitās. Placuerat enim, nē quisquam in urbe maneret, quī Tarquinius vocārētur. Ergō acceptō omnī patrimōniō suō ex urbe migrāvit et locō ipsius factus est L. Valerius Pūblicola cōsul.

Wars of the Early Republic

Commōvit tamen bellum urbī Rōmae rēx Tarquinius, quī fuerat expulsus, et collēctīs multīs gentibus, ut in rēgnum posset restitui, dīmīcāvit. In primā pugnā Brūtus cōnsul et Arrūns, Tarquinī filius in vicem sē occīdērunt, 5 Rōmānī tamen ex eā pugnā victōrēs recessērunt. Brūtum mātērōnae Rōmānae, dēfēnsōrem pudicitiae suae, quasi commūnem patrem per annum lūxērunt. Valerius Pūb-licola Sp. Lucrētium Tricipitīnum collēgam sibi fēcīt, Lucrētiaē patrem, quō morbō mortuō iterum Horātium 10 Pulvillum collēgam sibi sūmpsīt. Ita primus annus quīn-que cōsulēs habuit, cum Tarquinius Collātīnus propter nōmen urbe cessisset, Brūtus in proeliō perīssēt, Sp. Lucrētīus morbō mortuus esset.

Secundō quoque annō iterum Tarquinius ut reciperētur 15 in rēgnum bellum Rōmānīs intulit, auxilium eī ferente Porsennā, Tusciae rēge, et Rōmam paene cēpit. Vērū-
tum quoque victus est.

Tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs Tarquinius cum suscipī nōn posset in rēgnum neque eī Porsenna, quī pācem cum 20 Rōmānīs fēcērat, praestāret auxilium, Tusculum sē con-
tulit, quae cīvītās nōn longē ab urbe est, atque ibi per quattuordecim annōs prīvātus cum uxōre cōsensuit.

Quārtō annō post rēgēs exāctōs cum Sabīnī Rōmānīs bellum intulissent, victī sunt, et dē hīs triumphātum est.

Death of Brutus. The Dictatorship

25 Quīntō annō L. Valerius ille, Brūtī collēga et quater cōnsul, fātālīter mortuus est, adeō pauper, ut collātīs ā populō nummīs sūmptum habuerit sepultūrae. Quem mātērōnae sicutī Brūtum annum lūxērunt.

Nōnō annō post rēgēs exāctōs cum gener Tarquinī ad 30 iniūriam socerī vindicandam ingentem collēgisset exer-
citum, nova Rōmae dignitās est creāta, quae dictātūra
appellātur, maior quam cōsulātus. Eōdem annō etiam

magister equitum factus est, quī dictātōrī obsequerētur. Dictātōr autem Rōmae prīmus fuit T. Larcus, magister equitum prīmus Sp. Cassius.

The Establishment of the Tribune

Sextō decimō annō post rēgēs exāctōs sēditionem populus Rōmae fēcit, tamquam ā senātū atque cōsulibus premerētur. Tum et ipse sibi tribūnōs plēbis quasi propriōs iūdicēs et dēfēnsōrēs creāvit, per quōs contrā senātum et cōsulēs tūtus esse posset.

War with the Volscians

Sequentī annō Volscī contrā Rōmānōs bellum reparāvērunt, et victī aciē etiam Coriolōs cīvitātem, quam habebant optimam, perdidērunt.

Octāvō decimō annō postquam rēgēs ēiectī erant, expulsus ex urbe Q. Mārcius, dux Rōmānus, quī Coriolōs cēperat, Volscōrum cīvitātem, ad ipsōs Volscōs contendit irātus et auxilia contrā Rōmānōs accēpit. Rōmānōs saepe vīcit, usque ad quīntum miliārium urbis accessit, oppugnātūrus etiam patriam suam, lēgātīs, quī pācem petēbant, repudiātīs, nisi ad eum māter Veturia et uxor Volumnia ex urbe vēnissent, quārum flētū et dēprecātiōne superātus remōvit exercitum. Atque hic secundus post Tarquīnium fuit, quī dux contrā patriam suam esset.

The Fabii and the War with Veii

C. Fabiō et L. Virgīniō cōsulibus trecentī nōbilēs hominēs, quī ex Fabiā familiā erant, contrā Vēientēs bellum sōlī suscepērunt, prōmittentēs senātui et populō per sē omne certāmen implendum. Itaque profectī, omnēs nōbilēs et quī singulī magnōrum exercituum ducēs esse dēbērent, in proeliō concidērunt. Ūnus omnīnō superfuit ex tantā familiā, quī propter aetātem puerilem dūcī nōn potuerat ad pugnam. Post haec cēnsus in urbe

habitus est et inventa sunt cīvium capita cxvii milia CCCXIX.

Cincinnatus Made Dictator

Sequentī tamen annō cum in Algidō monte ab urbe duodecimō fermē miliārīō Rōmānus obsidērētur exercitus, L.
 5 Quīntius Cincinnātus dictātor est factus, quī agrum quattuor iugerum possidēns manibus suis colēbat. Is cum in opere et arāns esset inventus, sūdōre dētersō togam praetextam accēpit et caesis hostibus liberāvit exercitum.

Wars with Fidenae and Veii

Annō trecentēsīmō et quīntō decimō ab urbe conditā
 10 Fīdēnātēs contrā Rōmānōs rebellāvērunt. Auxilium hīs praestābant Vēientēs et rēx Vēientium Tolumnius. Quae ambae civitatēs tam vicīnae urbī sunt, ut Fīdēnae sextō, Vēi octāvō decimō miliārīō absint. Coniūnxērunt sē hīs et Volscī. Sed Mam. Aemiliō dictātōre et L. Quīntiō Cinnātō magistrō equitum victī etiam rēgem perdidērunt.
 15 Fīdēnae captae et excīsae.

Post vīgintī deinde annōs Vēientānī rebellāvērunt. Dictātor contrā ipsōs missus est Fūrius Camillus, quī prīmum eōs vīcit aciē, mox etiam cīvitātem diū obsidēns cēpit,
 20 antīquissimam Itāliae atque dītissimam. Post eam cēpit et Faliscōs, nōn minus nōbilem cīvitātem. Sed commōta est eī invidia, quasi praedam male dīvisisset, damnātusque ob eam causam et expulsus cīvitāte.

Capture of Rome by the Gauls

Statim Gallī Senonēs ad urbem vērunt et victōs Rōmā-
 25 nōs ūndecimō miliārīō ā Rōmā apud flūmen Alliam secūtī etiam urbem occupāvērunt. Neque dēfendī quicquam nisi Capitōlium potuit; quod cum diū obsēdissent et iam Rōmānī famē laborārent, acceptō aurō, nē Capitōlium obsiderent, recessērunt. Sed ā Camillō, quī in vicīnā cīvitāte

exulābat, Gallīs superventum est gravissimēque victī sunt. Postea tamen etiam secūtus eōs Camillus ita cecidit, ut et aurum, quod hīs datum fuerat, et omnia, quae cēperant, militāria signa revocāret. Ita tertiō triumphāns urbem ingressus est et appellātus secundus Rōmulus, quasi et ipse patriae conditor.

BOOK SIX

(Chapters 17-25)

Caesar's Wars in Gaul

Annō urbis conditae sexcentēsimo nōnāgēsimo tertiō C. Iūlius Caesar, quī postea imperāvit, cum L. Bibulō cōsul est factus. Dēcrēta est ei Gallia et Illyricum cum legiōnibus decem. Is prīmus vicit Helvētiōs, quī nunc 10 Sēquanī appellantur, deinde vincendō per bella gravissima usque ad Ōceanum Britannicum prōcessit. Domuit autem annīs novem ferē omnem Galliam, quae inter Alpēs, flūmen Rhodanum, Rhēnum et Ōceanum est et circuitū patet ad bis et trīciēs centēna milia passuum. Britannīs mox bellum 15 intulit, quibus ante eum nē nōmen quidem Rōmānōrum cognitum erat, eōsque victōs obsidibus acceptīs stīpendiārīos fēcit. Galliae autem tribūtī nōmine annum imperāvit stīpendium quadringentiēs, Germānōsque trāns Rhēnum adgressus inmānissimīs proeliīs vicit. Inter tot successūs 20 ter male pugnāvit, apud Arvernōs semel praesēns et absēns in Germāniā bis. Nam lēgātī eius duo, Titūrius et Aurunculēius, per insidiās caesī sunt.

Defeat of Crassus by the Parthians

Circā eadem tempora, annō urbis conditae sexcentēsimo nōnāgēsimo septimō, M. Licinius Crassus, collēga Cn. Pompei Magni in cōsulātū secundō, contrā Parthōs missus est et cum circā Carrās contrā ōmen et auspicia dīmīcasset, ā 25

Surēnā, Orōdis rēgis duce, victus ad postrēmum interfectus est cum filiō, clārissimō et praestantissimō iuvene. Reliquiae exercitūs per C. Cassium quaestōrem servātae sunt, quī singulārī animō perditās rēs tantā virtūte restituit, ut
 5 Persās rediēns trāns Euphrāten crēbris proeliis vinceret.

Beginning of the Civil War

Ilinc iam bellum cīvile successit exsecrandum et lacrimābile, quō praeter calamitatēs, quae in proeliis accidērunt, etiam populī Rōmānī fortūna mūtata est. Caesar enim rediēns ex Galliā victor coepit poscere alterum cōsulātum
 10 atque ita, ut sine dubietate aliquā eī dēferrētur. Contrādictum est ā Mārellō cōsule, ā Bibulō, ā Pompēiō, ā Catōne, iussusque dīmissis exercitibus ad urbem redire. Propter quam iniūriam ab Ariminō, ubi milītēs congregātōs habēbat, adversum patriam cum exercitū vēnit. Cōsulēs cum Pompēiō senātusque omnis atque ūniversa nōbilitās ex urbe fūgit et in Graeciam trānsiit. Apud Ēpīrum, Macedoniam, Achāiam Pompēiō duce senātus contrā Caesarem bellum parāvit.

The War in Spain and Greece

Caesar vacuum urbem ingressus dictātōrem sē fēcit. Inde
 20 Hispāniās petiit. Ibi Pompēi exercitūs validissimōs et fortissimōs cum tribus ducibus, L. Āfrāniō, M. Petrēiō, M. Varrōne, superāvit. Inde regressus in Graeciam trānsiit, adversum Pompēium dīmicāvit. Primō proeliō victus est et fugātus, ēvāsit tamen, quia nocte interveniente Pompēius sequī nōluit, dīxitque Caesar nec Pompēium scīre vincere et illō tantum diē sē potuisse superārī. Deinde in Thessaliā apud Palacopharsālum prōductis utrimque ingentibus cōpiis dīmicāvērunt. Pompēi aciēs habuit XL milia peditum, equitēs in sinistrō cornū sexcentōs, in dextrō
 30 quīngentōs, praetereā tōtius Orientis auxilia, tōtam nōbilitatem, innumerōs senātōrēs, praetōriōs, cōsulārēs et quī

magnōrum iam bellōrum victōrēs fuissent. Caesar in aciē suā habuit peditum nōn integra xxx milia, equitēs mille.

Pompey's Defeat and Death

Numquam adhūc Rōmānae cōpiae in ūnum neque maiōres neque meliōribus ducibus convēnerant, tōtum terrārum orbem facile subāctūrae, sī contrā barbarōs dūcerentur. Pugnātum tum est ingentī contentiōne, victusque ad postrēmum Pompēius et castra eius direpta sunt. Ipse fugātus Alexandriām petiit, ut ā rēge Aegyptī, cui tūtor ā senātū datus fuerat propter iuvenilem eius aetātem, acciperet auxilia. Quī fortūnam magis quam amīcitiam secūtus occidit Pompēium, caput eius et ānulum Caesarī mīsit. Quō cōnspectō Caesar etiam lacrimās fūdisse dicitur, tantī virī intuēns caput et generī quondam suī.

Caesar in Egypt and Asia Minor

Mox Caesar Alexandriām vēnit. Ipsī quoque Ptolemaeus parāre voluit insidiās, quā causā bellum rēgī inlātum est. Victus in Nīlō periit inventumque est eius corpus cum lōricā aureā. Caesar Alexandriā potītus rēgnum Cleopatrae dedit, Ptolemaei sorōrī. Rediēns inde Caesar Pharnacēn, Mithridātis Magnī filium, quī Pompēiō in auxilium apud Thessaliā fuerat, rebellantem in Pontō et multās populī Rōmānī prōvinciās occupantem vicit aciē, postea ad mortem coēgit.

Renewal of the War in Africa

Inde Rōmam regressus tertiō sē cōsulem fēcit cum M. Aemiliō Lepidō, quī ei magister equitum dictātōrī ante annum fuerat. Inde in Āfricā profectus est, ubi infīnita nobilitās cum Iubā, Mauritāniae rēge, bellum reparāverat. Ducēs autem Rōmānī erant P. Cornēlius Scīpiō ex genere antiquissimō Scīpiōnis Āfricānī (hic etiam socer Pompēi Magnī fuerat), M. Petrēius, Q. Vārus, M. Porcius Catō,

L. Cornēlius Faustus, Sullae dictātōris fīlius. Contrā hōs commissō proeliō post multās dīmiciātīōnēs victor fuit Caesar. Catō, Scīpiō, Petrēius, Iuba ipsī sē occīdērunt. Faustus, Sullae quondam dictātōris fīlius, Pompēi gener, ā
 5 Caesare interfectus est.

End of the Civil War

Post annum Caesar Rōmam regressus quārtō sē cōn-
 sulem fēcit et statim ad Hispāniās est profectus, ubi Pom-
 pēi fīlii, Cn. Pompēius et Sex. Pompēius, ingēns bellum
 praeparāverant. Multa proelia fuērunt, ultimum apud
 1 Mundam cīvitātem, in quō adeō Caesar paene victus est,
 ut fugientibus suis sē voluerit occīdere, nē post tantam
 rei militāris glōriam in potestātem adulēscēntium nātus
 annōs sex et quīnquāgintā venīret. Dēnique revocātis suis
 vīcit. Ex Pompēi fīliis maior occīsus est, minor fūgit.

Caesar the Ruler of Rome. His Death

15 Inde Caesar bellis cīvilibus tōtō orbe compositis Rōmam
 rediit. Agere insolentius coepit et contrā cōnsuētūdinem
 Rōmānae libertātis. Cum ergō et honōrēs ex suā voluntāte
 praestāret, quī ā populō antea dēferēbantur, nec senātui ad
 sē venientī adsurgeret aliaque rēgia ac paene tyrannica
 20 faceret, coniūrātum est in eum ā sexāgintā vel amplius
 senātōribus equitibusque Rōmānis. Praecipuī fuērunt
 inter coniūrātōs duo Brūtī ex eō genere Brūtī, quī prīmus
 Rōmae cōnsul fuerat et rēgēs expulerat, et C. Cassius et
 Servilius Casca. Ergō Caesar, cum senātūs diē inter
 25 cēterōs venisset ad cūriam, tribus et vīgintī vulneribus
 cōnfossus est.

NOTES

Eutropius was a Roman historian who wrote in the latter part of the fourth century A. D. His book, which was called *Breviarium ab Urbe Condita*, was a brief history of Rome from the founding of the city to the year 364 A. D.

Page 259, l. 1. *imperium, state* (literally *authority*).

quī Rhēae Silviae, etc., order for translation, *quī erat filius Rhēae Silviae, Vestālis virginis, et* (quantum putātus est) *Mārtis*.

2. *quantum putātus est, as it was believed* (literally, *as he was thought*).

3. *decem et octō annōs nātus, at the age of eighteen years* (literally, *having been born eighteen years*); *annōs* is accusative of duration of time.

4. *Palātīnō monte, the Palatine Hill*, one of the seven hills of Rome.

5. *annō trecentēsīmō, etc.*, according to the common legend Rome was founded in the year 753 B. C. Some authorities give 754.

6. *Condītā cīvitatē, after he had founded the city, when the city was founded* (literally *with the city founded*, ablative absolute).

7. *haec ferē ēgit, his further achievements were about as follows* (*he did about these things*).

8. *quōrum . . . ageret, by whose advice he should act in all matters* (*should do everything*); a relative clause of purpose.

10. *cum, since*.

uxōrēs, object of habērent.

12. *Commōtis bellis, when war broke out*, ablative absolute.

propter raptārum iniūriam, a genitive modifying the object of a preposition often stands between the preposition and the object.

14. *Sabīnōs*, in apposition with the three proper names preceding. The towns whose inhabitants are referred to were Sabine towns. The other two towns (*Fidenae* and *Veii*) were Etruscan towns.

15. *nōn compāruisset, had disappeared*.

17. *cōnsecrātus (est), was deified*.

Rōmae, locative case.

per quīnōs diēs, for five days each.

18. *his rēgnantibus*, *under their rule*.

21. *civitatī*, dative with *prōfuit*. Most compounds of *sum* take the dative.

22. *et*, correlative with *et* in line 1, p. 260, *both . . . and*. The first *et* may be omitted in translation.

Rōmānis, *for the Romans*, a dative of reference.

23. *cōsuētūdine proeliōrum*, *from their continual battles (from their custom of battles)*.

Page 260, l. 1. *in decem mēnsēs*, others say that Numa divided the year into twelve months.

2. *cōfūsum*, agrees with *annum*.

3. *Morbō dēcessit*, *died a natural death (died from illness)*; *morbō* is ablative of cause.

5. *Huic*, dative with a compound of *sub* (*successit*).

6. *duodecimō miliārīō*, *twelve miles (at the twelfth milestone)*. The form of expression in Caesar, Cicero, or any other writer of the best period would have been *duodecim milia* (or *milibus*) *passuum*.

7. *quōrum aliī . . . aliī*, translate as if *quōrum* referred to the names of the towns instead of to their inhabitants: *one of which . . . the other*. A Latin writer of the best period would use *alterī . . . alterī*.

9. *adiectō Caeliō monte*, *by adding the Caelian Hill*.

10. *rēgnāset*, contracted form of *rēgnāvisset*.

ārsit, *was consumed*; from *ārdeō*, *to burn*, in intransitive sense.

11. *Numae ex filiā nepōs*, *a grandson of Numa, the son of his daughter*.

suscēpit imperium, *succeeded to the throne*.

13. *Iāniculum*, part of the object of *adiēcit*. The Janiculum is on the opposite side of the Tiber from the other hills and is not usually reckoned as one of the seven hills.

apud ōstium, the conjunction *et* is understood before *apud*, and also before *Aventinum* in line 12. Conjunctions are omitted more freely in Latin than in English.

14. *civitātem*, the name of the city was Ostia. It was the seaport of Rome.

suprā mare, *on the sea*.

17. *circum* (noun), the Circus Maximus, an enclosure between the Palatine and the Aventine hills, for races and other sports.

18. *lūdōs Rōmānōs*, this was a particular celebration occurring in September of each year.

19. *idem*, translate simply *he* (subject of *vīcit*). It is sometimes difficult to indicate in English the exact emphasis given by this word.

nōn parum agrōrum, a large area of their country (not a little of their land); the phrase is object of **iūnxit**. The word **parum**, which is sometimes an adverb, is here a noun.

20. **sublātum isdem . . . iūnxit**, he took from them (**isdem**) a large area of their country and annexed it to; **isdem** is a dative of reference used with a word of taking away.

sublātum, perfect participle of **tollō**, in agreement with **parum**. The participle is occasionally translated as here by a verb coordinate with the main verb of its sentence.

21. **triumphāns**, with a triumphal procession.

Mūrōs fēcit, this wall was known as the Servian Wall, and was commonly believed to have been built by the king who followed Tarquinius Priscus.

22. **per filiōs**. The accusative with **per** is here equivalent to the ablative of agent, **ā filiis**.

23. **rēgis eius**, in apposition with **Anci**.

24. **genitus ex**, a son of.

Page 261, l. 1. **dūxit**, extended.

3. **omnibus in cēsum dēlātis**, when all had been enumerated.

4. **capita lxxxiii milia cīvium Rōmānōrum**, a population of eighty-three thousand Roman citizens. **milia** is a noun in apposition with **capita**, which means heads, as in the phrase "so many head of cattle."

7. **filiae**, genitive, depending on **scelere**, connected by **et** with **generi**. **uxōrem**, as his wife.

9. **quae gēns**, a nation which.

ad Campāniam euntibus, in the direction of Campania (for those going toward), a special use of the dative of reference. The participle is used as a substantive.

10. **Gabiōs civitātem**, the city of Gabii. When the name of a city is given with the word **urbs** (or **civitās**) it usually stands in apposition. The English equivalent is *of* and the proper name.

11. **Capitōliō** here means the Capitoline Hill; in line 22, p. 260, **Capitōlium** means the Capitoline temple.

12. **in octāvō decimō miliāriō**, the preposition might have been omitted without affecting the meaning, as in line 7, p. 260.

13. **positam**, situated.

14. **perdidit**, he was compelled to flee because of the indignation aroused by a crime committed by one of his sons.

cumque imperāsset, etc., and after a reign of twenty-four years. **-que** is always translated before the word to which it is added.

imperāsset, contracted form of **imperāvisset**.

15. **Rōmae**, the same case as **Rōmae** in line 17, p. 259.

rēgnātum est per septem rēgēs, the reigns of seven kings lasted.
The verb is impersonal. The use of *per septem rēgēs* is like that of *per filiōs*, line 22, p. 260.

16. *annīs*, the use of the ablative instead of the accusative to express duration is irregular.

cum, *although*.

17. *ubi plūrimum*, *at its greatest extent (where most)*.

18. *possidēret*, *exercised authority*.

19. *Hinc cōsulēs coepēre*, *after this the consulship was established.*
coepēre, the ending *-erunt* is more frequently used than *-ēre* in the third person plural of the perfect, but some writers use both.

duo, in apposition with *cōsulēs*.

20. *malus*, may here be translated *troublesome to the state*.

voluisset, subjunctive by attraction.

eum, object of *coercēret*.

21. *placuit nē habērent*, *it was thought best that they should not hold (it was pleasing that, etc.)*

22. *nē redderentur*, *that they might not become (be rendered)*.

23. *cīvilēs*, *of the character of citizens*.

24. *quī scirent*, *since they knew*.

sē futūrōs esse privātōs, indirect discourse.

25. *ab expulsīs rēgibus*, *after the expulsion of the kings*.

26. *maximē ēgerat ut Tarquinius pellerētur*, *had been especially active in bringing about the expulsion of Tarquinius*.

27. *Lucrētia*, she was the victim of the crime which had been the cause of the uprising against Tarquinius.

Tarquiniō Collātinō, from *Tarquinius Collatinus*. The case is the same as that of *isdem*, line 20, p. 260.

28. *nē quisquam*, *that no one*.

30. *locō ipsius*, *in his place*.

31. *cōsul*, predicate nominative with *factus est*.

Page 262, l. 1. *urbī*, dative of reference with the phrase *bellum commōvit*.

Rōmae, dative, in apposition with *urbī*.

3. *restitui*, present passive infinitive.

4. *in vicem sē occidērunt*, *killed each other*.

7. *lūxērunt*, from *lūgeō*.

9. *patrem*, in apposition with *Sp. Lucrētium Tricipitinum*.

quō . . . mortuō, *and when he (Tricipitinus) fell ill and died*, ablative absolute.

10. *collēgam sibi*, *as his colleague*. *sibi* in line 10, and also in line 8, is dative of reference.

12. *urbe, from the city.*

perisset, from pereō.

15. *Rōmānis, dative with a form of inferre, a compound of in which does not express motion.*

ferente Porsennā, ablative absolute; auxilium is object of ferente.

18. *post rēgēs exāctōs means the same as ab expulsīs rēgibus, line 25, p. 261.*

20. *Tusculum, to Tusculum.*

21. *quae civitās, the order of translation is the same as that of quae gēns, line 9, p. 261.*

22. *privātus, in private life.*

cōsensuit, from cōsenescō.

24. *dē his triumphātum est, a triumph was celebrated for the victory over them. The verb is impersonal like rēgnātum est, line 15, p. 261.*

25. *ille, following the noun with which it agrees, means the celebrated.*

26. *fātāliter mortuus est, translate like morbō dēcessit, line 3, p. 260 (fātāliter, by fate).*

27. *sūmptum habuerit sepultūrae, the expense of his funeral was paid (he had the expense of his funeral).*

29. *ad iniūriam socerī vindicandam, to avenge the overthrow of his father-in-law.*

30. *ingentem, modifies exercitum.*

Page 263, l. 1. *dictātōrī, dative with a compound of ob.*

obsequerētur, subjunctive in a relative clause of purpose.

5. *tamquam premerētur, on the ground that they were oppressed.*

6. *Tum et ipse, then, also, they; ipse is singular to agree with populus, but the English idiom requires a plural.*

16. *urbis, we should say "from the city."*

oppugnātūrus patriam suam, intending to attack his native city.

20. *secundus post Tarquinium, the first-after Tarquinius. The Latin counts the starting point of a series in reckoning the position of any member of the series.*

25. *omne certāmen implendum, that the whole undertaking (struggle) would be carried out. This construction is not according to the usage of Latin of the best period.*

omnēs nōbilēs et quī . . . dēbērent, all of them (being) men of high rank and each one capable of commanding a great army.

Page 264, l. 7. *togam praetextam, the toga praetexta, which had a purple border, was worn by the more important officials of the government and also by young boys. The toga worn by the adult private citizen was white.*

12. *sextō miliāriō absint*, is (only) six miles distant.

20. *ditissimam*, superlative of *dives*.

22. *quasi*, on the ground that.

24. *Statim*, just at this time.

victōs, translate by a relative clause, *whom they had defeated*.

25. *secūtī*, pursuing.

28. *labōrārent*, were suffering.

Page 265, l. 1. *Gallis superventum est*, the Gauls were surprised.

Impersonal construction.

gravissimē, overwhelmingly.

2. *eōs ita cecidit*, so thoroughly crushed them.

5. *quasi*, as if he were.

11. *Sēquanī*, the Sequani and Helvetians were originally different tribes, but either they had been united at the time of Eutropius, or else Eutropius confused their identity.

vincendō per bella gravissima, conquering in hard-fought wars.

vincendō is a gerund used somewhat freely as an ablative of manner.

12. *Ōceanum Britannicum*, the English Channel.

14. *circuitū*, in circumference.

ad bis et trīciēs centēna milia passuum, about 3,200 miles.

16. *nē . . . quidem*, the emphatic word stands between *nē* and *quidem*.

17. *eōs victōs*, when he had conquered them.

18. *Galliae imperāvit*, he levied upon Gaul.

annuum, modifies *stipendium*.

19. *quadringentiēs* (supply *centēna milia sēstertium*), forty million sesterces, a little over \$1,600,000.

21. *male pugnāvit*, met with defeat.

27. *circā*, near, an unusual meaning of the word.

Page 266, l. 4. *quī . . . restituit*, who was a man of unusual courage, and remedied the disaster.

5. *Persās*, object of *vinceret*.

6. *exsecrandum*, deplorable.

7. *quō*, by which.

10. *Contrādictum est*, he was opposed; the verb is impersonal.

13. *iniūriam*, affront.

congregātōs habēbat, translate like the past perfect of *congregō*.

15. *nōbilitās*, nobles.

16. *fūgit*, singular, to agree with the nearest part of the compound subject.

17. *Pompēiō duce*, under the leadership of Pompey.

20. *petiit*, went to (sought).

24. *nocte interveniente*, as night had come on.

25. *nec Pompēium scīre vincere, that Pompey did not know how to conquer.*

27. *Palaeopharsālum*, the town is usually called Pharsalus.

Page 267, l. 1. *fuissent*, subjunctive in a relative descriptive clause

2. *nōn integra*, not quite (*not entire*).

3. *Numquam . . . subāctūrae*, never before had larger or more skillfully commanded Roman forces met, forces which might easily have subdued the whole world. The employment of the future active participle here is not according to the best Latin usage. The negatives *neque . . . neque* do not destroy the effect of the preceding negative, *numquam*.

5. *dūcerentur*, a somewhat irregular use of a condition. It is in sense contrary to fact in past time (had been led), but the form suggests merely anticipation from a past point of view.

6. *Fugnātum est ingentī contentiōne*, the battle was fought with great stubbornness.

victus, supply *est*.

10. *Qu* he.

fortūnam magis quam amicitiam secūtus, having regard for his own fortunes rather than for friendship.

11. *Quō cōspectō*, at the sight.

13. *generī*, Pompey had married Caesar's daughter, but she had died before the beginning of the civil war.

14. *Ipsī parāre voluit insidiās*, wished to deal treacherously with him. *Ipsī* is a dative of reference.

16. *Victus periit*, he was defeated and lost his life.

17. *Alexandriā*, ablative with *potior*.

18. *Pharnacēn*, object of *vicit*; *rebellantem* and *occupantem* agree with *Pharnacēn*. It was after this battle that Caesar sent the famous message *vēnī, vidī, vici*.

21. *ad mortem coēgit*, Eutropius implies that Caesar compelled Pharnaces to commit suicide. But other historians say that he was killed by one of his generals.

24. *eī dictātōrī*, when he (Caesar) was dictator; *eī* is a dative of reference and *dictātōrī* is in apposition with it.

ante annum, a year before.

25. *infīnita nōbilitās*, a great many of the nobles (who had fled from Rome).

Page 268, l. 6. *Post anrum*, a year later.

9. *ultimum*, supply *proelium*.

10. *adeō paene*, so nearly.

11. *fugientibus suis*, when his men began to flee, ablative absolute.

12. *nātus annōs sex et quīnquāgintā, at the age of fifty-six.*

14. *maior, the older; minor, the younger.* The word **nātū** is understood.

15. *bellis cīvilibus compositis, when the civil wars had been ended.*

16. *Agere insolentius, to conduct himself somewhat arrogantly.*

17. *et, coordinate with nec and -que.* Omit in translation.

honōrēs, offices.

19. *rēgia, king-like.*

20. *coniūrātum est in eum, a conspiracy was formed against him, impersonal.*

24. *senātūs diē, on the day of the meeting of the senate.*

APPENDIX

SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS
NOUNS1. FIRST DECLENSION, *ā*-stems

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rosa</i>	<i>rosae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>rosae</i>	<i>rosārum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>rosae</i>	<i>rosīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rosam</i>	<i>rosās</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rosā</i>	<i>rosīs</i>

2. SECOND DECLENSION, *o*-stems

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>amicus</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>vir</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>amicī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>templī</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>amicō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>templō</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>amicum</i>	<i>puerum</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>virum</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>amicō</i>	<i>puerō</i>	<i>agrō</i>	<i>virō</i>	<i>templō</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>amicī</i>	<i>puerī</i>	<i>agrī</i>	<i>virī</i>	<i>templa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>amicōrum</i>	<i>puerōrum</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>	<i>virōrum</i>	<i>templōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>amicīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>templīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>amicōs</i>	<i>puerōs</i>	<i>agrōs</i>	<i>virōs</i>	<i>templa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>amicīs</i>	<i>puerīs</i>	<i>agrīs</i>	<i>virīs</i>	<i>templīs</i>

NOTE. The vocative singular of *-us* nouns ends in *-e*: *amice*. The genitive singular and the vocative singular of *filius* and of proper nouns in *-ius* end in *-ī*: *fili*.

3. THIRD DECLENSION

A. CONSONANT STEMS

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>lēx</i>	<i>miles</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>homō</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>lēgis</i>	<i>militis</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>hominis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>lēgī</i>	<i>militī</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>hominī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>lēgem</i>	<i>militem</i>	<i>frātrem</i>	<i>hominem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>lēge</i>	<i>militē</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>homine</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>lēgum</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>frātrum</i>	<i>hominum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>flūminis</i>	<i>capitis</i>	<i>corporis</i>	<i>itineris</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>flūminī</i>	<i>capitī</i>	<i>corporī</i>	<i>itinerī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>flūmen</i>	<i>caput</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>iter</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>flūmine</i>	<i>capite</i>	<i>corpore</i>	<i>itinere</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>itinera</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>flūminum</i>	<i>capitum</i>	<i>corporum</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>flūmina</i>	<i>capita</i>	<i>corpora</i>	<i>itinera</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>	<i>capitibus</i>	<i>corporibus</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

B. i-stems

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turrīs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>caedis</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>turrīs</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>hostī</i>	<i>caedī</i>	<i>ignī</i>	<i>turrī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hostem</i>	<i>caedem</i>	<i>ignem</i>	<i>turrīm or -em</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hoste</i>	<i>caede</i>	<i>ignī or -e</i>	<i>turrī or -e</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	<i>hostēs</i>	<i>caedēs</i>	<i>ignēs</i>	<i>turrēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>hostium</i>	<i>caedium</i>	<i>ignium</i>	<i>turrium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hostīs or -ēs</i>	<i>caedis or -ēs</i>	<i>ignīs or -ēs</i>	<i>turrīs or -ēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hostibus</i>	<i>caedibus</i>	<i>ignibus</i>	<i>turribus</i>

SINGULAR

<i>N.</i>	<i>īnsigne</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>īnsignis</i>	<i>calcāris</i>	<i>animālis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>īsignī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>animālī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>īnsigne</i>	<i>calcar</i>	<i>animal</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>īsignī</i>	<i>calcārī</i>	<i>animālī</i>

PLURAL

<i>N.</i>	īnsignia	calcāria	animālia
<i>G.</i>	īnsignium	calcārium	animālium
<i>D.</i>	īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus
<i>Ac.</i>	īnsignia	calcāria	animālia
<i>Ab.</i>	īnsignibus	calcāribus	animālibus

C. MIXED STEMS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	urbs	urbēs	gēns	gentēs
<i>G.</i>	urbis	urbium	gentis	gentium
<i>D.</i>	urbī	urbibus	gentī	gentibus
<i>Ac.</i>	urbem	urbēs or -īs	gentem	gentēs or -īs
<i>Ab.</i>	urbe	urbibus	gente	gentibus

D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs
<i>G.</i>	—	vīrium	bovis	boum
<i>D.</i>	—	vīribus	bovī	būbus or bōbus
<i>Ac.</i>	vim	vīris or -ēs	bovem	bovēs
<i>Ab.</i>	vī	vīribus	bove	būbus or bōbus

4. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>G.</i>	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
<i>D.</i>	exercituī or -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
<i>Ac.</i>	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
<i>Ab.</i>	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	domus	domūs
<i>G.</i>	domūs	domuum or domōrum
<i>D.</i>	domuī or domō	domibus
<i>Ac.</i>	domum	domūs or domōs
<i>Ab.</i>	domū or domō	domibus
<i>Loc.</i>	domī	

5.

FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēī	diērum	reī	rērum
D.	diēī	diēbus	reī	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

ADJECTIVES

6.

FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

bonus, good

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

miser, unhappy

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N.	miser	misera	miserum	miserī	miserae	misera
G.	miserī	miserae	miserī	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserō	miserae	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum	miserōs	miserās	misera
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

pulcher, beautiful

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs

7.

THIRD DECLENSION

A. THREE TERMINATIONS—(i-stems)

ācer, sharp

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācrēs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācrīum</i>	<i>ācrīum</i>	<i>ācrīum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācrem</i>	<i>ācre</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācrēs or -īs</i>	<i>ācria</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācrī</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>	<i>ācribus</i>

B. TWO TERMINATIONS—(i-stems)

omnis, all

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omnium</i>	<i>omnium</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>omnem</i>	<i>omne</i>	<i>omnēs or -īs</i>	<i>omnia</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnī</i>	<i>omnibus</i>	<i>omnibus</i>

C. ONE TERMINATION

*i-stems**fēlix, fortunate**potēns, powerful**vetus, old*
(*a consonant stem*)

SINGULAR					
<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. and F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N. fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>
<i>G. fēlicis</i>	<i>fēlicis</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>potentis</i>	<i>veteris</i>	<i>veteris</i>
<i>D. fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>potentī</i>	<i>potentī</i>	<i>veterī</i>	<i>veterī</i>
<i>Ac. fēlicem</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>potentem</i>	<i>potēns</i>	<i>veterem</i>	<i>vetus</i>
<i>Ab. fēlicī</i>	<i>fēlicī</i>	<i>potentī, -e</i>	<i>potentī, -e</i>	<i>vetere</i>	<i>vetere</i>
PLURAL					
<i>N. fēlicēs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>potentēs</i>	<i>potentia</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>G. fēlicium</i>	<i>fēlicium</i>	<i>potentium</i>	<i>potentium</i>	<i>veterum</i>	<i>veterum</i>
<i>D. fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>
<i>Ac. fēlicēs, -īs</i>	<i>fēlicia</i>	<i>potentēs, -īs</i>	<i>potentia</i>	<i>veterēs</i>	<i>vetera</i>
<i>Ab. fēlicibus</i>	<i>fēlicibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>potentibus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>	<i>veteribus</i>

8.

PRESENT PARTICIPLES

SINGULAR			PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> portāns	portāns		portantēs	portantia
<i>G.</i> portantis	portantis		portantium	portantium
<i>D.</i> portanti	portanti		portantibus	portantibus
<i>Ac.</i> portantem	portāns		portantēs (-īs)	portantia
<i>Ab.</i> portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)		portantibus	portantibus

9.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

<i>N.</i>	sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
<i>G.</i>	sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>D.</i>	sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Ac.</i>	sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Ab.</i>	sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(The plurals are like those of **bonus** and **miser**.)

10

REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlix	fēlicior, fēlicius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

11.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	peior, peius	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	maior, maius	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

12. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

lātior, broader

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
<i>G.</i> lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
<i>D.</i> lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
<i>Ac.</i> lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
<i>Ab.</i> lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

plūs, more

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>G.</i> ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>D.</i> ———	——	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Ac.</i> ———	plūs	plūrēs or -īs	plūra
<i>Ab.</i> ———	——	plūribus	plūribus

13. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācritēr	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
magnopere	magis	maximē
multum	magis	maximē
multum	plūs	plūrium
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

14.

NUMERALS

Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question *how many?* as *one, two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question *which in order?* as *first, second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question *how many each?* as *one each, two each*, etc.

<i>Roman</i> <i>Numerals</i>	<i>Cardinal</i>	<i>Ordinal</i>	<i>Distributive</i>
I.	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um	singulī, -ae, -a
II.	duo, -ae, -o	secundus <i>or</i> alter	bīnī
III.	trēs, tria	tertius	ternī <i>or</i> trīnī
IV.	quattuor	quārtus	quaternī
V.	quīnque	quīntus	quīnī
VI.	sex	sextus	sēnī
VII.	septem	septimus	septēnī
VIII.	octō	octāvus	octōnī
IX.	novem	nōnus	novēnī
X.	decem	decimus	dēnī
XI.	ūndecim	ūndecimus	ūndēnī
XII.	duodecim	duodecimus	duodēnī
XIII.	tredecim	tertius decimus	ternī dēnī
XIV.	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus	quaternī dēnī
XV.	quīndecim	quīntus decimus	quīnī dēnī
XVI.	sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
XVII.	septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
XVIII.	duodēvigintī	duodēvicēsīmus	duodēvicēnī
XIX.	ūndēvigintī	ūndēvicēsīmus	ūndēvicēnī
XX.	vīgintī	vicēsīmus	vicēnī
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)	vicēsīmus prīmus	vicēnī singulī
XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus	duodētricēnī
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus	ūndētricēnī
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus	tricēnī
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus	quadrāgēnī
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus	quīnquāgēnī
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus	sexāgēnī
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī
C.	centum	centēsīmus	centēnī

CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsimus (et) prīmus	centēnī (et) singuli
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus	ducēnī
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsimus	trecēnī
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsimus	quadringēnī
D.	quīgentī	quīgentēsimus	quīgēnī
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsimus	sescēnī
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsimus	septingēnī
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsimus	octingēnī
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsimus	nōngēnī
M.	mille	millēsimus	singula milia
MM.	duo milia	bis millēsimus	bīna milia

15. DECLENSION OF *duo* AND *trēs**duo, two**trēs, three*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	duo	duae	duo	trēs	tria
<i>G.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	trium	trium
<i>D.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus.
<i>Ac.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo	trēs, trīs	tria
<i>Ab.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus

PRONOUNS

16. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, *ego, I*Second person, *tū, you (thou)*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>N.</i>	ego	nōs		tū	vōs
<i>G.</i>	meī	{nostrum nostrī		tuī	{vestrum vestrī
<i>D.</i>	mihi	nōbīs		tibi	vōbīs
<i>Ac.</i>	mē	nōs		tē	vōs
<i>Ab.</i>	mē	nōbīs		tē	vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually *is, he, ea, she, id, it*), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive pronouns.

17.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

First person, <i>meī</i> , of myself			Second person, <i>tui</i> , of yourself		Third person, <i>sui</i> , of himself, etc.	
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
<i>G.</i>	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrī</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>vestrī</i>	<i>sui</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	<i>sē</i>	<i>sē</i>

18.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

1st pers. *meus*, -a, -um, *my*2d pers. *tuus*, -a, -um, *your* (of one)*noster*, -tra, -trum, *our**vester*, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one)

3d pers. { *suus*, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (when referring to the subject)
eius (gen. sing. of *is*) *his, her, its* (when not referring to the subject)

suus, -a, -um, *their* (when referring to the subject)
eōrum, *eārum*, *eōrum* (gen. plur. of *is*) *their* (when not referring to the subject)

19.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

hic, *this*

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>		<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>		<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>		<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>		<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>		<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

ille, *that*

	SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>		<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>		<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>		<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>		<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>		<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

a. iste is declined like *ille*

is, this, that, he, she, it

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	is	ea	id	iī, eī	cae	ea
<i>G.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>D.</i>	eī	eī	eī	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs
<i>Ac.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Ab.</i>	eō	eā	eō	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs	iīs, eīs

20.

THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

idem, the same

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	īdem	eadem	idem	<i>N.</i> īdem or eīdem	eadem	eadem
<i>G.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	<i>G.</i> eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>D.</i>	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	<i>D.</i> īsdem or eīsdem	īsdem or eīsdem	īsdem or eīsdem
<i>Ac.</i>	eundem	eandem	idem	<i>Ac.</i> eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Ab.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	<i>Ab.</i> īsdem or eīsdem	īsdem or eīsdem	īsdem or eīsdem

21.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

ipse, self

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
<i>G.</i>	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>D.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
<i>Ac.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Ab.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

22.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

quī, who

SINGULAR				PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

23. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quis	quae	quid	quī	quae	quae
<i>G.</i>	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>D.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i>	quem	quam	quid	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Ab.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes *quī*. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always *quod*.

24. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

<i>quisque, each</i>				<i>quisquam, anyone</i>	
SINGULAR					
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque	quisquam	quiequam (quidquam)
<i>G.</i>	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusque	cuiusquam	cuiusquam
<i>D.</i>	cuique	cuique	cuique	cuiquam	cuiquam
<i>Ac.</i>	quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque	quemquam	quiequam (quidquam)
<i>Ab.</i>	quōque	quāque	quōque	quōquam	quōquam

Plural rare

Plural missing

quīdam, a certain

SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quīdam	quaedam
<i>G.</i>	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
<i>D.</i>	cuidam	cuidam
<i>Ac.</i>	quendam	quandam
<i>Ab.</i>	quōdam	quādam

PLURAL		
		<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	quīdam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>G.</i>	quōrundam	cuiusdam
<i>D.</i>	quibusdam	cuidam
<i>Ac.</i>	quōsdam	quiddam (quoddam)
<i>Ab.</i>	quibusdam	quōdam

PLURAL		
<i>N.</i>	quīdam	quaedam
<i>G.</i>	quōrundam	quōrundam
<i>D.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam
<i>Ac.</i>	quōsdam	quaedam
<i>Ab.</i>	quibusdam	quibusdam

aliquis, *some*

SINGULAR		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N.</i>	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua
<i>G.</i>	alicuius	alicuius
<i>D.</i>	alicui	alicui
<i>Ac.</i>	aliquem	aliquam
<i>Ab.</i>	aliquō	aliquā
Neut.		
		aliquid (aliquod)
		alicuius
		alicui
		aliquid (aliquod)
		aliquō
PLURAL		
<i>N.</i>	aliquī	aliquae
<i>G.</i>	aliquōrum	aliquārum
<i>D.</i>	aliquibus	aliquibus
<i>Ac.</i>	aliquōs	aliquās
<i>Ab.</i>	aliquibus	aliqua
		aliquibus

REGULAR VERBS

25.

FIRST CONJUGATION

ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum

INDICATIVE		Present	SUBJUNCTIVE	
		SINGULAR		
X	portō, <i>I carry</i>			portem
	portās, <i>you carry</i>			portēs
	portat, <i>he carries</i>			portet
		PLURAL		
	portāmus, <i>we carry</i>			portēmus
	portātis, <i>you carry</i>			portētis
	portant, <i>they carry</i>			portent
		Imperfect		
		SINGULAR		
	portābam, <i>I was carrying</i>			portārem
	portābās, <i>you were carrying</i>			portārēs
	portābat, <i>he was carrying</i>			portāret
		PLURAL		
	portābāmus, <i>we were carrying</i>			portārēmus
	portābātis, <i>you were carrying</i>			portārētis
	portābant, <i>they were carrying</i>			portārent

INDICATIVE

Future

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

portābō, *I shall carry*
 portābis, *you will carry*
 portābit, *he will carry*

PLURAL

portābimus, *we shall carry*
 portābitis, *you will carry*
 portābunt, *they will carry*

Perfect

SINGULAR

portāvī, *I have carried, I carried*
 portāvistī, *you have carried, etc.*
 portāvit, *he has carried, etc.*

portāverim
 portāverīs
 portāverit

PLURAL

portāvimus, *we have carried, etc.*
 portāvistis, *you have carried, etc.*
 portāverunt, -ēre, *they have carried, etc.*

portāverimus
 portāveritis
 portāverint

Past Perfect

SINGULAR

portāveram, *I had carried*
 portāverās, *you had carried*
 portāverat, *he had carried*

portāvissem
 portāvissēs
 portāvisset

PLURAL

portāverāmus, *we had carried*
 portāverātis, *you had carried*
 portāverant, *they had carried*

portāvissēmus
 portāvissētis
 portāvissent

Future Perfect

SINGULAR

portāverō, *I shall have carried*
 portāveris, *you will have carried*
 portāverit, *he will have carried*

PLURAL

portāverimus, *we shall have carried*
 portāveritis, *you will have carried*
 portāverint, *they will have carried*

IMPERATIVE

*Present**Sing. 2.* portā, *carry (thou)**Plur. 2.* portāte, *carry (ye)**Future**Sing. 2.* portātō, *thou shalt carry**3.* portātō, *he shall carry**Plur. 2.* portātōte, *ye shall carry**3.* portantō, *they shall carry*

INFINITIVES

Pres. portāre, *to carry**Past* portāvisse, *to have carried**Fut.* portātūrus esse, *to be about to carry*

PARTICIPLES

Pres. portāns, *carrying**Fut.* portātūrus, *about to carry*

GERUND

G. portandī, *of carrying**D.* portandō, *to (for) carrying**Ac.* portandum, *carrying**Ab.* portandō, *from, by carrying*

SUPINE

Ac. portātum, *to carry**Ab.* portātū, *to carry*

26.

PASSIVE VOICE

Present

INDICATIVE

SINGULAR

portor, *I am carried*
 portāris, -re, *you are carried*
 portātur, *he is carried*

PLURAL

portāmur, *we are carried*
 portāminī, *you are carried*
 portantur, *they are carried*

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

porter
 portēris, -re
 portētur

PLURAL

portēmur
 portēminī
 portentur

Imperfect

SINGULAR

portābar, *I was (being) carried*
 portābāris, -re, *you were carried*
 portābātur, *he was carried*

PLURAL

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*
 portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*
 portābantur, *they were (being) carried*

SINGULAR

portārer
 portārēris, -re
 portārētur

PLURAL

portārēmur
 portārēminī
 portārentur

INDICATIVE

Future

SINGULAR

portābor, *I shall be carried*
 portāberis, -re, *you will be carried*
 portābitur, *he will be carried*

PLURAL

portābimur, *we shall be carried*
 portābiminī, *you will be carried*
 portābuntur, *they will be carried*

Perfect

SINGULAR

portātus sum, *I have been carried*
 portātus es, *you have been carried*
 portātus est, *he has been carried*

PLURAL

portātī sumus, *we have been carried*
 portātī estis, *you have been carried*
 portātī sunt, *they have been carried*

Past Perfect

SINGULAR

portātus eram, *I had been carried*
 portātus erās, *you had been carried*
 portātus erat, *he had been carried*

PLURAL

portātī erāmus, *we had been carried*
 portātī erātis, *you had been carried*
 portātī erant, *they had been carried*

Future Perfect

SINGULAR

portātus erō, *I shall have been carried*
 portātus eris, *you will have been carried*
 portātus erit, *he will have been carried*

PLURAL

portātī erimus, *we shall have been carried*
 portātī eritis, *you will have been carried*
 portātī erunt, *they will have been carried*

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR

portātus sim
 portātus sis
 portātus sit

PLURAL

portātī sīmus
 portātī sītis
 portātī sint

SINGULAR

portātus essem
 portātus essēs
 portātus esset

PLURAL

portātī essēmus
 portātī essētis
 portātī essent

IMPERATIVE

Present

Sing. 2. portāre, *be (thou) carried* *Sing. 2.* portātor, *thou shalt be carried*
Plur. 2. portāmini, *be (ye) carried* *3.* portātor, *he shall be carried*

Future

Plur. 2. ———

3. portantor, *they shall be carried*

INFINITIVES

Pres. amārī, *to be loved*

Past amātus esse, *to have been loved*

Fut. amātum irī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES

Past portātus, *having been carried*

Fut. portandus, *to be carried*

27. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
	monēs	dūcis	capis	audis
	monet	dūcit	capit	audit
	monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audimus
	monētis	dūcitis	capitis	auditis
	monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt
<i>Imperfect</i>	monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
	monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
	monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat
	monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
	monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
	monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant
<i>Future</i>	monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
	monēbis	dūcēs	capies	audies
	<u>monēbit</u>	dūcet	capiet	audiet
	monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiemus	audiemus
	monēbitis	dūcētis	capietis	audietis
	monēbunt	dūcent	capient	audient
<i>Perfect</i>	monuī	dūxī	cēpī	audīvī
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monueram	dūxeram	caperam	audiveram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	monuerō			audiverō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
	moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
	moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat
	moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
	moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
	moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiant
<i>Imperfect</i>	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audirem
	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audirēs
	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audiret
	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audirēmus
	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audirētis
	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audirent
<i>Perfect</i>	monuerim	dūxerim	cēperim	audiverim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monuissē	dūxissem	cēpissē	audivissē

IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	monē	dūc	cape	audi
	monēte	dūcite	capite	audite
<i>Future</i>	2 monētō	dūcitō	capitō	auditō
	3 monētō	dūcitō	capitō	auditō
	2 monētōte	dūcitōte	capitōte	auditōte
	3 monentō	dūcuntō	capiuntō	audiuntō

PARTICIPLES

<i>Present</i>	monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
<i>Future</i>	monitūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	auditūrus

INFINITIVE

<i>Present</i>	monēre	dūcere	capere	audire
<i>Past</i>	monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audivisse
<i>Future</i>	monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	auditūrus esse

GERUND

monendī	dūcendī	capiendī	audiendī
monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.

SUPINE

monitum	captum	auditum
monitū	captū	auditū

28.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

<i>Present</i>	moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
	monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audiris, -re
	monētur	dūcitur	capitur	auditur
	monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audimur
	monēmini	dūcimini	capimini	audimini
	monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur
<i>Imperfect</i>	monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
	monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
	monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur
	monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
	monēbāmini	dūcēbāmini	capiēbāmini	audiēbāmini
	monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur
<i>Future</i>	monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
	monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
	monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur
	monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
	monēbimini	dūcēmini	capiēmini	audiēmini
	monēbuntur	dūcentur	capientur	audientur
<i>Perfect</i>	monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	auditus sum
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	auditus eram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	auditus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Present</i>	monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
	moneāris, -re	dūcāris, -re	capiāris, -re	audiāris, -re
	moneātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
	moneāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
	moneāmini	dūcāmini	capiāmini	audiāmini
	moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur
<i>Imperfect</i>	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
	monērēris, -re	dūcerēris, -re	caperēris, -re	audīrēris, -re
	monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
	monērēmini	dūcerēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

<i>Perfect</i>	monitus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	auditus sim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	monitus essem	ductus essem	captus essem	auditus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Present</i>	monēre monēminī	dūcere dūciminī	capere capiminī	audire audiminī
<i>Future</i>	2 ——— 3 monentor	——— dūcuntor	——— capiuntor	——— audiuntor

PARTICIPLES

<i>Past</i>	monitus	ductus	captus	auditus
<i>Future</i>	monendus	dūcendus	capiendus	audiendus

INFINITIVE

<i>Present</i>	monērī	dūcī	capī	audīrī
<i>Perfect</i>	monitus esse	ductus esse	captus esse	auditus esse
<i>Future</i>	monitum īrī	ductum īrī	captum īrī	auditum īrī

29.

DEPONENT VERBS

- I. cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum
 II. polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum
 III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
 IV. potior, potīrī, potītus sum

INDICATIVE

	I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Pres.</i>	cōnor cōnāris, -re cōnātur cōnāmur cōnāminī cōnāntur	polliceor pollicēris, -re pollicētur pollicēmur pollicēminī pollicentur	sequor sequeris, -re sequitur sequimur sequiminī sequuntur	potior potīris, -re potitur potīmur potīminī potiuntur
<i>Impf.</i>	cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	potiar
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
<i>P. Pf.</i>	cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
<i>F. Pf.</i>	cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōner	pollicear	sequar	potiar
<i>Impf.</i>	cōnārer	pollicērer	sequerer	potīrer
<i>Perf.</i>	cōnātus sim	pollicitus sim	secūtus sim	potitus sim
<i>P. Pf.</i>	cōnātus essem	pollicitus essem	secūtus essem	potitus essem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāre	pollicēre	sequere	potīre
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātor	pollicētor	sequitor	potitor

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	potirī
<i>Past</i>	cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	potitus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potitūrus esse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	cōnāns	pollicēns	sequēns	potiēns
<i>Past</i>	cōnātus	pollicitus	secūtus	potitus
<i>F. Act.</i>	cōnātūrus	pollicitūrus	secūtūrus	potitūrus
<i>F. Pass.</i>	cōnandus	pollicendus	sequendus	potiendus

GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	pollicendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
---------------	------------------	----------------	----------------

SUPINE

cōnātum	pollicitum	secūtum	potitum
cōnātū	pollicitū	secūtū	potitū

IRREGULAR VERBS

30. CONJUGATION OF *sum*.

Principal parts: *sum, esse, fui, futūrus*

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR

sum, I am
es, you are
est, he, she, it is

PLURAL

sumus, we are
estis, you are
sunt, they are

Imperfect

<i>eram, I was</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
<i>erās, you were</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
<i>erat, he, she, it was</i>	<i>erant, they were</i>

Future

<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, you will be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he, she, it will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>

Perfect

<i>fui, I have been, I was</i>	<i>fuimus, we have been, we were</i>
<i>fuisti, you have been, you were</i>	<i>fuistis, you have been, you were</i>
<i>fuit, he, she, it has been, was</i>	<i>fuērunt or -ēre, they have been, etc.</i>

Past Perfect

<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fuerās, you had been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerat, he, she, it had been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>

Future Perfect

<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fueris, you will have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he, she, it will have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>sim</i>	<i>simus</i>
<i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>
<i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>

Imperfect

SINGULAR	PLURAL
<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

Perfect

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerīmus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fuerītis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

Past Perfect

<i>fuissem</i>	<i>fuissēmus</i>
<i>fuissēs</i>	<i>fuissētis</i>
<i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissent</i>

IMPERATIVE

*Present*2d pers. *es, be (thou)**este, be (ye)*

*Future*2d pers. estō, *be, thou shalt be*estōte, *be, ye shall be*3d pers. estō, *let him be, he shall be*suntō, *let them be, they shall be*

PARTICIPLE

Fut. futūrus, *about to be*

INFINITIVE

Pres. esse, *to be**Perf.* fuisse, *to have been**Fut.* futūrus esse *or fore, to be about to be*31. CONJUGATION OF **possum**.Principal parts: **possum, posse, potuī**

INDICATIVE

Present

SINGULAR	PLURAL
possum	possumus
potes	potestis
potest	possunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

SINGULAR	PLURAL
possim	possimus
possis	possitis
possit'	possint

Imperfect

poteram	poterāmus
poterās	poterātis
poterat	poterant

pōsem	possēmus
possēs	possētis
posset	possent

Future

poterō	poterimus
--------	-----------

Perfect

potuī	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
-------	----------	----------	------------

Past Perfect

potueram	potuerāmus	potuissē	potuissēmus
----------	------------	----------	-------------

Future Perfect

potuerō	potuerimus
---------	------------

INFINITIVE

Pres. posse*Past* potuisse

32. CONJUGATION OF *prōsum*.Principal parts: *prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui*

INDICATIVE		<i>Present</i>	SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>prōsum</i>	<i>prōsumus</i>		<i>prōsim</i>	<i>prōsīmus</i>
<i>prōdes</i>	<i>prōdestis</i>		<i>prōsis</i>	<i>prōsītis</i>
<i>prōdest</i>	<i>prōsunt</i>		<i>prōsit</i>	<i>prōsint</i>

The remaining forms of the present system are conjugated like *sum*, with the prefix *prōd-*. The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem *prōfu-*.

33. CONJUGATION OF *ferō*.Principal parts: *ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum*

INDICATIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
<i>Active</i>		<i>Passive</i>	
<i>ferō</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris, -re</i>	<i>feriminī</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbāmus</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferēbāmur</i>
<i>Future</i>			
<i>feram</i>	<i>ferēmus</i>	<i>ferar</i>	<i>ferēmur</i>
<i>Perfect</i>			
<i>tulī</i>	<i>tulīmus</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>lātī sumus</i>
<i>Past Perfect</i>			
<i>tuleram</i>	<i>tulerāmus</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>	<i>lātī erāmus</i>
<i>Future Perfect</i>			
<i>tulerō</i>	<i>tulerimus</i>	<i>lātus erō</i>	<i>lātī erimus</i>
SUBJUNCTIVE			
<i>Present</i>			
<i>feram</i>	<i>ferāmus</i>	<i>ferar</i>	<i>ferāmur</i>
<i>Imperfect</i>			
<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferrēmus</i>	<i>ferrer</i>	<i>ferrēmur</i>

Perfect

tulerim	tulerimus	lātus sim	lāti simus
---------	-----------	-----------	------------

Past Perfect

tulisse	tulissēmus	lātus essem	lāti essēmus
---------	------------	-------------	--------------

IMPERATIVE

Present

2 fer	ferite	ferre	ferimini
-------	--------	-------	----------

Future

2 fertō	fertōte	fertor	_____
3 fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

INFINITIVE

PARTICIPLES

*Active**Passive**Active**Passive*

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferī	<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Past</i>	lātus
<i>Past</i>	tulisse	lātus esse	<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus	<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus
<i>Fut.</i>	lātūrus esse	lātum iri				

GERUND

SUPINE

ferend), etc.

Acc. lātum

Abl. lātū

34. CONJUGATION OF *eō*.Principal parts: *eō, ire, ii or ivi, itum**Present*

INDICATIVE

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>eō</i>	<i>īmus</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
<i>īs</i>	<i>ītis</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>eātis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>	<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>

Imperfect

<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>	<i>īrem</i>	<i>irēmus</i>
-------------	---------------	-------------	---------------

Future

<i>ibō</i>	<i>ibimus</i>
------------	---------------

Perfect

<i>ii or ivi</i>	<i>iimus or ivimus</i>	<i>ierim or īverim</i>	<i>ierimus or īverimus</i>
------------------	------------------------	------------------------	----------------------------

Past Perfect

ieram (īveram) ierāmus (īverāmus) īssem (īvissem) īssēmus (īvissēmus)

Future Perfect

ierō or īverō ierimus or īverimus

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> ī,	īte	<i>Pres.</i> īre	<i>Pres.</i> iēns (<i>Gen.</i> euntis)
<i>Fut.</i> itō,	itōte	<i>Perf.</i> iisse or īsse	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus
	ito,	<i>Fut.</i> itūrus esse	
	euntō		
GERUND		SUPINE	
eundī, etc.		itum, itū	

35. CONJUGATION OF *fiō*.

Principal parts: *fiō, fierī, factus sum*

Present

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>fiō</i>	—	<i>fiam</i>	<i>fīāmus</i>
<i>fīs</i>	—	<i>fīās</i>	<i>fīātis</i>
<i>fit</i>	<i>fīunt</i>	<i>fiat</i>	<i>fīant</i>

Imperfect

<i>fiēbam</i>	<i>fīebāmus</i>	<i>fierem</i>	<i>fīerēmus</i>
---------------	-----------------	---------------	-----------------

Future

<i>fiam</i>	<i>fīēmus</i>
-------------	---------------

Perfect

<i>factus sum</i>	<i>factus sim</i>
-------------------	-------------------

Past Perfect

<i>factus eram</i>	<i>factus essem</i>
--------------------	---------------------

Future Perfect

factus erō

IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
<i>Pres.</i> <i>fī, fīte</i>		<i>Pres.</i> <i>fieri</i>	<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus</i>
		<i>Perf.</i> <i>factus esse</i>	<i>Fut.</i> <i>faciendus</i>
		<i>Fut.</i> <i>factum iri</i>	

36. CONJUGATION OF **volō**, and its compounds.**volō, velle, voluī, be willing.****nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling.****mālō, mälle, māluī, prefer.**

INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imperfect</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	voluī	nōluī	māluī
<i>Past Perf.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imperfect</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōlī	nōlīte
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō	nōlitōte
	nōlitō	nōluntō

INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mälle
<i>Perf.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
--------------	--------	--------

REVIEW OF SYNTAX

AGREEMENT

37. 1. Adjectives and participles agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns to which they belong (55).

2. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause (288).

3. A noun in apposition agrees in case with the noun which it explains (62).

4. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number (44).

CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

38. 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case (11).

2. A predicate noun used with a finite form of *sum* is in the nominative case (50, 2).

THE GENITIVE

39. 1. The genitive is used to denote a person or thing referred to as possessing something (11).

2. The genitive is used to refer to the whole of something, of which a part is denoted by the word on which the genitive depends (265).

3. The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing (352).

4. Nouns and adjectives which denote actions sometimes take a dependent genitive in a relation similar to that of a direct object to the verb on which it depends (381).

5. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed, or the persons or objects making up a collective noun (521).

6. The verbs *meminī* and *reminīscor*, *remember*, and *oblīvīscor*, *forget*, frequently take a genitive as object. But if the object is a neuter pronoun or adjective it always stands in the accusative (543).

THE DATIVE

40. 1. The indirect object is in the dative (26).

2. The dative is used in dependence on adjectives of *attitude*, *quality*, or *relation* to indicate the person or thing toward which the attitude is directed or in reference to which the quality or relation is said to exist (27).

3. Verbs meaning to *favor*, *please*, *trust*, *obey*, *serve*, *resist*, *envy*, *threaten*, *pardon*, *spare*, and *persuade*, take their (apparent) objects in the dative (125).

4. The possessor of something may be denoted by the dative with the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of the verb meaning *to be* (325).

5. The purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve is often expressed by the dative (196).

6. With many verbs compounded with *ante*, *ob*, *prae*, or *sub*, a noun or pronoun connected in sense with the preposition is put in the dative. The dative is also thus used with compounds of *ad* and *in* when motion is not expressed, and occasionally with the compounds of a few other prepositions (324).

7. The dative is often used to indicate a person who is likely to be affected favorably or unfavorably by an act or situation, or with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. Occasionally this use of the dative is found with words referring to things (245).

8. With the future passive participle the dative is used to indicate the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done (538).

THE ACCUSATIVE

41. 1. The direct object of a verb is in the accusative (11).

2. A noun used to tell how long an act or situation continues is put in the accusative (177).

3. A noun used to express extent in space is put in the accusative (312).

4. With the names of towns and small islands, also with *domus*, the accusative without a preposition is used to name the place to which motion is directed. With other words in this construction a preposition, *ad* or *in*, is used (313).

THE ABLATIVE

42. 1. The ablative represents a combination of ideas, the original force of which is expressed by English phrases with the prepositions *from*, *in*, or *with* (33).

2. Verbs meaning *to separate*, *remove*, *deprive of*, *lack*, *be absent*, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with *ab* or *ex* (329).

3. With names of towns and small islands, also with *domus*, the ablative without a preposition is used to express the idea of place from which. With other words in this construction, a preposition, *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*, is used (330).

4. With passive verbs, the noun or pronoun which indicates the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab* (98).

5. With the comparative form of an adjective (occasionally of an

adverb), if **quam** is omitted, the noun or pronoun indicating the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative without a preposition (340).

6. The ablative with **in** is used to indicate the place where something is or where some act occurs (110).

7. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate the time at which or within which an act occurs or a situation exists (211).

8. The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to indicate the person with whom one is associated in doing an act (104).

9. The manner in which an act is done may be expressed by the ablative with **cum**. But **cum** may be omitted if the noun is modified by an adjective (277).

10. The means or instrument with which an act is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (130).

11. The way or route by which one goes may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition (318).

12. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree or measure of difference between two things (346).

13. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to indicate some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence (370).

14. The ablative without a preposition may be used to indicate in what respect a statement is true (366).

15. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing (353).

16. The ablative with or without a preposition may be used to express cause (449).

17. The deponents **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vēscor** take their objects in the ablative (419).

THE VOCATIVE

43. The vocative is used to denote the person addressed (34).

THE LOCATIVE

44. With the names of towns and small islands, also with **domus**, the place where some act occurs or something exists is denoted by the locative (299).

a. The locative has the same form as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declension; elsewhere it has the same form as the ablative. The locative of **domus** is **domī**.

MOODS

THE INDICATIVE

45. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE

46. 1. The most important use of the subjunctive is to refer to an act as desired (456).

2. In a main clause the expression of desire may consist: (1) in urging someone to act with the speaker (456, *a*), (2) in giving an order to be carried out by someone else than the person addressed (456, *b*).

3. A subordinate clause expressing the purpose of the main act has its verb in the subjunctive. Purpose clauses are introduced by *ut* or *ne*, or a relative pronoun (460).

4. A substantive clause depending on a verb which expresses or implies desire has its verb in the subjunctive (470).

5. Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive introduced by *nē*, *that*, or *ut*, *that not* (531).

6. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause to refer to an act as anticipated or expected (476).

7. The subjunctive is used in subordinate clauses expressing result (483).

8. A substantive clause depending on a verb or phrase which expresses the bringing about of an act or of a situation has its verb in the subjunctive (516).

9. A clause introduced by *cum* meaning *when*, if used to describe the situation in which the main act took place, has its verb in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive (511).

10. A *cum* clause introduced by *cum* meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive (520).

11. A clause introduced by *cum* meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive (526).

12. An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive (489).

13. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive (587).

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

47. 1. Non-committal conditional sentences have their verbs in the indicative (571).

2. Future less vivid conditional sentences have their verbs in the present or perfect subjunctive (581).

3. Conditional sentences contrary to fact have their verbs in the imperfect subjunctive to refer to present time, and the past perfect to refer to past time (576).

THE IMPERATIVE

48. The imperative is used to express affirmative commands. The forms of the present tense are usually employed except in the case of the verbs *memini* and *sciō*, of which the future is used with present meaning (402, 586).

THE INFINITIVE

49. 1. The infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of the finite verb of the clause in which it stands (272).

2. Words of *knowing, thinking, saying, hearing, and observing* may take as object an infinitive with its subject in the accusative (395).

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

50. In Latin, indirect quotations are expressed as follows: (a) A main clause containing a statement of fact has its verb in the infinitive with the subject in the accusative.

(b) A main clause expressing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.

(c) All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive (499).

THE SUPINE

51. 1. The accusative of the supine is used to express purpose in clauses in which the finite verb expresses motion (547, a).

2. The ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of respect with a few adjectives (547, b).

THE GERUND

52. The gerund is a verbal noun, used only in four cases and in the singular number (552).

THE GERUNDIVE

53. The gerundive is a participle and is used in agreement with a noun or pronoun (557).

RELATION OF TENSES

54. The tense of a subjunctive in a dependent clause usually bears a certain relation to the tense of the verb in the main clause.

(a) If the main verb denotes present or future time, the dependent subjunctive is regularly present or perfect.

(b) If the main verb denotes past time the dependent subjunctive is regularly imperfect or past perfect (510).

FAMILIAR LATIN PHRASES

- Ad astra per aspera*, To the stars through difficulties (motto of Kansas).
Ad utrumque parātus, Prepared for either result.
Alter ego est amīcus, A friend is one's second self.
Aurī sacra famēs, Accursed greed for gold.
E pluribus ūnum, One (formed) from many (motto of the United States).
Ex animō, Sincerely.
Esse quam vidērī, To be rather than to seem.
Fāta viam inveniēnt, The fates will find a way.
Ferē libenter hominēs id quod volunt crēdunt, Men usually believe willingly that which they wish.
Fīat lūx, Let there be light.
Fīat iūstitia, Let justice be done.
Fortēs fortūna iuvat, Fortune favors the brave.
Homō sum, hūmānī nihil ā mē aliēnum putō, I am a man, and I regard nothing as foreign to me which has to do with humanity.
Horribile dictū, Horrible to relate.
In hōc signō vincēs, In this sign you shall conquer.
Labōrāre est ōrāre, To labor is to pray.
Labor omnia vincit, Toil conquers all things.
Mēns sāna in corpore sānō, A sound mind in a sound body.
Mēns sibi cōnschia rēctī, A mind conscious in itself (to itself) of right.
Mirābile dictū, Wonderful to say.
Montānī semper liberī, Mountaineers are always freemen (motto of West Virginia).
Nōn prōgredi est regredi, Not to go forward is to go backward.
Nōn sibi sed omnibus, Not for one's self but for all.
Pāce tuā, With your permission.
Possunt quia posse videntur, They can because they think they can.
Quod erat dēmōnstrandum (abbr. *Q.E.D.*), Which was to be proved.
Semper parātus, Always ready.
Sic ītur ad astra, Thus one rises to fame (to the stars).
Sic semper tyrannīs, Ever thus to tyrants (motto of Virginia).
Sic trānsit glōria mūdī, Thus passes away the glory of the world.
Sine diē, Without a day (said of an assembly which adjourns without a date fixed for meeting again).
Tempora mūtantur et nōs mūtāmur in illis, The times change and we change with them (in them).
Vincit quī patitur, He conquers who endures.
Vincit quī sē vincit, He conquers who conquers himself.

LATIN WORD FORMATION

1. PREFIXES

We sometimes attach one or more syllables to the beginning of a word and thus form a new word of somewhat different meaning. By placing the syllable *un-* at the beginning of *prepared* we form the word *unprepared*. In Latin the word *addūcō* is formed in like manner by placing *ad* before *dūcō*. A syllable or group of syllables which is thus used in the formation of words is called a Prefix.

2. SUFFIXES

A word is sometimes formed by adding one or more syllables to the end of another word. Thus by adding *-ly* to the adjective *rapid* we get the adverb *rapidly*. A syllable or group of syllables thus used is called a Suffix.

3. CHANGES IN SPELLING

Often the form of a Latin prefix was changed because of the letter which immediately followed it. This change came about for the reason that the Romans found it difficult to pronounce certain groups of consonants, and therefore they changed these groups, perhaps through careless and inaccurate pronunciation at first, into forms which were less difficult. The spelling was finally changed to correspond with the pronunciation. Thus when *ad* was used as a prefix with *cēdō*, the new word came to be *accēdō* instead of *adcēdō*. This change by which a letter is made the same as that which follows it is called Assimilation.

In addition to this change in the spelling of prefixes, a vowel in the middle of a word was often changed when a prefix was joined to the original word. Thus from *re-* and *teneō* we have *retineō*.

4. LATIN PREFIXES

Most Latin prefixes are prepositions. The prepositions *ad* and *dē*, for example, are among the most frequently used prefixes. There are, however, a few prefixes which are never found as separate words. The syllable *re-* of *redūcō* is of this kind. Such a prefix is called an Inseparable Prefix.

The most important prefixes for the work of the first year are as follows:

- (1) *ā, ab, abs, from, away.*

abdūcō (= *ab* + *dūcō*), *lead away.*

NOTE. Before vowels the form *ab* is always used. Thus *abeō* (= *ab* + *eō*), *go away*. Before consonants both *ā* and *ab* are used. The

form **abs** is found before **c** and **t**: **abs**cīdō (=abs+caedō), *cut away*, **abstrah**ō (=abs+trahō), *drag away, draw away*.

(2) **ad**, *to, toward*.

addūcō (=ad+dūcō), *lead to*.

NOTE. Other meanings than those given above are sometimes found. Among them are *at, by, up, upon*. Sometimes **ad** is used merely to emphasize the meaning of the word to which it is added. By assimilation it becomes **ac-**, **ag-**, **al-**, **an-**, **ap-**, **ar-**, **as-**, **at-**. Some of these changes did not take place until later than the time when the most important Latin literature was written, but they are seen in English derivatives, such as *aggressive, alleviate, annex, approve, arrive, assume, attract*.

(3) **com-** (**con-**), *together, entirely, completely*.

condūcō (=com+dūcō), *lead together, bring together*.

NOTE. **com-**, used as an inseparable prefix, is an old form of the preposition **cum**, *with*. By assimilation it becomes **col-**, **con-**, **cor-**. Sometimes it is found as **co-**.

(4) **dē**, *from, away*.

dēdūcō (=dē+dūcō), *lead away, withdraw*.

NOTE. Other meanings of **dē** sometimes found in compounds are *not* and *thoroughly*.

(5) **ē**, **ex**, *out, out from, thoroughly*.

ēdūcō (=ē+dūcō), *lead out*.

NOTE 1. The prefix appears as **ex** before vowels and **h**, and before certain consonants; elsewhere it appears as **ē**.

NOTE 2. The three prepositions **ā** (**ab**), **dē**, and **ē** (**ex**) are closely related in meaning. The general meaning of **ā**, **ab** is *away from*, of **dē**, *down from*, of **ē**, **ex**, *out from*. In compounds these meanings are not always distinguished.

(6) **in**, *in, into*.

indūcō (=in+dūcō), *lead in, lead into*.

* NOTE. By assimilation **in** becomes **il-**, **im-**, **ir-**.

(7) **in-**, *not*.

incrēdibilis (=in+crēdibilis, *credible*), *not credible*.

NOTE. This is an inseparable prefix and has no connection with the preceding word. It is often represented in English by *un-* or *in-*. The English prefix *un-* is not derived from **in-**, but both go back to a common source.

- (8)
- inter*
- ,
- between*
- .

interpōnō (=inter+pōnō), *place between*.

- (9)
- per*
- ,
- through, thoroughly*
- .

perducō (=per+dūcō), *lead through*.

NOTE. With adjectives and adverbs *per* sometimes means *very*. Thus, *persaepe*, *very often*.

- (10)
- prae*
- ,
- before, in advance*
- .

praemittō (=prae+mittō), *send in advance*.

NOTE. In English derivatives *prae* becomes *pre-*. Examples are *prefer*, *precede*, *pretend*.

- (11)
- prō*
- ,
- before, forward*
- .

prōducō (=prō+dūcō), *lead forward*.

- (12)
- sub*
- ,
- under, up to, to the aid of*
- .

submitto (=sub+mittō), *send to the aid of*.

NOTE. By assimilation *sub* becomes *suc-*, *suf-*, *sug-*, *sup-*, and sometimes *sum-* and *sur-*. Examples in English derivatives are *succeed*, *suffer*, *suggest*, *support*, *summon*.

5. LATIN SUFFIXES

It is usually difficult to give exact meanings to Latin suffixes. Often we can only say that they are used in forming certain classes of words. They differ from prefixes in that they are not usually added to whole words to form new ones, but are instead employed with a form which is formed by dropping or changing one or more letters of the original word. Thus *civitas* is said to be derived from *civis*, but the ending *-tas* instead of being added to *civis* is used with *civi-*.

Some suffixes which are often used in nouns are *-ia*, *-tia*, *-ium*, *-iō*, (*-tiō*), *-dō*, *-tas*, *-tūs*, *-tus* (*-sus*).

Examples are as follows:

- (1) From nouns:

civitas (*civis*)*pecunia* (*pecus*)*servitūs* (*servus*)*virtūs* (*vir*)

(2) From adjectives:

altitūdō (altus)
amīcitia (amicus)
celeritās (celer)
dignitās (dignus)
diligentia (diligēns)

(3) From verbs:

adventus (adveniō)
cupiditās (cupiō, cupidus)
iūdicium (iūdicō)
oppugnātiō (oppugnō)
potestās (possum, potēns)
praesidium (praesideō)

NOTE. In some of the examples given above the word in parentheses does not show the exact order of derivation, but it serves to indicate a common relation. Thus, iūdicium is derived from iūdex.

6. ENGLISH DERIVATIVES

We have seen that prefixes are very often changed by assimilation, and that the diphthong *ae* becomes *e* in English derivatives. Suffixes also are frequently changed. Some of these changes are as follows:

The suffix *-ia* regularly appears in English as *y*.

memoria, *memory*.

-tia as *-ce* (or *cy*).

diligentia, *diligence*.

-ium as *-y* (or *e*).

subsidium, *subsidy*.

-(t)iō as *(-t)ion*.

nātiō, *nation*.

-tūdō as *-tude*.

magnitūdō, *magnitude*.

-tās as *-ty*.

nōbilitās, *nobility*.

-tus often drops *-s*.

adventus, *advent*.

Some Latin suffixes do not often appear in any form in English words. Thus, *-tūs* may be seen as *-tue* in *virtue*, but it is rarely found in other words. *Servitude* does not come from *servitūs*.

7. Find the more important English derivatives from the following:

FIRST HALF YEAR

<i>Required</i>		<i>Optional</i>	
capiō	moveō	agō	pācō
dīcō	putō	cognōscō	parō
dūcō	servō	habēō	pugnō
locō	videō	iūdicō	spectō
mittō	vocō	moveō	teneō

SECOND HALF YEAR

<i>Required</i>		<i>Optional</i>	
audiō	scribō	audeō	pellō
doceō	sedeō	cōnsulō	pōnō
faciō	sūmō	dō	terreō
iaciō	timeō	fidō	trahō
nāvigō	vincō	mūniō	veniō

NOTE. It will be observed that a great many derivatives come from the past passive participle.

8. The following forms of arrangement for note-books for this work are suggested.

TYPE 1 (Without Definitions)

locō, locāre, locāvī, locātum—*place*. locate, local, locality, location, locus, collocate, collocation, dislocate, localization, localize, locally, locative, locomotive, locomotor.

TYPE 2 (With Definitions)

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum—*call*.
 vocation—a *calling*, occupation.
 vocational—pertaining to a vocation or *calling*.
 vocal—pertaining to voice.
 evoke—*call* out.
 convoke—*call* together.
 vocative—case of *calling*, case of address.
 revoke—*call* back, remand.
 invoke—*call* upon, ask for.
 vociferous—with large *calling* power, with loud tones.
 invocation—a *calling* upon, a prayer.

TYPE 3 (With Examples of Use in English)

- mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum—*send*. mission—He was sent on a mission to Europe.
- missionary—He was sent as a missionary to China.
- missive—The letter was a formidable missive.
- missile—Stones were the missiles of early warfare.
- transmit—They will transmit the message to us.
- remission—He preached the remission of sins.
- commit—She was committed to his care.
- submit—They submitted to the inevitable.
- submissive—The slave was not submissive.
- omit—Omit the non-essential.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, from, by
absēns, *absentis*, absent
absum, *abesse*, **āfui**, **āfutūrus**, be absent, be distant, be away
ac, *see* **atque**
accēdō, -ere, **accessi**, **accessum**, approach
accidō, -ere, **accidi**, happen
accipiō, -ere, **accēpi**, **acceptum**, receive, accept
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, accuse, censure
ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, spirited, fierce, bold, sharp, keen
Achāia, -ae, F., Achaia, a district of Greece
aciēs, -ēi, F., edge; line of battle, battle
ācritēr, *adv.*, fiercely, eagerly, spiritedly
ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward; near
adeō, *adv.*, to such an extent, so, so very
adgredior, **adgredi**, **adgressus sum**, approach; attack
adhībeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, summon
adhūc, *adv.*, as yet, to this time, before this time
adiciō, -ere, **adiēcī**, **adiectum**, add; throw to
adiungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūctum, join to, annex
adsum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, be present, be at hand
adsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -sur-
rēctum, rise
adulēscēns, -centis, M., young man

adveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventur, arrive, come up
adventus, -ūs, M., coming, arrival, approach
adversum, *prep. with acc.*, against
adversus, -a, -um, opposed, unsuccessful, unfavorable
aedificium, -ī, N., building
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build
Aegyptus, -ī, F., Egypt
Aemilius, -ī, M., Aemilius, a Roman name
aestās, -tātis, F., summer
aetās, -tātis, F., age
Āfrānius, -ī, M., Afranius, a Roman name
Āfrica, -ae, F., Africa
Āfricānus, -ī, M., Africanus, a name given to two of the Scipios because of their victories over the Carthaginians, a nation of northern Africa
ager, **agrī**, M., field, land
agmen, **agminis**, N., column, army; **novissimum agmen**, the rear line
agō, -ere, **ēgī**, **āctum**, do, drive
agricola, -ae, M., farmer
Albānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the inhabitants of Alba
albus, -a, -um, white
Alexandria, -ae, F., Alexandria
Algidus, -ī, M., Algidus, a mountain southeast of Rome
aliquis, **aliquid**, and **aliquī**, **aliqua**, **aliquod**, some one, some thing, some
alius, **alia**, **aliud**, another
Allia, -ae, F., the Allia, a small river north of Rome

Alpēs, -ium, F. pl., the Alps
alter, altera, alterum, the other;
 second

altitūdō, -dinis, F., height; depth
altus, -a, -um, high, tall, deep
ambō, ambae, ambō, both
ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, walk
amicitia, -ae, F., friendship
amicus, -ī, M., friend
āmittō, -ere, āmisi, āmissum, lose
amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, love
ampliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, increase,
 extend

amplius, comparative adv., more
ancilla, -ae, F., maid servant, serv-
 ant

Ancus, -ī, M., *see* **Mārcius**
angustus, -a, -um, narrow
animal, animālis, N., animal
animus, -ī, M., mind, courage,
 spirit

annus, -ī, M., year
annuus, -a, -um, lasting a year, for
 a year, yearly

ante, prep. with acc., before, in
 front of; **adv.,** before, previ-
 ously

anteā, adv., formerly, before

Antemnātēs, -ium, M. pl., the in-
 habitants of Antemnae

antiquus, -a, -um, old, ancient

ānulus, -ī, M., ring

Ap., abbreviation for **Appius, a**
Roman first name

appellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call,
 name

appropinquō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,
 approach

apud, prep. with acc., among, in
 the presence of; near; in, with

aqua, -ae, F., water

Aquitāni, -ōrum, M. pl., the Aquī-
 tanians, *a people of Gaul*

Arar, Araris, M., the Saône, *a*
river of Gaul

arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum,
 think

Ardea, -ae, F., Ardea, *a city of*
Latium

ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, take
 fire, burn

Arīminum, -ī, N., Ariminum, *a*
city in northeastern Italy

Ariovistus, -ī, M., Ariovistus, *a*
German king

arma, -ōrum, N. pl., arms, weapons
armātus, -a, -um, armed

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, arm

arō, arāre, arāvi, arātum, plow

arroganter, adv., insolently

Arrūns, Arruntis, M., Arruns, *a*
son of Tarquinius Superbus

Arvernī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Ar-
 verni, *a Gallic tribe*

ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēsum,
 ascend

atque (*before vowels or conso-*
nants) or **ac** (*before consonants*
only), **conj.,** and

tribuō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribū-
tum, assign

Atuātuci, -ōrum, M. pl., the Atua-
 tuci, *a Belgian tribe*

auctōritās, -tātis, F., authority, in-
 fluence

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, semi-depo-
nent, dare

audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, hear

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, increase,
 add to

aureus, -a, -um, golden, of gold

aurum, -ī, N., gold

Aurunculēius, -ī, M., Aurunculeius, a Roman name; Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's officers

auspicium, -ī, N., auspices, sign
autem, conj., but, however; more-over

auxilium, -ī, N., aid, help; pl., auxiliaries

Aventinus, -a, -um, Aventine; **Aventinus Mōns**, the Aventine Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome

āvertō, -ere, āvertī, āversum, turn away

Axona, -ae, F., the Aisne, a river of France

B

barbarus, -ī, M., barbarian, foreigner (not Greek or Roman)

Belgae, -ārum, M. pl., the Belgians
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, engage in war, carry on war

Bellovacī, -ōrum, the Bellovaci, a tribe of Gaul

bellum, -ī, N., war

bene, adv., well

beneficium, -ī, N., favor, kindness

benignus, -a, -um, kind

Bibracte, **Bibractis**, N., Bibracte, a town of the Haeduan

Bibrax, **Bibractis**, F., Bibrax, a town of the Remi

Bibulus, -ī, M., Bibulus, a Roman name

bis, adv., twice

Bōiī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Boii, a Gallic tribe

bonus, -a, -um, good

bōs, **bovis**, M., F., ox, cow; pl., cattle

brevis, **breve**, short

Britannia, -ae, F., Britain, Great Britain

Britannī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Britons

Britannicus, -a, -um, British

Brūtus, -ī, M., Brutus, a Roman name; Lucius Junius Brutus, one of the first two consuls at Rome

C

C., abbreviation for **Gāius**, a Roman first name

caedēs, **caedis**, F., slaughter, massacre

caedō, -ere, **cecīdī**, **caesum**, cut down; kill, vanquish

Caelius, -a, -um, Caelian; **Caelius Mōns**, the Caelian Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome

Caenīnēnsēs, -ium, M. pl., the inhabitants of Caenina

Caesar, **Caesaris**, M., Caesar, a Roman name; Gaius Julius Caesar, a famous Roman soldier and statesman

calamitās, -tātis, F., calamity, disaster

calcar, **calcāris**, N., spur

Camillus, -ī, M., Camillus, a Roman name; Furius Camillus, the conqueror of Veii

Campānia, -ae, F., Campania, a district lying southeast of Latium

capiō, -ere, **cēpī**, **captum**, take, capture; **cōnsilium capere**, form a plan

Capitōlium, -ī, N., (1) the Capitol, the temple of Jupiter at Rome on the Capitoline Hill; (2) the Capitoline Hill

- captivus**, -ī, M., (*captiva*, -ae, F.),
captive, prisoner
- caput**, *capitis*, N., head
- Carrae**, -ārum, F. *pl.*, Carrhae, a
city of Asia
- carrus**, -ī, M., cart
- cārus**, -a, -um, dear
- Casca**, -ae, M., Casca, a Roman
name
- Cassius**, -ī, M., Cassius, a Roman
name; Lucius Cassius, a Roman
consul who was killed in battle
with the Helvetians
- castellum**, -ī, N., fort, redoubt
- castra**, -ōrum, N. *pl.*, camp
- Catō**, -ōnis, M., Cato, a Roman
name
- causa**, -ae, F., cause, reason; *abl.*,
for the sake of, for the pur-
pose of
- cēdō**, -ere, *cessī*, *cessum*, yield, re-
treat, withdraw
- celeritās**, -tātis, F., speed
- celeriter**, *adv.*, swiftly, rapidly,
quickly
- cēlō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, conceal
- Celtae**, -ārum, M. *pl.*, the Celts
- cēnsus**, -ūs, M., census, enumeration
- centēnī**, -ae, -a, *distributive num.*,
a hundred each, a hundred
- centum**, *indecl. num.*, one hundred
- centuriō**, -ōnis, M., centurion, an
officer in the Roman army
- certāmen**, *certāminis*, N., struggle
- certō**, *adv.*, certainly, at any rate,
at least
- certus**, -a, -um, certain
- cessō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, cease, be
unused, fall into disuse
- cēteri**, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the rest, the
others
- Cimberius**, -ī, M., Cimberius, a
German chief
- Cincinnātus**, -ī, M., a Roman name;
Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus, the
famous dictator
- cingō**, -ere, *cīnxī*, *cīnctum*, sur-
round
- circā**, *prep. with acc.*, near, about
- circiter**, *adv.*, and *prep. with acc.*,
about
- circuitus**, -ūs, M., circuit, circum-
ference
- circum**, *prep. with acc.*, around
- circumdō**, -dare, -dedī, -datum,
surround
- circumveniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, surround
- circus**, -ī, M., circle, enclosure for
sports, race course
- citerior**, *citerius*, *comparative adj.*,
nearer, hither
- citrā**, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of
- cīvilis**, -e, belonging to citizens,
civil; courteous
- cīvis**, *civis*, M., F., citizen
- cīvitās**, -tātis, F., state, city
- clārus**, -a, -um, famous, distin-
guished
- Claudius**, -ī, M., Claudius, a Roman
name
- claudō**, -ere, *clausī*, *clausum*, close
- Cleopatra**, -ae, F., Cleopatra, queen
of Egypt
- cliēns**, *clientis*, M., dependent
- cloāca**, -ae, F., sewer
- Cn.**, abbreviation for Gnaeus, a
Roman first name
- coepī**, *coepisse*, *coeptum*, *defective*
verb, began
- coerceō**, -ēre, -uī, -itum, restrain
- cognōscō**, -ere, *cognōvī*, *cognitum*,
find out; *perf.*, know

cōgō, -ere, cōēgī, cōāctum, collect, compel

cohors, cohortis, F., cohort, a *division of the legion*

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge, encourage

Collātinus, -ī, M., a *Roman name*; Tarquinius Collatinus, *one of the first two consuls at Rome*

collēga, -ae, M., colleague

colligō, -ere, collēgī, collēctum, collect

collis, -is, M., hill

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, place, station

colloquium, -ī, N., conference, interview

colloquor, colloquī, collocūtus sum, confer, converse

colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, till, cultivate

commeātus, -ūs, M., supplies

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call to mind, mention

comminus, *adv.*, hand to hand

committō, -mittere, -misī, -misum, unite, do; proelium committere, begin battle

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, stir up, arouse

communis, -e, common

compāreō, -ēre, -uī, appear, be seen

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, prepare, get ready

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill, fill up, complete

complūrēs, -a (-ia), several, some

compōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, arrange, settle

comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsu, seize

concidō, -ere, concidī, fall, be slain

concidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut to pieces, kill

concilium, -ī, N., council

conditor, -tōris, M., founder

condiciō, -ōnis, F., condition, terms

condō, -ere, condidī, conditum, found, build; put away

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, pardon

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, bring together, collect

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, collect; sē cōnferre, to withdraw

cōnficiō, -ere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, finish, complete

cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, *semi-deponent*, trust

cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossu, stab

cōnfusus, -a, -um, confused, lacking order

congregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, collect

cniciō, -ere, coniēcī, coniectum, throw

coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūntum, unite

coniūrātus, -ī, M., a conspirator

coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, league together, conspire, plot

cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum, try, attempt

cōnscribō, -ere, cōnscripsī, cōnscriptum, enroll

consecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, dedicate, deify

cōnsenēscō, -ere, cōnsenuī, grow old

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, protect, spare

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., Considius, an officer in Caesar's army
considō, -ere, consēdī, consessum, encamp
cōnsilium, -ī, N., plan, counsel, judgment, advice
cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, perceive, see, catch sight of
cōstituō, -ere, cōstituī, cōstitūtum, decide, determine; establish, appoint; construct; station, draw up
cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, F., habit, practice, usage
cōnsul, cōsulis, M., consul, one of the two chief magistrates of Rome, elected annually
cōsulāris, -e, consular, of the consul; masculine as noun, ex-consul
cōsulātus, -ūs, M., consulship
contendō, -ere, contendī, contentum, fight, contend; hasten, go to
contentiō, -ōnis, F., struggle
contentus, -a, -um, contented, satisfied
contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, restrain
contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against
contrādicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, oppose
conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, come together, assemble
convertō, -ere, convertī, conversum, turn, change; signa convertere, wheel about
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call together, summon
cōpia, -ae, F., plenty, supply; *pl.*, forces, troops

Coriolī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, Corioli, a town in Latium
Cornēlia, -ae, F., Cornelia, name of a girl or woman
Cornēlius, -ī, M., Cornelius, a Roman name
cornū, cornūs, N., horn; wing (of an army)
corpus, corporis, N., body
corrumpō, -ere, corrūpī, corruptum, destroy, corrupt, seduce
cotidiē, *adv.*, daily, every day
Crassus, -ī, M., Crassus, a Roman name; Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of the members of the First Triumvirate
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, numerous
crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditum, believe
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, create; elect, appoint
Crustumīnī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the inhabitants of Crustumerium
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with
cum, *conj.*, when, since, although
cupiditās, -tātis, F., desire
cupidus, -a, -um, desirous, fond
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, wish, desire
cūr, *adv.*, why?
cūria, -ae, F., the senate house

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, condemn
dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, about, concerning (*original meaning*, down from)
dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, owe, ought
dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, withdraw; die
decem, *indecl. num.*, ten
decemvir, -ī, M., decemvir, a mem-

ber of a body of officials consisting of ten men

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum,
decide; decree, vote

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight to
a finish; **proeliō dēcertāre,** fight
a (decisive) battle

decimus, -a, -um, tenth

dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditum, yield,
surrender, give up

dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsū,
defend

dēfēnsor, -sōris, M., defender

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, re-
port; confer, bestow

dēfessus, -a, -um, tired out, ex-
hausted

dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectum, cast
down, dislodge; disappoint

deinde, adv., next, thereupon, then

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy,
blot out

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, se-
lect, choose

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show,
point out

dēmum, adv., at last

dēnique, adv., finally

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, lay
waste

dēprecātiō, -ōnis, F., warding off
by prayer, pleading

**dēscribō, -scribere, -scripī, -scrip-
tum,** mark off, divide

dēsērō, -ere, dēsēruī, dēsertum,
desert, abandon

dētergeō, -tergēre, -tersī, -tersum,
wipe away

dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, prevent,
deter, hinder

deus, -ī, M., a god

dexter, -tra, -trum, right, right
hand

dīcō, -ere, dixī, dictum, say

dictātor, -tōris, M., dictator

dictātūra, -ae, F., dictatorship

diēs, -ēī, M. and F., day

difficilis, -e, difficult

difficultās, -tātis, F., difficulty

dignitās, -tātis, F., dignity, au-
thority, official position, rank

diligenter, adv., diligently

dīmiciātiō, -ōnis, F., struggle

dīmiciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fight,
struggle

dīmittō, -ere, dīmisi, dīmissum,
send away, dismiss

dīripiō, -ere, dīripiū, dīreptum,
tear apart; plunder

discēdō, -cedere, -cessī, -cessum,
withdraw

dītissimus, -a, -um, superlative
adj., richest

diū, adv., long, for a long time

diūturnitās, -tātis, F., long dura-
tion

dīves, gen. dīvītis, wealthy, rich

Diviciācus, -ī, M., Diviciacus, a
Haeduan chief

dīvidō, -ere, dīvisī, dīvisum, di-
vide, separate

dīvisus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj.,
divided

dō, dare, dedi, datum, give

doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctum, teach,
tell

domicillium, -ī, N., home, dwelling
place, residence

dominus, -ī, M., master

domō, -āre, -uī, -itum, subdue

domus, -ūs, F., house, home

dōnum, -ī, N., gift, present

dubietās, -tātis, F., doubt

ducenti, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, two hundred

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, lead; construct; consider, think

dum, *conj.*, until; while

Dumnorix, -igis, M., Dumnorix, a Haeduan chief

duo, duae, duo, *numeral adj.*, two

duodecim, *numeral adj.*, twelve

duodēviginti, *numeral adj.*, eighteen

duodecimus, -a, -um, twelfth

duplicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, double

dux, ducis, M., leader, guide; general

E

ē, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from

ēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead out

efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectum, bring about, cause

ego, mei, *personal pronoun*, I (*pl.*, nōs)

ēgredior, ēgredi, ēgressus sum, go out from, set out, depart

ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectum, drive out

emō, emere, emī, emptum, buy

enim, *conj. (post positive)*, for

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, make known, report, disclose

eō, ire, ivi or ii, itum, go

eō, *adv.*, to that place, there (*with expressions of motion*)

Ēpirus, -ī, F., Epirus, a district of Greece

epistula, -ae, F., letter

eques, equitis, M., cavalryman, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry

equitātus, -ūs, M., cavalry

equus, -ī, M., horse

ergō, *adv.*, therefore

errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wander

Ēsquilinus, -ī, M., the Esquiline, one of the seven hills of Rome

et, *conj.*, and

etiam, *adv.*, even, also

Euphrātēs, -is, M., the Euphrates

ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, escape

excēdō, -ere, excēssī, excessum, withdraw, go out

excidium, -ī, N., downfall, destruction

excidō, -ere, excidī, excisum, demolish

exeō, -ire, -ii or -ivi, -itum, go forth, go out of, go from

exercitātus, -a, -um, trained

exercitus, -ūs, M., army

exigō, -ere, exēgī, exactum, drive out

exiguus, -a, -um, small

existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think

cxōrdium, -ī, M., beginning, origin

expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsum, drive out

expōrior, -iri, expertus sum, try

cxpōrātor, -tōris, M., scout

expōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, explore

expugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, take by storm, capture

exsecrandus, -a, -um, detestable

cxspectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wait for, expect

exulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, be in exile

extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, farthest part of, last

F

Fabius, -ī, M., Fabius, a Roman name

Fabius, -a, -um, of the Fabii, Fabian

facile, *adv.*, easily
facilis, -e, easy
faciō, -ere, **fēcī**, **factum**, make, do
factiō, **factiōnis**, *F.*, faction, party
facultās, -tātis, *F.*, opportunity, supply
Falisci, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, Falerii, a city of Etruria
famēs, **famis**, *F.*, hunger
familia, -ae, *F.*, household, family
fātāliter, *adv.*, according to fate, by the decree of fate
Faustus, -ī, *M.*, Faustus, a Roman name
faveō, -ēre, **fāvī**, **fautūrus**, favor
fēlix, **fēlicis**, happy, fortunate
fēmina, -ae, *F.*, woman
ferē, *adv.*, nearly, about
fermē, *adv.*, about
ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, bear, carry, bring
ferus, -a, -um, fierce
Fidēnae, -ārum, *F. pl.*, Fidenae, an ancient town near Rome
Fidēnātēs, -ium, *M. pl.*, the inhabitants of Fidenae
fidēs, -eī, *F.*, faith, confidence
filia, -ae, *F.*, daughter
filius, -ī, *M.*, son
fīnis, -is, *M.*, limit, end; *pl.*, territories, boundaries
finitimus, -a, -um, neighboring;
finitimī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, neighbors
fiō, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *used as passive of facio*, be made, be done; happen, become
firmus, -a, -um, firm
fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētum**, weep
flētus, -ūs, *M.*, weeping
flūctus, -ūs, *M.*, wave
flūmen, **flūminis**, *N.*, river
fluō, -ere, **flūxī**, **flūxum**, flow

fortis, -e, brave
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
fortūna, -ae, *F.*, fortune
fossa, -ae, *F.*, ditch
frāter, **frātris**, *M.*, brother
frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain;
rēs frūmentāria, grain supply, provisions
frūmentum, -ī, *M.*, grain
fuga, -ae, *F.*, flight
fugiō, -ere, **fūgī**, **fugitūrus**, flee
fugō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, put to flight, rout
fulmen, **fulminis**, *N.*, thunderbolt
fundō, -ere, **fūdī**, **fūsum**, pour out, shed
Fūrius, -ī, *M.*, Furius, a Roman name

G

Gabiī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, Gabii, an old city of Latium
Gallia, -ae, *F.*, Gaul
Gallus, -ī, *M.*, a Gaul
gaudeō, -ēre, **gāvisus sum**, rejoice, be glad
Genava, -ae, *F.*, Geneva
gener, **generī**, *M.*, son-in-law
genitus, -a, -um, sprung from, descended from
gēns, **gentis**, *F.*, tribe, nation, race
genus, **generis**, *N.*, birth; family
Germānia, -ae, *F.*, Germany
Germānī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Germans
gerō, -ere, **gessī**, **gestum**, carry;
bellum gerere, wage war
gladius, -ī, *M.*, sword
glōria, -ae, *F.*, glory
glōrior, -ārī, **glōriātus sum**, boast
Graecia, -ae, *F.*, Greece

grātia, -ae, *F.*, favor, good will, gratitude
grātus, -a, -um, pleasing
gravis, -e, heavy, serious, hard to bear
graviter, *adv.*, heavily, severely
gravor, -ārī, **gravātus sum**, be unwilling

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, have, hold
habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, live, dwell
Haeduus, -ī, *M.*, a Haeduan; *pl.*, the Haeduans, *a tribe of Gaul*
Helvētīī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Helvetians
Hibernia, -ae, *F.*, Ireland
hic, **haec**, **hoc**, this; *pl.*, these
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, spend the winter
hinc, *adv.*, from here, from this point, after this
Hispania, -ae, *F.*, Spain
hodiō, *adv.*, today
homō, **hominis**, *M.*, man, human being
honestus, -a, -um, honorable
honor, -ōris, *M.*, honor, office
hōra, -ae, *F.*, hour
Horātius, -ī, *M.*, Horatius, *a Roman name*; Horatius Pulvillus, *successor to Lucretius Tricipitinus in the consulship*
hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, urge, encourage
hortus, -ī, *M.*, garden
Hostilius, -ī, *M.*, Hostilius, *a Roman name*
hostis, -is, *M. and F.*, enemy, public enemy; *pl.*, the enemy

I

iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw
iam, *adv.*, now, already
Iāniculum, -ī, *N.*, the Janiculum.
a hill west of the Tiber
ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place
Iccius, -ī, *M.*, Iccius, *a chief of the Remi*
(icō), **icere**, **icī**, **ictum**, strike
idem, **eadem**, **idem**, same, the same
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable, appropriate
igitur, *adv.*, therefore
ignis, -is, *M.*, fire
ille, **illa**, **illud**, that; *pl.*, those
Illyricum, -ī, *N.*, Illyria, *a region bordering on the eastern coast of the Adriatic Sea*
immānis, -e, enormous, very great; fierce
impedimentum, -ī, *N.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage
impediō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, hinder
impeditus, -a, -um, impeded, hindered, at a disadvantage
impendeō, -ēre, overhang, impend
imperium, -ī, *N.*, power, authority, command, supreme power; reign
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, command, order; govern, rule
impetus, -ūs, *M.*, attack, impetuosity, violence
impiger, -gra, -grum, energetic, industrious
impigrē, *adv.*, industriously, energetically
impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, complete, finish
implorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, entreat, ask for, ask, implore

imprōvisō, *adv.*, unexpectedly
in, *prep. with acc.*, into
in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on
incendō, -ere, **incendī**, **incēsum**,
 set on fire, burn
inchoō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, begin
incipiō, -ere, **incēpī**, **inceptum**,
 begin
incognitus, -a, -um, unknown
incolō, -ere, **incoluī**, inhabit
incolumis, -e, safe
incrēdibilis, -e, incredible
incursus, -ūs, *M.*, attack
incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, reprimand
inde, *adv.*, from that place, from
 there; next
indiciū, -ī, *M.*, disclosure, infor-
 mation; **per indiciū**, through
 informers
inferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, bring
 upon, cause, arouse; **bellum**
inferre, make war on
infinītus, -a, -um, countless
ingēns, *gen. ingentis*, huge, very
 great
ingredior, **ingredī**, **ingressus sum**,
 go into, enter, invade; some-
 times followed by **intrā** and *ac-*
cusative
inimicus, -a, -um, unfriendly,
 hostile
inimicus, -ī, *M.*, enemy
inīquus, -a, -um, unfavorable, un-
 just
iniūria, -ae, *F.*, injury, injustice,
 wrong, affront
innumerus, -a, -um, countless, in-
 numerable
insidiae, -ārum, *F. pl.*, treachery;
 plot, ambush
insigne, **insignis**, *N.*, badge, deco-
 ration

īsolēns, *gen.*, **īsolentis**, arrogant
īsolenter, *adv.*, insolently
īstituō, -ere, **īstituī**, **īstitutum**,
 set up, establish
īstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūc-
 tum, draw up, arrange
īnsula, -ae, *F.*, island
integer, -gra, -grum, whole, entire
intellegō, -ere, **intellēxī**, **intellēc-**
tum, know
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between,
 among
interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clū-
 sum, cut off
intereā, *adv.*, meanwhile
interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,
 kill
interim, *adv.*, meanwhile
intervenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
 tum, come between, intervene
intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within, into
intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter
intueor, -ērī, **intuitus sum**, look at,
 look upon
inveniō, -venīre, -vōnī, -ventum,
 find
invicem or in vicem, *adv.*, in turn,
 in succession
invidia, -ae, *F.*, envy, hatred, un-
 popularity
invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, invite
invītus, -a, -um, unwilling
ipse, **ipsa**, **ipsum**, himself, herself,
 itself
irātus, -a, -um, angry, angry at
is, **ea**, **id**, this, that; **he**, **she**, **it**
iste, **ista**, **istud**, that of yours,
 that
ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in such a way
Ītalia, -ae, *F.*, Italy
itaque, *adv.*, and so, accordingly
item, *adv.*, also

- iter, itineris, N.,** journey, march, road, route
iterum, adv., again
Iuba, -ae, M., Juba, *an African king*
iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum, order, command
iūdex, iūdicis, M., judge
iūgerum, -ī (gen. pl., iūgerum), N., juger, acre (*a little less than two-thirds of an English acre*)
iūgum, -ī, N., yoke; ridge (*of hills or mountains*)
Iūlius, -ī, M., Julius, *a Roman name*
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iunctum, join, annex
Iūnius, -ī, M., Junius, *a Roman name*
Iuppiter, Iovis, M., Jupiter
iūstitia, -ae, F., justice
iuvenilis, -e, youthful
iuvenis, -is, M., young man
iuvo, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, help, assist
- L**
- L.,** abbreviation for **Lūcius, a Roman first name.**
Labiēnus, -ī, M., Labienus, *an officer in Caesar's army*
labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, labor, work, suffer
laccessō, -ere, laccessīvī, laccessitum, harass, attack
lacrima, -ae, F., tear
lacrimābilis, -e, lamentable
lapis, lapidis, M., stone
Larcius, -ī, M., Larcius, *a Roman name*
lātē, adv., widely, extensively
lateō, -ēre, -uī, lurk, remain concealed
- Latīnī, -ōrum, M. pl.,** the Latins, *the inhabitants of Latium*
lātītūdō, -inis, F., width
latrō, latrōnis, M., brigand, robber
latus, lateris, N., side, flank
lātus, -a, -um, wide
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, praise
laus, laudis, F., praise
lēgātus, -ī, M., lieutenant, envoy
legiō, legiōnis, F., legion
legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, choose; read
lēx, lēgis, F., law
Lepidus, -ī, M., Lepidus, *a Roman name*
liber, librī, M., book
liber, libera, liberum, free
liberāliter, adv., generously, graciously
liberī, -ōrum, M. pl., children (*the free members of the household*)
liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, free, release, extricate
libertās, -tātis, F., liberty
licet, licēre, licuit, *impersonal verb, it is permitted*
Licinius, -ī, M., Licinius, *a Roman name*
locus, -ī, M. (usually neuter in pl.), place
longē, adv., far, at a distance, by far
longitūdō, -inis, F., length
longus, -a, -um, long
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, speak
lōrica, -ae, F., coat of mail
Lucrētia, -ae, F., Lucretia, *a Roman matron whose suicide, because of having suffered outrage from the son of Tarquinius Superbus, caused the expulsion of the kings from Rome*

Lucrētius, -ī, M., *Lucretius, a Roman name; Spurius Lucretius Tricipitinus, one of the early consuls at Rome*

lūdus, -ī, M., *game, sport*

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, *mourn, mourn for*

lūna, -ae, F., *moon*

lūx, lūcis, F., *light*

M

M., *abbreviation for Mārcus, a Roman first name*

Macedonia, -ae, F., *Macedonia*

magis, adv. (comparative of magnopere), *more*

magister -trī, M., *master; magister equitum, master of the horse*

magnitūdō, -inis, F., *size, greatness, magnitude*

magnopere, adv., *greatly*

magnus, -a, -um, *large; Pompēius*

Magnus, Pompey the Great

male, adv., *badly*

mālō, mālī, mālūī, *prefer*

malus, -a, -um, *bad, wicked, injurious, harmful*

Mām., *abbreviation for Māmercus, a Roman first name*

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain*

manus, -ūs, F., *hand, band, company*

Mārcellus, -ī, M., *Marcellus, a Roman name*

Mārcius, -ī, M., *a Roman name; Aneus Marcius, the fourth king of Rome*

mare maris, N., *sea*

maritus, -ī, M., *husband*

Marius, ī, M., *Marius, a Roman name*

Mārs, Mārtis, M., *Mars, the Roman god of war*

mater, mātis, F., *mother*

mātrōna, -ae, F., *matron, married woman*

Mauritānia, -ae, F., *Mauretania, a country of Africa*

maximē, adv., *superl. of magnopere*

medius, -a, -um, *middle, the middle of; in mediō colle, half way up the hill*

meminī, meminisse, *defective verb, remember*

memoria, -ae, F., *memory*

mens, mentis, F., *mind, disposition, attitude*

mēnsis, mēnsis, M., *month*

mereor, merēri, meritus sum, *deserve*

metus, -ūs, M., *fear*

meus, -a, -um, *mine*

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *depart*

mīles, mīlitis, M., *soldier*

mīllārium, -ī, N., *milestone*

mīlitāris, -e, *military; rēs mīlitāris, warfare, military science*

mīlitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *serve as a soldier*

mille, indecl. num., *a thousand*

minimē, adv. (superlative of parum), *least*

minus, adv. (comparative), *less*

miser, misera, miserum, *unhappy, unfortunate*

Mithridātēs, -is, M., *Mithridates*

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, *send*

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *warn, advise, remind*

mōns, montis, M., *mountain*

mora, -ae, F., *delay*

morbus, -ī, M., *disease*

mōrior, mōrī, mortuus sum, die
 moror, mōrārī, mōrātus sum, delay
 mors, mortis, *F.*, death
 mōs, mōris, *M.*, custom
 moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, move,
 cause, stir up
 mox, *adv.*, soon, afterwards
 multitūdō, -inis, *F.*, large number,
 multitude
 multus, -a, -um, much; *pl.*, many
 Munda, -ae, *F.*, Munda, a city of
 Spain
 mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, fortify
 mūrus, -ī, *M.*, wall
 mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, change

N

nam, *conj.*, for
 nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, be born
 Nasua, -ae, *M.*, Nasua, a German
 chief
 nātiō, -ōnis, *F.*, nation, inhabitant
 of a state
 nātūra, -ae, *F.*, nature
 nātus, -a, -um, *see* nāscor
 nauta, -ae, *M.*, sailor
 nāvis, -is, *F.*, ship, boat
 nē, *adv.*, not; *conj.*, that . . . not
 nec, *see* neque
 necessitās, -tātis, *F.*, necessity, ur-
 gency
 necō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, kill
 nēmō, *dat.* nēminī (*no gen or abl.*),
M., no one
 nepōs, nepōtis, *M.*, grandson
 Nilus, -ī, *M.*, the Nile
 neque or nec, *conj.*, nor, and . . .
 not; neque . . . neque, neither
 . . . nor
 Nervii, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Nervii,
 a tribe of Belgians

nesciō, -ire, -ivī, not know
 neuter, -tra, -trum, neither
 nihīl, *N. indecl.*, nothing
 nisi, *conj.*, unless
 nōbilis, -e, well known, of noble
 birth
 nōbilitās, -tātis, *F.*, nobility, the
 nobles, aristocracy
 noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum (*with da-*
tive), injure
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling,
 not wish
 nōmen, rōminis, *N.*, name
 nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, name,
 call
 nōn, *adv.*, not
 nōnāgēsīmus, -a, -um, ninetyeth
 nōndum, *adv.*, not yet
 nōn numquam, *adv.*, sometimes
 nōnus, -a, -um, ninth
 noster, nostra, nostrum, our, ours
 novem, *indecl. num.*, nine
 Noviodūnum, -ī, *N.*, Noviodunum,
 a town of Gaul
 novissīmus, -a, -um, superlative of
 novus, newest, last; novissīmum
 agmen, rear line
 novus, -a, -um, new
 nox, noctis, *F.*, night
 nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, strip,
 leave unprotected
 nullus, -a, -um, no, none
 Numa, -ae, *M.*, Numa, a Roman
 name; Numa Pompilius, the
 second king of Rome
 numerus, -ī, *M.*, number
 nummus, -ī, *M.*, coin, money
 numquam, *adv.*, never
 nunc, *adv.*, now
 nūntius, -ī, *M.*, message, messen-
 ger

O

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of
oblīviscor, **oblīviscī**, **oblītus sum**,
 forget

obsequor, **-sequī**, **-secūtus sum**,
 yield to, submit to, be under
 the authority of

obses, **obsidis**, *M.*, hostage

obsideō, **-sidēre**, **-sēdī**, **-sessum**, be-
 siege, blockade

Ōceanus, **-ī**, *M.*, the ocean

occidō, **-ere**, **occidī**, **occisum**, kill

occupō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, seize,
 take possession of

Ocelum, **-ī**, *N.*, Ocelum, a town of
 Gaul

octāvus, **-a**, **-um**, eighth; **octāvus**
decimus, eighteenth

octō, *indecl. num.*, eight

octōgintā, *indecl. num.*, eighty

oculus, **-ī**, *M.*, eye

ōlim, *adv.*, formerly, once

ōmen, **ōminis**, *N.*, omen

omnīnō, *adv.*, at all

omnis, **-e**, all, every

onus, **oneris**, *N.*, burden, weight

opīniō, **-ōnis**, *F.*, opinion, expect-
 ation, belief

oportet, **cportēre**, **cportuit**, *imper-*
sonal verb, it is necessary (*trans-*
lated as personal verb, one ought)

oppidānus, **-ī**, *M.*, a townsman, in-
 habitant of a town

oppidum, **-ī**, *N.*, town

ōppugnō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, attack

opus, **operis**, *N.*, work, labor, task

orbis, **orbis**, *M.*, circle; **orbis ter-**
rārūm, the world

ōrdinō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, arrange

ōrdō, **ōrdinis**, *M.*, order, rank

Orgetorix, **-īgis**, *M.*, Orgetorix, a
Helvetian chief

Oriēns, **Orientis**, *M.*, the East, the
 Orient

orior, **-īrī**, **ortus sum**, arise, spring
 up

Crōdēs, **-is**, *M.*, Orodes, a king of
 the Parthians

ōstium, **-ī**, *N.*, door, mouth

P

P., *abbreviation for Pūblius*

pābulum, **-ī**, *N.*, forage, fodder

pācō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, subdue,
 make peaceful

paene, *adv.*, almost

Palaeopharsālus, **-ī**, *M.*, Old Phar-
 salus

Palātīnus, **-a**, **-um**, Palatine

pandō, **-ere**, **pandī**, **passum**, stretch
 out, hold out

parātus, **-a**, **-um**, prepared

parcō, **-ere**, **pepercī**, **parsum**, spare

parō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, prepare

pars, **partis**, *F.*, part

Parthī, **-ōrum**, *M. pl.*, the Parthi-
 ans

parum, *adv.*, too little, not enough

parvus, **-a**, **-um**, small

passus, **-ūs**, *M.*, pace (4 ft. 10½
 in.); **mille passūs** or **passuum**,
 one mile

pateō, **-ēre**, **-uī**, extend, be open

pater, **patris**, *M.*, father

patior, **patī**, **passus sum**, permit,
 allow

patria, **-ae**, *F.*, native land, coun-
 try

patrimōnium, **-ī**, *N.*, inheritance

paucī, **-ae**, **-a** (*sing. rarely used*),
 few; *M. pl. as noun*, a few

paulisper, *adv.*, for a little while

paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat
 pauper, *gen.*, pauperis, poor
 pax, pācis, *F.*, peace
 pecūnia, -ae, *F.*, money
 pedes, peditis, *M.*, foot soldier;
pl., infantry
 pedester, -tris, -tre, on foot, foot,
 infantry (*as adjective*)
 Pedius, -ī, *M.*, a Roman name;
 Q. Pedius, one of Caesar's offi-
 cers
 pellō, -ere, pepulī, puisum, rout,
 put to flight, drive out
 per, *prep. with acc.*, through, by
 means of
 pereō, -ire, -iī, -itum, perish, die
 perditus, -a, -um, desperate, ruined
 perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditum, lose
 perficiō, -ere, perfēcī, perfectum,
 complete
 periculōsus, -a, -um, dangerous
 periculum, -ī, *N.*, danger
 permaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mān-
 sum, continue, remain
 Persae, -ārum, *M. pl.*, Persians
 persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suā-
 sum, persuade
 perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, frighten
 thoroughly
 pertineō, -ēre, -uī, extend, pertain
 perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, throw
 into confusion or disorder
 perveniō, -ire, pervēnī, perven-
 tum, arrive
 pēs, pedis, *M.*, foot
 petō, -ere, petivī or petiī, petītum,
 seek, ask for, beg for, go to
 Petrēius, -ī, *M.*, Petreius, a Roman
 name
 phalanx, phalangis, *F.*, phalanx
 Pharnacēs, -is, *M.*, Pharnaces
 piger, pigra, pigrum, lazy

pilum, -ī, *N.*, javelin
 placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, please
 plēbs, plēbis, *F.*, the common peo-
 ple, plebeians
 plēnus, -a, -um, full
 plūrimus, -a, -um, *see multus*
 poena, -ae, *F.*, punishment, pen-
 alty
 polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum,
 promise
 Pōmētia, -ae, *F.*, *see Suessa*
 Pompēius, -ī, *M.*, Pompey, a fa-
 mous Roman general
 Pompilius, -ī, *M.*, *see Numa*
 pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, place,
 locate, pitch (a camp)
 pōns, pontis, *M.*, bridge
 Pontus, -ī, *M.*, Pontus, a country
 of Asia Minor
 populus, -ī, *M.*, people
 Percius, -ī, *M.*, Porcius, a Roman
 name
 Porsenna, -ae, *M.*, Porsenna, a
 king of Etruria
 porta, -ae, *F.*, gate
 portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, carry
 poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand
 possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum,
 possess, hold
 possum, posse, potuī, be able, can
 post, *prep. with acc.*, behind, after;
as adv., afterwards
 posteā, *adv.*, afterwards
 posterus, -a, -um, the following
 postquam, *conj.*, after
 postrems, -a, -um, (*superl. of pos-*
terus), last; ad postrēmum, at
 last
 postridiē, *adv.*, the next day
 postulātum, -ī, *N.*, demand
 postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, demand,
 ask

potēns, *gen.*, potentis, powerful
 potentia, -ae, *F.*, power, influence
 potestās, -tātis, *F.*, power
 potior, potiri, potitus sum, gain
 possession of
 praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum,
 surpass, excel
 praecipuē, *adv.*, especially
 praecipuus, -a, -um, distinguished,
 chief
 praeda, -ae, *F.*, booty, spoil
 praedicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, boast,
 announce
 praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,
 put in command of
 praemittō, -mittere, -misi, missum,
 send ahead
 praemium, -i, *N.*, reward
 praeparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, pre-
 pare, make preparations for
 praesēns, *gen.*, praesentis, pres-
 ent, in person
 praestāns, *gen.*, praestantis, dis-
 tinguished, prominent
 praestō, -stāre, -stiti, -stātum,
transitive, furnish, bestow; *in-*
trans., surpass
 praesum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, be
 in charge or command of
 praeter, *prep. with acc.*, beyond,
 more than /
 praetereā, *adv.*, besides
 praetextus, -a, -um, bordered
 praetōrius, -i, *M.*, ex-praetor
 premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, press,
 press hard; oppress
 primō, *adv.*, at first
 primum, *adv.*, first
 primus, -a, -um, first
 princeps, principis, *M.*, leader,
 chief
 principātus, -i, *M.*, leadership

prior, prius, *comparative adjective*,
 former, first
 Priscus, -i, *see* Tarquinius
 pristinus, -a, -um, former, old time
 prius, *adv.*, previously
 priusquam, *conj.*, before
 privātus, -i, *M.*, a private citizen
 prō, *prep. with abl.*, in front of;
 for, on behalf of, in place of
 probō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, approve,
 approve of
 prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum,
 advance
 prōcurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum,
 run forward
 prōducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum,
 lead out
 proelium, -i, *N.*, battle
 profectiō, -ōnis, *F.*, setting out,
 departure
 proficiscor, proficisci, profectus
 sum, set out
 prohibeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, keep
 back, prevent, restrain
 prōmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum,
 promise
 prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mō-
 tum, move forward
 properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten
 propinquus, -a, -um, neighboring,
 near
 prōpōnō, -ere, prōposui, prōposi-
 tum, point out, explain, offer
 proprius, -a, -um, own, special
 propter, *prep. with acc.*, on ac-
 count of
 prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfu-
 tūrus, benefit
 prōvincia, -ae, *F.*, province; the
 Province, the southeastern part
 of Gaul

prōvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, rush forth
proximē, *adv.*, last, most recently
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, next, very near
Ptolemaeus, -ī, *M.*, Ptolemy
Pūblicola, -ae, *M.*, Publicola, a Roman name; Lucius Valerius Publicola, one of the early consuls at Rome
pudicitia, -ae, *F.*, chastity, virtue, honor
puella, -ae, *F.*, girl
puer, -ī, *M.*, boy
puerilis, -e, childish, youthful
pugna, -ae, *F.*, fight, battle
pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, fight, engage in battle
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful
Pulvillus, -ī, *M.*, see Horātius
putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, think, consider

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quīntus**, a Roman first name
quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um, fortieth
quadrāgintā, *indecl. num.*, forty
quadrīngentīēs, *adv.*, four hundred times
quaerō, -ere, -quaesīvī, quaesitum, ask
quaestor, -tōris, *M.*, quaestor, one of a group of Roman officials who had charge of the financial affairs of the state and of the army
quam, *adv.*, than, how, as
quantum, *adv.*, as much as, as far as
quārtō, *adv.*, for the fourth time
quārtus, -a, -um, fourth

quasi, *adv.*, as if, as
quater, *adv.*, four times
quattuor, *indecl. num.*, four
quattuordecim, *indecl. num.*, fourteen
-que, *enclitic conj.*, and
queror, querī, questus sum, complain
quī, quae, quod, *relative pronoun*, who, which, that
quia, *conj.*, because
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (*quidam*), a certain, some, a certain man, etc.
quidem, *adv.*, indeed; **nē . . . quidem**, not even
quīngentī, -ae, -a, *numeral adj.*, five hundred
quīnī, -ae, -a, *distributive num.*, five each
quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num.*, fifty
quīnque, *indecl. num.*, five
Quīntius, -ī, *M.*, a Roman name; see Cīcinnātus
quīntus, -a, -um, fifth
Quīrīnālīs, -īs, *M.*, the Quirinal, one of the seven hills of Rome
quis, quid, *interrogative pronoun*, who? what?
quisquam, quicquam, any, any person, anything
quisque, quidque, *pronoun*; and **quisque**, quaeque, quodque, *adj.*, each
quō, *conj.*, that, in order that
quod, *conj.*, because
quondam, *adv.*, formerly, once
quoque, *adv.*, also

R

rapiō, -ere, rapuī, raptum, carry off, seize

ratio, **rationis**, *f.*, theory, reason
rebellō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, renew
 a war, revolt
recedō, **-cēdere**, **-cessi**, **-cessum**,
 withdraw
recipiō, **-ere**, **recēpi**, **receptum**, re-
 ceive, take back; **sē recipere**,
 retreat, withdraw
reddō, **-dere**, **-didi**, **-ditum**, render
redeō, **-ire**, **-ii**, **-itum**, return
recipiō, **-ere**, **recēpi**, **receptum**, re-
 duce
redintegrō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, re-
 new
reducō, **-ducere**, **-dūxi**, **-ductum**,
 lead back, bring back
rēgina, **-ae**, *f.*, queen
regiō, **regiōnis**, *f.*, region
rēgius, **-a**, **-um**, royal, regal, like
 a king
rēgnō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, reign
rēgnum, **-ī**, *N.*, royal authority,
 kingdom, reign
regredior, **regredi**, **regressus sum**,
 return
relinquō, **-ere**, **reliqui**, **relictum**,
 leave
reliquiae, **-arum**, *f. pl.*, remnant
reliquus, **-a**, **-um**, remaining, rest
 of; **reliqui**, *as noun*, the rest
Rēmi, **-ōrum**, *M. pl.*, the Remi, a
Belgian tribe
reminiscor, **reminisci**, remember,
 recall
removeō, **-movēre**, **-mōvi**, **-mōtum**,
 remove, withdraw
renovō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, renew
renūntiō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, bring
 back word, report
reparō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, restore,
 renew

repellō, **-ere**, **reppui**, **repulsum**,
 drive back, beat back, repulse
reperiō, **-ire**, **repperi**, **repertum**,
 find, find out
repudiō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, reject,
 refuse
rēs, **rei**, *f.*, thing, affair
resistō, **resistere**, **resisti**, resist
(takes dative)
respondeō, **-ēre**, **respondi**, **respōn-**
sum, answer, reply
respōnsum, **-ī**, *N.*, reply
restituō, **-ere**, **restitui**, **restitutum**,
 restore
revertor, **reverti**, **reverti**, **rever-**
sum (*deponent in present sys-*
tem), return
revocō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, recall,
 recover
rēx, **rēgis**, *M.*, king
Rhēa, **-ae**, *f.*, Rhea, an old Italian
name; Rhea Silvia, the mother
of Romulus and Remus
Rhēnus, **-ī**, *M.*, the Rhine
Rhodanus, **-ī**, *M.*, the Rhone
rīpa, **-ae**, *f.*, bank (*of a river*)
rōbur, **rōboris**, *N.*, oak; strength
rogō, **-āre**, **-āvi**, **-ātum**, ask
Rōma, **-ae**, *f.*, Rome
Rōmānus, **-a**, **-um**, Roman
Rōmānus, **-ī**, *M.*, a Roman
Rōmulus, **-ī**, *M.*, Romulus, the tra-
ditional founder of Rome
rosa, **-ae**, *f.*, rose
rūrsus, *adv.*, again

S

Sabini, **-ōrum**, *M. pl.*, the Sabines
Sabis, **-is**, *M.*, the Saône, a river
of France
sacrum, **-ī**, *N.*, sanctuary, sacred
 place or building

- saepe**, *adv.*, often
sagitta, -ae, *F.*, arrow
salūs, salūtis, *F.*, safety
satis, *adv.*, enough
saxum, -ī, *N.*, rock, stone
scelus, sceleris, *N.*, crime
schola, -ae, *F.*, school
sciō, scire, scivī, scītum, know
Scipiō, -ōnis, *M.*, Scipio, a Roman name
scūtum, -ī, *N.*, shield
secundus, -a, -um, second; favorable
sed, *conj.*, but
sēdecim, *numeral adj.*, sixteen
sēditiō, -ōnis, *F.*, insurrection
semel, *adv.*, once
sēmibarbarus, -a, -um, half civilized
semper, *adv.*, always
senātor, -tōris, *M.*, senator
senātus, -ūs, *M.*, senate
senectūs, -tūtis, *F.*, old age, age
senior, -ōris, *compar. of senex*, older; *as noun*, old man
Senonēs, -um, *M. pl.*, the Senones, a tribe of the Gauls
septem, *indecl. num.*, seven
septendecim, *indecl. num.*, seventeen
septimus, -a, -um, seventh
sepultūra, -ae, *F.*, burial
Sēquanī, -ōrum, *M. pl.*, the Sequani
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, follow
Servilius, -ī, *M.*, Servilius, a Roman name
servitūs, -tūtis, *F.*, slavery
Servius, -ī, *M.*, Servius, a Roman name; Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome
servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, save
servus, -ī, *M.*, slave, servant
sex, *indecl. num.*, six
Sex., *abbreviation for Sextus*
sexāgintā, *indecl. num.*, sixty
sexcentēsimus, -a, -um, six-hundredth
sexcentī, -ae, -a, *num. adj.*, six hundred
sextus, -a, -um, sixth; **sextus decimus**, sixteenth
Sextus, -ī, *M.*, Sextus, a Roman first name
sī, *conj.*, if
sicutī, *adv.*, just as, as
signum, -ī, *N.*, sign, signal, standard; **signa convertere**, wheel about
silva, -ae, *F.*, forest
silvestris, -tro, wooded, forest covered
Silvia, -ae, *F.*, *see Rhēa*
similis, -e, like, similar
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without
singulāris, -e, remarkable, unusual
singulī, -ae, -a, one at a time, separate, individually
sinister, -tra, -trum, left, left hand
socer, **socerī**, *M.*, father-in-law
socius, -ī, *M.*, ally
sōl, sōlis, *M.*, the sun
soleō, -ēre, **solitus sum**, *semi-deponent*, be accustomed
sōlum, *adv.*, only; **nōn solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also
sōlus, -a, -um, only, alone
sonus, -ī, *M.*, sound
soror, **sorōris**, *F.*, sister
Sp., *abbreviation for Spurius*, a Roman first name
spectāculum, -ī, *N.*, show, a spectacle; **spectāculum iūdōrum**, an exhibition of games

spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hope
spēs, speī, F., hope
statua, -ae, F., statue
statim, adv., at once
stipendiārius, -a, -um, subject to
 tribute, tributary
stipendium, -ī, N., tribute, tax;
 military service
stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus, stand
studeō, -ēre, -uī, desire, be eager
 for
stuprum, -ī, N., defilement, dis-
 honor
sub, prep. with acc. or abl., under,
 beneath; at the foot of
subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum,
 withdraw
subigō, -ere, subēgī, subāctum,
 subdue, conquer
subitō, adv., suddenly
subsequor, subsequī, subsecūtus
 sum, follow up, follow closely
subsidium, -ī, N., reinforcements,
 reserves
succēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,
 come up close to, advance; fol-
 low, succeed
successus, -ūs, M., success
sūdor, sūdōris, M., sweat, perspi-
 ration
Suēbī, -ōrum, M. pl., the Suebi,
 a German tribe
Suessa, -ae, F., a city of Latium,
 commonly called Suessa Pometia
Suessiōnēs, -um, M. pl., the Sues-
 siones, a Belgian tribe
suī, reflexive pron., of himself, her-
 self, itself, themselves
Sulla, -ae, M., Sulla, a Roman name
sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be
summus, -a, -um, highest, supreme;
 highest part of

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, take
sūmptus, -ūs, M., expense
Superbus, -ī, M., *see* Tarquinius
superior, superius, compar. adj.,
 higher; preceding, previous
superō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, defeat,
 overcome, conquer
supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum,
 refrain from
supersum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus,
 survive, be left
superveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, come upon, surprise
supplicium, -ī, N., punishment
supportō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, bring
 up, furnish
supputātiō, -ōnis, F., reckoning,
 computation
suprā, prep. with acc., above
Surēna, -ae, M., Surena, a Parthian
general
suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
 undertake, assume, receive
sustineō, -ēre, sustinui, sustentum,
 sustain, withstand, hold out
suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their

T

T., abbreviation for Titus, a Roman
first name
tabernāculum, -ī, N., tent
tam, adv., so
tamquam, adv., as if
tamen, adv., nevertheless, still
tantum, adv., so greatly; only,
 merely
tantus, -a, -um, so great
tardē, adv., slowly
tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hinder,
 check

Tarquinius , -ī, M., Tarquinius, <i>the name of two Roman kings; Tarquinius Priscus (Tarquin the Elder) was the fifth of the kings, and Tarquinius Superbus (Tarquin the Proud) was the seventh</i>	trādūcō , -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead across
tegō , -ere, tēxī, tēctum, cover, protect	trāns , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , across, beyond
tēlum , -ī, N., weapon	trānseō , -īre, -iī or -īvi, -itum, cross
tempestās , -tātis, F., storm	trānsgridior , -gredī, -gressus sum, cross
templum , -ī, N., temple	trānsportō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, convey across
tempus , temporis, N., time	trecentēsimus , -a, -um, three hundredth
tendō , -ere, tetendī, tentum or tēsum, hold out, extend	trecentī , -ae, -a, <i>num. adj.</i> , three hundred
teneō , -ēre, -ui, hold	trēs , tria, <i>gen. trium.</i> , three
ter , <i>adv.</i> , three times	tribūnus , -ī, M., tribune
tergum , -ī, N., back	tribūtum , -ī, N., tribute
terra , -ae, F., land, earth	trīciēs , <i>adv.</i> , thirty times
terreō , -ēre, -ui, -itum, frighten, terrify	Tricipitinus , -ī, M., <i>see</i> Lucrētius
territōrium , -ī, N., territory	trīduum , -ī, N., three days
tertiō , <i>adv.</i> , for the third time	trīgintā , <i>indecl. num.</i> , thirty
tertius , -a, -um, third	trīumphō , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, celebrate a triumph
testāmentum , -ī, N., will	trīcēsimus , -a, -um, thirtieth
Thessālia , -ae, F., Thessaly	Trōia , -ae, F., Troy
Tiberis , -is, M., the Tiber	tū , tuī, <i>personal pronoun</i> , you; <i>pl.</i> , vōs
timeō , -ēre, -ui, fear	tuba , -ae, F., trumpet
timor , timōris, M., fear	Tulingī , -ōrum, M. <i>pl.</i> , the Tulingi, a Gallic tribe
Titurius , -ī, M., a Roman name; Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's officers	Tullius , -ī, M., Tullius, a Roman name
toga , -ae, F., toga	Tullus , -ī, M., Tullus, a Roman name; Tullus Hostilius, the third king of Rome
tollō , -ere, sustulī, sublātum, lift; take away	tum , <i>adv.</i> , then
Tolumnius , -ī, M., Tolumnius, a king of Veii	tumultus , -ūs, M., disturbance, insurrection, uprising
tot , <i>indecl. adj.</i> , so many	turris , -is, F., tower
tōtus , -a, -um, all, entire	Tuscia , -ae, F., Etruria
trādō , -ere, trādidi, trāditum, surrender, give up	Tuscī , -ōrum, M. <i>pl.</i> , the Etruscans, inhabitants of Etruria

Tusculum, -ī, N., Tusculum, *an ancient town not far from Rome*
tūtōr, tūtōris, M., guardian, protector

tūtus, -a, -um, safe

tuus, -a, -um, your, yours

tyrannicus, -a, -um, despotic, tyrannical

U

ubi, *adv.*, where, when

Ubiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, the Ubii, *a German tribe*

ūllus, -a, -um, any

ulterior, ulterius, *comparative adj.*, farther

ultimus, -a, -um, *superl.*, farthest, last

ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond

umquam, *adv.*, ever

ūnā, *adv.*, together, at the same time

ūndecim, *numeral adj.*, eleven

ūndecimus, -a, -um, eleventh

ūndēvigintī, *numeral adj.*, nineteen

undique, *adv.*, on all sides

ūniversus, -a, -um, all together, entire, all

ūnus, -a, -um, one

urbs, ur̄bis, F., city

usque, *adv.*, as far as

ūsus, -ūs, M., use, experience, advantage

ut, *conj.*, that, in order that

ut, *adv.*, as

uter, -tra, -trum, which of two

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each of two, each

ūtilis, -e, useful

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, use

utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides

uxor, uxōris, F., wife

V

vacuus, -a, -um, vacant

Valerius, -ī, Valerius, *a Roman name*

validus, -a, -um, strong, powerful

vallēs, vallis, F., valley

Varrō, Varrōnis, M., Varro, *a Roman name*

Vārus, -ī, M., Varus, *a Roman name*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lay waste
vehementer, *adv.*, severely

Vēī, Vēiōrum, M. *pl.*, Veii, *an ancient town of Etruria*

Vēientānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, same as Vēientēs

Vēientēs, -ium, M. *pl.*, the inhabitants of Veii

vel, *conj.*, or

vēndō, -ere, vēndidī, vēnditum, sell

veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, come

ventus, -ī, M., wind

vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, fear

vergō, -ere, slope

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, turn

vērūm, *adv.*, but

Vesontio, -ōnis, M., Vesontio, *a town of Gaul, now Besançon*

vesper, verperī, M., evening

Vestālis, -e, Vestal, of Vesta

vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours

veterānus, -a, -um, veteran

Veturia, -ae, Veturia, *a woman's name*

vetus, veteris, old, former, of long standing

vxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, lay waste,
 overrun, harass, plunder
via, -ae, F., street, road, way
vicēsimus, -a, -um, twentieth
vicinus, -a, -um, near, neighboring
vicem, *see invicem*
victor, -tōris, M., conqueror
victōria, -ae, F., victory
vicus, -i, M., village
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see; pass.*
as dep., seem
vigilia, -ae, F., watch
vīgintī, *indecl. num.*, twenty
Viminālis, -is, M., the Viminal, *one*
of the seven hills of Rome
vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, conquer,
 defeat
vindicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, avenge
vir, virī, M., man

Virgīnius, -ī, M., Virginius, *a Ro-*
man name
virgō, -inis, F., virgin, maiden,
 girl, young woman
virtūs, -tūtis, F., courage, manli-
 ness
vīs, F., force, violence; *pl.* strength
vīta, -ae, F., life
vītō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, avoid
vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty
vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, call
volō, velle, voluī, wish, be willing
Volscī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*, Volscians
Volumnia, -ae, F., Volumnia, *a*
woman's name
voluntās, -tātis, F., wish, will
vōx, vōcis, F., voice, word, utter-
 ance
vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, wound
vulnus, vulneris, N., a wound

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

A

able, be able, possum, posse, potuī
absent, be absent, absum, abesse,
 āfuī, āfutūrus
account, on account of, propter,
prep. with acc.
accustomed, be accustomed, soleō,
 -ēre, solitus sum
advance, prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī,
 -cessum
advice, cōnsilium, cōnsilī, N.
again, rūrsum, iterum, *advs.*
aid, auxilium, auxiliī, N.
all, omnis, omne
ally, socius, -ī, M.
alone, sōlus, -a, -um
also, item, *adv.*
although, cum, *conj.*
always, semper, *adv.*
among, apud, *prep. with acc.*
and, et, atque, -que, *conj.*
angry, irātus, -a, -um
animal, animal, animālis, N.
another, alius, alia, aliud
answer, respōnsum, -ī, N.
any one (*in a negative sentence*),
 quisquam
approach, appropinquō, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum
approve, approve of, probō, -āre,
 -āvī, -ātum
Aquitanians, Aquitānī, -ōrum,
 M. *pl.*
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, M.
arm, armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
arms, arma, armōrum, N. *pl.*
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.
arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī,
 -ventum

arrow, sagitta, -ae, F.
ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī,
 ascēnsum
ask, rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; quaerō,
 -ere, quaesivī, quaesītum; ask
 for, petō, -ere, petivī, petītum
assemble (*intransitive*), conveniō,
 -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
at once, statim, *adv.*
attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, M.
attack (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvī,
 ātum
avoid, vitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
await, exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

B

badge, insigne, insignis, N.
bank (*of a river*), rīpa, -ae, F.
battle, proelium, -ī, N.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
because, quod, *conj.*
before, ante, *prep. with acc.*
before, priusquam, *conj.*
beg for, petō, -ere, petivī, petītum
began, have begun, coepī, coepisse,
 coeptum (*perfect tenses only*)
begin, incipiō, -ere, incēpī, incep-
 tum; **begin battle**, proelium
 committere
behind, post, *prep. with acc.*
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, M. *pl.*
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
beyond, trāns, *prep. with acc.*
boast, glōrior, -ārī, glōriātus sum
boat, nāvis, nāvis, F.
body, corpus, corporis, N.
book, liber, librī, M.
boy, puer, puerī, M. '

brave, fortis, forte
bravely, fortiter, *adv.*
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum
bring together, condūcō, -dūcere,
 -dūxī, -ductum
Britain, Great Britain, Britannia,
 -ae, F.
brother, frāter, frātris, M.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
burn, incendō, -ere, incendi, in-
 cēsum
but, sed, *conj.*
buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum
by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, M.
call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 (*name*), appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
call together, convocō, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum
camp, castra, -ōrum, N. *pl.*
can, am able, possum, posse, potuī
capture, expugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
 capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
carry on, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum
cart, carrus, -ī, M.
Cassius, Cassius, -ī, M.
cattle, bovēs (*sing.* bōs, bovis),
 M. and F.
cause, eausa, -ae, F.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M.
Celts, Celtae, -ārum, M. *pl.*
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, M.
certain, quīdam, quaedam, quod-
 dam or quiddam
certainly, certē, *adv.*
choose, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēc-
 tum

citizen, cīvis, cīvis, M., F.
city, urbs, urbis, F.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, F.
collect (*trans.*), condūcō, -dūcere,
 -dūxī, -ductum; cōnferō, -ferre,
 -tulī, -lātum
come, veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum
command, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
command, be in command of,
 praesum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus
complain, queror, querī, questus
 sum
complete, perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
 -fectum; cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī,
 -fectum
concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*
conference, colloquium, -ī, N.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum
Considius, Cōnsidius, -ī, M.
Cornelia, Cornēlia, -ae, F.
council, concilium, -ī, N.
country, native country, patria,
 -ae, F.
courage, virtūs, virtūtis, F.
courage, animus, -ī, M.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum

D

danger, periculum, -ī, N.
dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um
dare, audeō, -ere, ausus sum
daughter, filia, -ae, F.
day, diēs, diēī, M. and F.
daybreak, prima lūx
deep, altus, -a, -um
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī,
 dēfēsum
delay, mora, -ae, F.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
dependent, cliēns, clientis, M.

desert, *dēserō*, -ere, -uī, -tum

deserve, *mereor*, -ērī, *meritus sum*

desire, *studeō*, -ēre, -uī (*takes dative*); *cupiō*, -ere, *cupīvī*, *cupitum*

destroy, *dēleō*, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum

difficult, *difficilis*, -e

difficulty, with **difficulty**, *vix*, *adv.*

disclose, *ēnūntiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

distant, be **distant**, *absum*, *abesse*,
āfuī, *āfutūrus*

distinguished, *clārus*, -a, -um

ditch, *fossa*, -ae, F.

Diviciacus, *Dīviciācus*, -ī, M.

do, *faciō*, -ere, *fēcī*, *factum*; be
done, *fīō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*

draw up, *instruō*, -struere, -struxī,
-strūctum

drive back, *repellō*, -ere, *reppulī*,
repulsum

E

each, as *pron.*, *quisque*, *quidque*;
adj., *quisque*, *quaeque*, *quodque*

easily, *facile*, *adv.*

easy, *facilis*, -e

enemy (*a public enemy*), *hostis*,
hostis, M.; (*a personal enemy*),
inimīcus, -ī, M.

energetic, *impiger*, *impigra*, *impigrum*

energetically, *impigrē*, *adv.*

enough, *satis*, *adv. and indecl. noun*

enroll, *cōscribō*, -scribere, -scripsī,
-scriptum

envoy, *lēgātus*, -ī, M.

every, *omnis*, -e; **everything**,

omnia, -ium; **every day**, *cotidiē*,
adv.

extend, *pateō*, -ēre, -uī

expect, *exspectō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

explore, *explōrō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

F

fact (*thing*), *rēs*, *rei*, F.

famous, *clārus*, -a, -um

far, *longē*, *adv.*

farmer, *agricola*, -ae, M.

father, *pater*, *patris*, M.

favor, *faveō*, -ēre, *fāvī*, *fautum*

fear (*noun*), *metus* -ūs, M.

fear (*verb*), *timeō*, -ere, -uī;

vereor, -ērī, *veritus sum*

few, *paucī*, -ae, -a, as *substantive*,
paucī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

field, *ager*, *agrī*, M.

fierce, *ferus*, -a, -um

fiercely, *ācriter*, *adv.*

fight (*verb*), *pugnō*, -āre, -āvī,
-ātum

fill, **fill up**, *compleō*, -ēre, -ēvī,
-ētum

find, **find out**, *reperiō*, -īre, *reperī*, *repertum*

fire, *ignis*, *ignis*, M.

first, *primus*, -a, -um

first, at **first**, *primō*, *adv.*

five, *quīnque*, *indecl. num.*

flee, *fugiō*, -ere, *fūgī*, *fugitūrus*

flight, *fuga*, -ae, F.

follow, *sequor*, *sequī*, *secūtus sum*

foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, M.

forces, *cōpiae*, -ārum, F. *pl.*

forest, *silva*, -ae, F.

forget, *oblivīscor*, *oblivīscī*, *oblitus sum*

former, *prīstinus*, -a, -um

formerly, *ōlim*, *adv.*

formerly, *anteā*, *adv.*

fort, *castellum*, -ī, N.

fortify, *mūniō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītum

fortune, *fortūna*, -ae, F.

four, *quattuor*, *indecl. num.*

friend, *amīcus*, -ī, M.

friendship, amicitia, -ae, F.
 frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 from, ē, ex; ā, ab; dē, *preps. with*
all.
 furnish, supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum

G

gain possession of, potior, potīrī,
 potītus sum
 Gaius, Gāius, -ī, M.
 gate, porta, -ae, F.
 Gaul (*a country*), Gallia, -ae, F.
 Gaul, a Gaul (*an inhabitant of the*
country of Gaul), Gallus, -ī, M.
 Geneva, Genava, -ae, F.
 German, a German, Germānus, -ī, M.
 gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
 girl, puella, -ae, F.
 give, dō, dare, dedī, datum
 go, eō, īre, īvī or īī, itum
 go forth, exeō, -īre, -īī, -itum
 good, bonus, -a, -um
 grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
 Great Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
 greatly, magnopere, *adv.*

H

Haeduan, a Haeduan,
 Haeduus, -ī, M.
 hand, manus, -ūs, F.
 happen, accidō, -ere, accidī
 happy, fēlix, fēlicis
 hasten, contendō, -ere, contendī,
 contentum
 hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 have, habeo, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 he, is
 head, caput, capitis, N.
 hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum
 height, altitūdō, -dinis, F.
 help (*noun*), auxilium, -ī, N.
 help (*verb*), iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum

Helvetians, the Helvetians, Helvō-
 tiī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 her, reflexive, suus, -a, -um; *when*
not reflexive, eius
 herself, *see self*
 high, altus, -a, -um
 hill, collis, collis, M.
 himself, *see self*
 hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -itum;
 dēterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 his, reflexive, suus, -a, -um; *when*
not reflexive, eius
 hold out, tendō, -ere, tetendī, ten-
 tum or tēsum
 home, domus, -ūs, F.
 honorable, honestus, -a, -um
 hope, spēs, speī, F.
 horse, equus, -ī, M.
 horseman, eques, equitis, M.
 hostage, obses, obsidis, M.
 hour, hōra, -ae, F.
 hundred, one hundred, centum,
indecl. num.

I

I, ego, *gen.*, meī
 Iccius, Iccius, -ī, M.
 if, sī, *conj.*; if not, nisi
 implore, implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 in, in, *prep. with abl.*
 incredible, incrēdibilis, -e
 industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum
 industriously, impigrē, *adv.*
 infantry, cōpiaē pedestrēs, cōpiā-
 rum pedestrium, F.
 inform, certiōrem (certiōrēs)
 facere
 inhabit, incolō, -ere, -uī
 inhabitant of a town, oppidānus,
 -ī, M.
 injure, noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 (*takes dative*)

injury, iniūria, -ae, F.
into, in, *prep. with acc.*
invite, invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, F.
island, insula, -ae, F.
it, id
Italy, Italia, -ae, F.
its, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, eius
itself, *see self*
javelin, pilum, -ī, N.
journey, iter, itineris, N.

K

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fec-tum
kind, benignus, -a, -um
king, rēx, régis, M.
know, *perf. of cognōscō*, -ere, cog-nōvī, cognitum; *sciō*, scīre, scīvī, scitum; *intellegō*, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, M.
large, magnus, -a, -um
law, lēx, lēgis, F.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;
dēpopulor, -ārī, dēpopulātus sum
lazy, piger, pigra, pigrum
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum
lead back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum
lead out, ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēduc-tum
leader, dux, ducis, M.
league together, coniūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
leave, relinquō, -ere, reliquī, relic-tum
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
letter, epistula, -ae, F.

liberty, libertās, libertātis, F.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
life, vita, -ae, F.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, F.
live (*dwell*), habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
long, longus, -a, -um
long, for a long time, diū, *adv.*
lose, āmittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum
love, amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
Lucius, Lūcius, -ī, M.
lurk, lateō, -ēre, -uī

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum;
make war on, bellum inferō, inferre, etc.
man, homō, hominis, M.; vir, virī, M.
many, multī, multae, multa; *pl. of multus*
march, iter, itineris, N.
Marius, Marius, -ī, M.
master, dominus, -ī, M.
meanwhile, intereā, *adv.*
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um
mile, mille passūs or passuum; *pl.*, milia passuum.
money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
more, magis, *adv.*
mountain, mōns, montis, M.
move, moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum
much, multus, -a, -um; *when used with comparative*, multō, *abl. of neuter*
multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, F.
my, mine, meus, -a, -um

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, N.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um

nation, gēns, gentis, F.
 native country, patria, -ae, F.
 nature, nātūra, -ae, F.
 neighboring, finitimus, -a, -um
 neither (*conj.*), neque; neither . . .

nor, neque . . . neque

neither (*of two*), neuter, -tra, -trum

Nervii, Nervii, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

never, numquam, *adv.*

nevertheless, tamen, *adv.*

new, novus, -a, -um

next to, proximus, -a, -um

night, nox, noctis, F.

no (*adj.*), nūllus, -a, -um

no one, nēmō; *dat.*, nēminī (*no gen.*)

not, nōn, *adv.*; *with subjunctive of desire*, nē

not yet, nōndum, *adv.*

nothing, nihil, *indeclinable*, N.

now, nunc, *adv.*

number, numerus, -ī, M.

O

Ocelum, Ocelum, -ī, N.

often, saepe, *adv.*

old, vetus, *gen.*, veteris

on, in, *prep. with abl.*

on account of, ob, *prep. with acc.*;
 propter, *prep. with acc.*

on this side of, citrā, *prep. with acc.*

one, ūnus, -a, -um; one . . . another, alius . . . alius; one . . . the other, alter . . . alter

order, iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iussum

Orgetorix, Orgetorix, Orgetorigis, M.

other, the other (*of two*), alter, altera, alterum; another, alius, alia, aliud

ought, dēbeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum

our, ours, noster, -tra, -trum
 ourselves, *see self*
 overhang, impendeō, -ēre
 overrun, vexō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

P

part, pars, partis, F.

peace, pāx, pācis, F.

people, populus, -ī, M.

persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum (*takes dative*)

place (*noun*), locus, -ī, M. (*usually neuter in plural*)

place (*verb*), collocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

plan, cōnsilium, -ī, N.

please, placeō, -ēre, -uī (*takes dative*)

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um

point out, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

power, potentia, -ae, F.; imperium, -ī, N.

powerful, potēns, *gen.*, potentis

praise, laus, laudis, F.

praise, laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

prefer, mālō, mālī, mālui

prepare, comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

present, be present, adsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus

present, dōnum, -ī, N.

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, M.

promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum

protect, tegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum; cōservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum

province, prōvincia, -ae, F.

punishment, supplicium, -ī, N.

purpose, for the purpose, causā *with genitive*

Q

quickly, celeriter, *adv.*

R

rank, ōrdō, ōrdinis, M.
reason, causa, -ae, F.
receive, accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum
reduce, redigō, -ere, redēgī, redāc-tum
refrain, supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum
regarding, dē, *prep. with abl.*
region, regiō, regiōnis, F.
reject, repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mām-sum
remember, meminī, meminisse; re-minīscor, reminīscī
Remi, Rēmī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
renew, renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
report, ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
repulse, repellō, -ere, reppulī, re-pulsum
residence, domicilium, -ī, N.
resist, resistō, -ere, restitī (*takes dative*)
rest, the rest, reliquī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
restore, restituō, -ere, restitūī, restitūtum
restrain, contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum
return, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum
reward, praemium, -ī, N.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M.
river, flūmen, flūminis, N.
road, iter, itineris, N.
road, via, -ae, F.
Roman (*adj.*), Rōmānus, -a, -um
Roman, a Roman, Rōmānus, -ī, M.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
rose, rosa, -ae, F.
route, iter, itineris, N.

royal authority, royal power, rēg-num, -ī, N.

S

safe, tūtus, -a, -um
sailor, nauta, -ae, M.
same, idem, eadem, idem
say, dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum
school, schola, -ae, F.
scout, explōrātor, -tōris, M.
second, secundus, -a, -um
see, videō, -ēre, vidī, vīsum
seem, videor, vidērī, vīsus sum
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
self, himself, herself, itself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum; *reflexive*, suī
send, mittō, -ere, misī, missum
send ahead, praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum
separate, dividō, -ere, divīsī, divī-sum
Sequani, Sēquanī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
set on fire, set fire to, incendō, -ere, incendiī, incēnsunum
set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, pro-fectus sum
seven, septem, *indecl. num.*
several, complūrēs, -ium
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, M.
she, ea
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, F.
short, brevis, breve
signal, signum, -ī, N.
since, cum, *conj.*
slaughter, caedēs, caedis, F.
slave, servus, -ī, M.
slavery, servitūs, -tūtis, F.
slowly, tardē, *adv.*
small, parvus, -a, -um
so, tam, *adv.*
so great, tantus, -a, -um

soldier, miles, militis, M.
 some . . . others, alii . . . alii
 some one, aliquis
 sometimes, nōn numquam
 son, filius, fili, M.
 sound, sonus, -ī, M.
 speed, celeritās, -tātis, F.
 spend the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 spirit, ānimus, -ī, M.
 spur, calcar, calcāris, N.
 stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus
 state, cīvītās, -tātis, F.
 station, collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 statue, statua, -ae, F.
 still, tamen, *adv.*
 stone, saxum, -ī, N.
 street, via, -ae, F.
 strength, vīrēs, vīrium (*pl. of vīs*)
 subdue, pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 suitable, idōneus, -a, -um
 summer, aestās, -tātis, F.
 supreme, summus, -a, -um (*superlative of superus*)
 surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum
 surrender, trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditum; dēdō, -ere, dēdidi, dēditum
 surround, circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum
 swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*
 sword, gladius, -ī, M.

T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum
 tall, altus, -a, -um
 temple, templum, -ī, N.
 ten, decem, *indecl. num.*
 territories, finēs, -ium, M. (*pl. of finis*)
 than, quam, *conj.*

that, *conj.*, ut; that . . . not, nē
 that, *demonstrative*, ille, illa, illud (*unemphatic*), is, ea, id
 their, *reflexive*, suus, -a, -um; *when not reflexive*, eōrum, eārum
 themselves, *reflexive*, suī
 then, tum, *adv.*
 there (*in that place*), ibi, *adv.*; (*to that place*), eō, *adv.*
 thing, rēs, rei, F.
 think, arbitror, -ārī, arbitrātus sum
 third, tertius, -a, -um
 this, hic, haec, hoc
 three, trēs, tria
 three days, trīdium, -ī, N.
 through, per, *prep. with acc.*
 time, tempus, temporis, N.
 time, for a long time, diū, *adv.*
 tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um
 to, ad, *prep. with acc.*
 today, hodiē, *adv.*
 tower, turris, turris, F.
 town, oppidum, -ī, N.
 townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 treachery, insidiae, -ārum, F. *pl.*
 trust, cōfidō, -ere, cōfīsus sum
 try, cōnor, -ārī, cōnātus sum; *ex-*perior, -īrī, expertus sum
 two, duo, duae, duo
 two days, bīdium, -ī, N.
 two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a

U

Ubī, Ubī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*
 unexpectedly, imprōvisō, *adv.*
 unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um
 unhappy, miser, misera, miserum
 unknown, incognitus, -a, -um
 unless, nisi, *conj.*
 until, dum, *conj.*

unwilling, be unwilling, *nōlō*,
nōlle, *nōluī*
 unwilling, *invītus*, -a, -um
 urge, hortar, -ārī, hortātus sum
 use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum
 useful, ūtilis, -e

V

valley, *vallēs*, *vallis*, F.
 Vesontio, *Vesontiō*, -ōnis, F.
 veteran, *veterānus*, -a, -um
 victory, *victōria*, -ae, F.
 village, *vīcus*, -ī, M.
 violence, *vīs*, F.
 voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, F.

W

wage, *gerō*, *gerere*, *gessī*, *gestum*
 wait, wait for, *exspectō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum
 walk, *ambulō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 wall, *mūrus*, -ī, M.
 wander, *errō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 war, *bellum*, -ī, N.
 warn, *moneō*, -ēre, -uī, -itum
 watch, *vigilia*, -ae, F.
 water, *aqua*, -ae, F.
 wave, *flūctus*, -ūs, M.
 weapon, *tēlum*, -ī, N.
 weapons, *arma*, -ōrum
 weep, *fleō*, *flēre*, *flēvī*, *flētum*
 what, *interrog.*, *pron.*, *quid*; *as*
adj., *quis* (*quī*), *quae*, *quod*
 where, *ubi*, *adv.*

white, *albus*, -a, -um
 who, what, *interrog.*, *quis*, *quid*
 who, which, what, *relative*, *quī*,
quae, *quod*
 whole, *tōtus*, -a, -um
 why, *cūr*, *adv.*
 when, *cum*
 wide, *lātus*, -a, -um
 widely, *lātē*, *adv.*
 width, *lātitudō*, -dinis, F.
 wing (*of an army*), *cornū*, -ūs, N.
 winter (*verb*), spend the winter,
hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum
 wish, *cupiō*, -ere, *cupīvī*, *cupitum*
 wish, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*
 with, *cum*, *prep. with abl.*
 withdraw, *dēcēdō*, -ere, *dēcēssi*,
dēcēssum; *excēdō*, -cēdere,
 -cessī, -cessum
 woman, *fēmina*, -ae, F.
 work (*noun*), *opus*, *operis*, N.
 work (*verb*), *labōrō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum
 wound (*verb*), *vulnerō*, -āre, -āvī,
 -ātum
 wrong, *iniūria*, -ae, F.

Y

year, *annus*, -ī, M.
 you, *tū*, *singular*; *vōs*, *plural*.
 your, yours, *tuus*, -a, -um, *refer-*
ring to one person; *vester*, *ves-*
tra, *vestrum*, *referring to more*
than one person.

INDEX

(Numbers refer to sections.)

ABLATIVE, general use, 33.

- absolute, 370.
- of accompaniment, 104. *w*
- of agent, 98.
- of cause, 449.
- of comparison, 340. *w c*
- of degree of difference, 346.
- of description, 353.
- of manner, 277. *v*
- of means, 130.
- of place from which, 330.
- of place in which, 110.
- of respect, 366.
- of route, 318. *w i*
- of separation, 329. *w*
- of time, 211. *w r*
- with *utro*, 419.

ACCENT, 8.

ACCUSATIVE:

- as object, 11.
- of duration, 177.
- of extent, 312.
- of place to which, 313.
- with prepositions, 190.

ADJECTIVES, agreement of, 18, 55.

- comparison of, 334.
- position of, 19.
- in the predicate, 20.
- demonstrative, 89, 90, 91, 102, 122, 582.
- possessive, 83.
- substantive use of, 201.
- of the first and second declension in *-us*, 75.
- of the first and second declension in *-er*, 81.
- of the third declension, 276, 281.
- with the genitive in *-ius*, 234.

ADVERBS, formation of, 357.

- comparison of, 361.
- position of, 63.

ADVERSATIVE clauses, 526.

AGREEMENT:

- of adjectives, 18, 55.
- of relative pronouns, 288.
- of verbs, 44.

aliquis, declension of, 447.

APPOSITION, 61.

- case of nouns in, 62.

ARTICLE not used in Latin, 13.

BASE, of nouns, 38.

CAUSAL clauses, 520.

coepti, conjugation of, 427.

COMMANDS, expressed by imperative, 402.

negative, 566.

COMPARISON:

- of adjectives, regular, 334, 338.

- of adjectives, irregular, 344.

- of adverbs, 361.

COMPLEMENTARY infinitive, 272.

CONDITIONAL clauses, defined, 570.

- non-committal, 571.
- future more vivid, 571b.
- future less vivid, 581.
- contrary to fact, 575, 576.

CONJUGATION of regular verbs, how distinguished, 108.

CORRELATIVE use of *hic* and *ille*, 116.

cum clauses:

- adversative, 526.
- causal, 520.
- of description, 511.

cum, enclitic use of, 387.

DATIVE:

- as indirect object, 26.
- with adjectives, 27.
- of agent, 538.
- with compound verbs, 324.
- of possession, 325.
- of purpose, 196.
- of reference, 245.
- with special verbs, 124.
- position of, 28 (2).

DECLENSION of nouns:

- first, 36.
- second, 54, 59, 67.
- third, 238, 244, 249, 250, 254, 259, 260.
- fourth, 292.
- fifth, 308.

DECLENSION of adjectives:

- first and second, 75, 81.
- third, 276, 281, 282.

DEMONSTRATIVES, 89.

position of, 92.

DEPONENT verbs, of the first and second conjugations, 414.

of the third and fourth conjugations, 418.

-iō verbs of the third conjugation, 425.

DESCRIPTIVE clauses of situation, 511.

domus, declension of, 298.

duo, declension of, 304.

ENCLITIC use of *cum*, 387.

eō, conjugation of, 317, 504.

FAMILIAR Latin Phrases, p. 309.

FEAR, subjunctive in expressions of, 531.

ferō, conjugation of, 406.

synopsis of, 410.

FIFTH declension of nouns, 308.

fiō, conjugation of, 515.

FIRST conjugation:

- present system in the indicative, 46, 97, 115, 129, 135.

- present system in the subjunctive, 455, 471.
 perfect system in the indicative, 146, 170, 171, 175, 181.
 perfect system in the subjunctive, 487, 488, 493, 494.
 See, also, *imperative, infinitive, participles*.
 FIRST declension of nouns, 36.
 FIRST and second declension adjectives, 75, 81.
 FORMATION of Latin Words, p. 310.
 FOURTH conjugation:
 present system in the indicative, 200, 205, 210.
 present system in the subjunctive, 461, 471.
 perfect system in the indicative, 228, 229.
 perfect system in the subjunctive, 487, 488, 493, 494.
 See, also, *imperative, infinitive, participles*.
 FOURTH declension of nouns, 292.
 FUTURE imperative, 586.
 indicative, 135, 210, 217.
 participle, active, 188.
 participle, passive, 537.
 FUTURE perfect indicative, active, 171.
 passive, 181.
 GENDER of nouns in the first declension, 53.
 second declension, 59.
 third declension, 255.
 fourth declension, 292.
 fifth declension, 308a.
 GENITIVE:
 of description, 352.
 of material, 521.
 objective, 381.
 of possession, 11.
 of the whole, 265.
 with verbs of remembering and forgetting, 543.
 position of, 28 (1).
 formation, in nouns in *-ius* and *-ium*, 76.
 GERUND, 552.
 GERUNDIVE, 557.
hic, declension of, 90.
 correlative use of, 116.
idem, declension of, 264.
ignis, declension of, 260.
ille, declension of, 102.
 correlative use of, 116.
 IMPERATIVE, present, 402.
 future, 586.
 IMPERFECT tense:
 indicative, 115, 129, 205, 217.
 subjunctive, 471, 475, 482.
 IMPERFECT and perfect tenses:
 compared, 151.
 IMPERSONAL verbs, 438.
 INDIRECT discourse, 499, 503.
 INDIRECT object, 26.
 INDIRECT questions, 489.
 INFINITIVE of regular verbs, 391.
 of *su* 1 and *eō*, 396.
 complementary, 272.
 with subject accusative, 395.
 INTERROGATIVE participles, 432.
 pronouns, 431.
ipse, declension of, 103.
is, declension of, 122.
iste, declension of, 582.
tubeō, construction with, 206.
 LOCATIVE, 299.
mālō, conjugation of, 542.
nōlō, conjugation of, 530.
 NOMINATIVE, as subject, 11.
 as predicate, 50 (2).
 NUMERALS, cardinal, 303.
 ordinal, 559.
 OBJECT, direct, 11.
 indirect, 26.
 ORDER of words, 230, 283.
 PARTICIPLES, present, 365.
 past, 158, 159, 160.
 future active, 188.
 future passive, 537.
 review of, 565.
 PASSIVE voice, 96.
 endings of, 97.
 PAST perfect indicative active, 170.
 subjunctive active, 493.
 indicative passive, 181.
 subjunctive passive, 494.
 PERFECT indicative active, 146.
 indicative passive, 175.
 subjunctive active, 487.
 subjunctive passive, 488.
 personal endings in indicative active, 147.
 PERFECT stem, 148.
 PERFECT system, review of, 228, 229.
 PERSONAL endings of the verb, active, 46.
 passive, 97.
 in the perfect indicative active, 147.
 PLACE constructions, review of, 548.
plūs, declension of, 345.
 POSITION of adjectives, 19.
 of adverbs, 63.
 of verbs, 14.
 POSSESSIVES of the first and second persons, 83.
 of the third person, 139.
 omission of, 140.
possum, conjugation of, 376, 466, 482.
 synopsis of, 410.
 PREDICATE adjectives, 20.
 nouns, 21, 426.
 PREPOSITIONS with the accusative, 190.
 review of cases with, 577.
 as prefixes, p. 310.
 PREPOSITIONAL phrases, order of words in, 283.
 PRESENT stem, 46b.
 PRESENT system, review of, 221-224.
 PRESENT tense:
 indicative, 46, 97, 109, 195, 200, 217.
 subjunctive, 455, 461.
 PRINCIPAL parts of the verb, 164.
 PRONOUN, demonstrative, 89, 90, 91, 102, 122, 582.
 indefinite, 436, 437, 447, 448.
 interrogative, 431.
 personal, 380.
 reflexive, 385, 386.

- relative, 287.
PRONUNCIATION, 1-8.
PURPOSE clauses, with *ut* and *ne*, 460.
 relative, 465.
-que, use of, 443.
QUESTIONS:
 indirect, 489.
 introductory participles, 432.
quidam, declension of, 436.
quisquam, declension of, 448.
quisque, declension of, 437.
REFLEXIVE pronoun, 385, 386.
 possessive, 139.
RELATIVE pronouns:
 agreement, 288.
 declension, 287.
STEMS of the verb, 166.
SECOND conjugation:
 present system in the indicative, 109, 115, 129, 135.
 present system in the subjunctive, 455, 471.
 perfect system in the indicative, 146, 170, 171, 175, 181.
 perfect system in the subjunctive, 487, 488, 493, 494.
 See, also, *imperative, infinitive, participles*.
SECOND declension of nouns, 54, 59, 67, 76.
SEMI-deponents, 442.
SUBJUNCTIVE mood, present tense of regular verbs, 455, 461.
 past tense of regular verbs, 471.
 perfect tense, 487, 488.
 past perfect tense, 493, 494.
 general use of, 456.
 anticipatory, 476.
 by attraction, 587.
 in *cum* adversative clauses, 526.
 in *cum* causal clauses, 520.
 in *cum* descriptive clauses, 511.
 in indirect discourse, 499.
 in indirect questions, 489.
 with expressions of fear, 531.
 in substantive clauses of desire, 47C
 in substantive clauses of fact, 516.
 in purpose clauses, 460, 465.
 in clauses of result, 483.
SUBSTANTIVE clauses:
 of desire, 470.
 of fact, 516.
SUBSTANTIVE use of adjectives, 201.
sum, conjugation of, 70, 141, 466, 482.
SUPINE, in *-um*, 547a.
 in *-ū*, 547b.
SYLLABLES, division of, 6.
 quantity, 7.
SYNOPSIS of verbs, 182.
TENSES, relation of, in subordinate clauses, 510.
 "there," as expletive, not translated, 71.
THIRD conjugation:
 present system in the indicative, 195, 205, 210, 217.
 present system in the subjunctive, 461, 471.
 perfect system in the indicative, 228, 229.
 perfect system in the subjunctive, 487, 488, 493, 494.
 See, also, *imperative, infinitive, participles*.
THIRD declension of nouns, consonant stems, 238, 244.
i-stems and mixed stems, 249, 250, 254.
 exceptional nouns, 259, 260.
THIRD declension of adjectives, 276, 281.
tres, declension of, 304.
turris, declension of, 260.
ūtor, etc., with ablative, 419.
VERBS, agreement of, 44.
 position of, 14.
vīs, declension of, 259.
VOCATIVE, 34.
 position of, 35.
volō, conjugation of, 525.

SUPPLEMENTARY READING

PERSEUS

Perseus and his mother were set adrift on the sea by Acrisius, king of Argos, the grandfather of Perseus, because an oracle had declared that Acrisius would some day perish at the hands of his grandson.

Jupiter, however, saved the mother and child, bringing them to the Island of Seriphus, where they were kindly received by Polydectes, the king.

When Perseus reached manhood he was ordered by Polydectes to bring him the head of Medusa, an undertaking which was likely to prove fatal. But Apollo and Minerva directed him on his journey and gave him a special equipment for his task. With the aid thus afforded, he accomplished the perilous exploit in safety and escaped from the companions of Medusa, who sought to kill him. On his way back he rescued Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus, the king of the Ethiopians, who was about to be devoured by a sea serpent. He married Andromeda, and soon after returned with her to the island from which he had been sent by the crafty Polydectes. Finding that his mother had taken refuge from the king, he turned the latter into stone through the magic power of the head of Medusa. Afterward, while taking part in athletic games he accidentally killed his grandfather, Acrisius, thus fulfilling the oracle which Acrisius had vainly sought to escape.

SUPPLEMENTARY READING MATERIAL

THE STORY OF PERSEUS

1. SET ADRIFT

Haec narrantur ā poētis dē Perseō. Perseus filius erat Iovis, maximī deōrum. Avus eius Ācrisius appellābātur. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum, nepōtem suum, necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum, adhūc infantem, et cum mātē in arcā lignēā inclūsit. Tum arcam ipsam in mare coniēcit. Danaē, Perseī mātē, magno-
pere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Per- 5
seus autem in sinū mātis dormiēbat.

1. *Haec, these things, i.e.,* the following stories. This substantive use of the neuter plural of *hic* is very common.

2. *Ācrisius*: predicate nominative after the passive of a verb of calling.

6. *Danaē*: a Greek name, with genitive ending in *-ēs*, acc. in *-ēn*.

7. *enim*: postpositive, *i.e.,* it stands after one or more words of its sentence; *nam* (see l. 3) regularly stands first in a sentence. Another postpositive word is *autem*, l. 8.

In section 1 point out two appositives; an ablative of agent.

2. *avus, -ī, m.*, grandfather.

3. *nepōs, -ōtis, m.*, grandson, nephew.

4. *ōrāculum, -ī, n.* [ōrō], oracle.

com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsus, tr., seize, arrest.

5. *ad-hūc, adv.*, until now, as yet.

in-fāns, gen. -fantis, adj., infant; *subst., m. and f.*, infant, babe.

arca, -ae, f., chest, box.

ligneus, -a, -um, adj., [lignum], of wood, wooden.

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, tr. [in+claudō], shut up, enclose.

6. *coniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, tr.* [com+iaciō], throw together; hurl, cast.

7. *enim, conj. (postpositive)*, for.

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [turba], disturb, throw into confusion.

8. *autem, conj.*, but, on the other hand, however, furthermore.

sinus, -ūs, m., a fold; bosom.

dormiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, intr., sleep.

2. CAST ON AN ISLAND

Iuppiter tamen haec omnia vīdit, et filium suum servāre
 10 cōstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum, et arcam ad īsulam Serīphum perdūxit. Huius īsulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā
 quietem capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam
 reperta est, et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille
 15 mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit, et sēdem tūtā in fīnibus
 suis dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et prō tantō
 beneficiō rēgī grātiās ēgit.

9. **tamen**: usually postpositive, but sometimes stands first in its clause; the same is true of *igitur*, l. 4.

10. **mare tranquillum**: two accusatives after a verb of making. One accusative may be an adjective, as here.

11. **Seriphum**: in apposition with *īnsulam*. We usually say in English "the island of," "the city of."

12. **Postquam**: with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently employed. In translation, with the English equivalents "after" or "when," we sometimes employ the past perfect tense, sometimes the past.

13. **piscātōre quōdam**: the forms of *quīdam* sometimes precede and sometimes follow the word they modify.

16. **dedit**: *eīs*, dative of indirect object, is to be understood.

In section 2 point out a complementary infinitive; a dative of indirect object.

10. **tranquillus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, calm, still.

11. **per-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead through, lead, bring, conduct.

12. **appellō**, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.* [ad+pellō], drive to, bring to; *with* or *without* nāvem, land, put in.

harēna (sometimes spelled *arēna*), -ae, *f.*, sand; shore, beach.

13. **quiēs**, -ētis, *f.*, rest; peace, quiet.

piscātōr, -ōris, *m.* [piscor, to fish], fisherman.

14. **domus**, -ūs, (-ī), *f.*, home, house.

ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead to, conduct, bring; incite, induce.

15. **benignē**, *adv.* [benignus], kindly. **excipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [ex+capiō], take out, take up, catch; receive, entertain.

sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō], seat, chair; residence, abode.

17. **grātia**, -ae, *f.* [grātus], favor, influence; gratitude, thanks, requital; **grātiās agere**, to express thanks; **grātiā referre**, to make requital, to requite; **grātiā** (*with gen.*), for the sake of.

3. PERSEUS SENT ON HIS TRAVELS

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitāvit, et cum mātrem suā vītam ēgit beātam. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere amābat atque eam in mātrimonium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōstituit. Tum iuvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dixit: "Turpe est vītam hanc ignāvam agere; iam dūdum tū adulēscēns es; quousque hīc manēbis? Tempus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abī; et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

18. annōs: accusative of duration of time.

21. Perseō: dependent on *grātum*; for the case see App. 40, 2.

23. haec: used as in l. 1; with *dixit*, *spoke as follows*.

agere: subject of *est*; an infinitive used as a noun is in the neuter gender; hence the predicate adjective, *turpe*, is neuter.

24. iam dūdum es, *you have long been*; with *iam dūdum* a present tense is translated by an English present perfect, an imperfect by an English past perfect; *iam dūdum erās* would mean *you had long been*.

25. abī: imperative of *abeō*. What is the imperative of *eō*?

26. refer: the present imperative of *ferō* and its compounds is irregular. See App. 33.

19. beātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, happy, prosperous.

20. atque, *conj.*, and also, and.

mātrimonium, -ī, *n.* [māter], marriage; in mātrimonium dare, give in marriage, arrange a marriage for; in mātrimonium dūcere, marry.

21. minimē, *superl. adv.* [minimus], least, very little; by no means, not at all.

23. vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vōx], call, summon.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, unseemly, shameful, disgraceful.

ignāvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+gnāvus, busy], inactive, cowardly.

24. dūdum, *adv.*, before, formerly; iam dūdum, this long time, a long time ago.

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, -ium, *adj.* [pr. part. of *adolēscō*], youthful; subst., *m.*, a young man, a youth. quo-usque, *adv.*, till when? how long?

25. prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, *intr. and tr.*, stand before; excel, be better; exhibit, show.

hinc, *adv.* [hic], from this place, hence.

ab-eō, -īre, -iī, -itum, *intr.*, go away, depart.

26. re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear back, bring back; pedem referre, withdraw, retire, retreat; grātiā referre, requite.

4. PERSEUS GETS HIS OUTFIT

Perseus, ubi haec audīvit, ex insulā discessit et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesīvit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; nam nātūram locī ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et
 30 Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Primum ad Graeās, sorōrēs Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab hīs tālāria et galeam magicam ac-
 cēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum de-
 dērunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āera as-
 cendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum
 35 vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēterīs Gorgonibus habitābat. Gor-
 gonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē horribilī; capita enim eārum
 serpentibus omnīnō contēcta erant; manūs etiam ex aere
 factae erant.

27. *Perseus*: in Latin, when the verbs of a principal and a subordinate clause express action by the same person or thing, the noun or pronoun used to denote the subject frequently stands before the subordinate clause.

haec, this; see note on *haec*, l. 23.

31. *galeam magicam*: this rendered the wearer invisible.

33. *pedibus, on his feet*; dative, used with the compound *induit*.

āera: a word of Greek origin, which retains its Greek accusative form.

36. *speciē horribilī, of horrible aspect*, ablative of description.

37. *aere*: from *aes*.

28. *continēns, -entis, f. [contineō]*, continent, mainland.

frūstrā, adv., in vain, to no purpose.

29. *ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*, not know, be unaware of.

tandem, adv., at length, finally.

30. *primum, adv. [primus]*, in the first place, first of all; *cum primum*, as soon as; *quam primum*, as soon as possible.

31. *tālāria, -ium, n. [~]pl.*, winged sandals.

galea, -ae, f., helmet.

magicus, -a, -um, adj., magical. magic.

32. *falx, falcis, f.*, sickle.

speculum, -ī, n. [speciō, look], mirror

33. *induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, tr.*, put on.

āēr, āeris, m., the air.

35. *cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., pl.*, the other, the rest of.

36. *mōnstrum, -ī, n., [moneō]*, a divine omen, portent; monster.

speciēs, -ēī, f., appearance, aspect.

horribilis, -e, adj. [horreō], terrible, fearful, dreadful.

37. *serpēns, gen. -entis, f. [pr. part. of serpō, crawl]*, serpent.

omnīnō, adv. [omnis], altogether, entirely, at all; only.

con-tegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, tr. cover.

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze.

5. THE GORGON'S HEAD

Rēs erat difficillima abscīdere caput Gorgonis; eius enim cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc cau- 40 sam Minerva illud speculum dederat. Perseus igitur tergum vertit, et in speculum īspiciēbat; hōc modō ad locum vēnit ubi Medūsa dormiēbat. Tum falce suā caput eius ūnō ictū abscīdit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt et, ubi rem vīdērunt, irā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuērunt, 45 et Perseum occidere volēbant; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam magicam induit et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum ēvāsīt.

40. *vertēbantur*: the Latin imperfect, like the English past, often expresses repeated or customary action.

42. *speculum*: ancient mirrors consisted of polished metal plates.

hōc modō: ablative of manner.

46. *dum fugit*, *while he fled, while fleeing*; when a *dum* clause denotes situation, it takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the principal verb.

In section 5 what is the subject of the first sentence? Account for the case of *ictū*, 43; for the tense of *fēcit*, 47. What different forces have the perfects *vertit*, *vēnit*, and the imperfects *īspiciēbat*, *dormiēbat*, 42-43?

39. *abscidō*, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [abs+caedō], cut off.

com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, excite, arouse, alarm.

40. *cōspectus*, -ūs, *m.* [cōspiciō], sight, view.

rapiō, -ere, *rapuī*, *raptum*, *tr.*, seize, carry off.

vertō, -ere, *vertī*, *versum*, *tr.*, turn.

46. *occidō*, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, *tr.* [ob+caedō], cut down, kill.

43. *ictus*, -ūs, *m.*, blow, stroke.

dum, *conj.*, while; until.

44. *somnus*, -ī, *m.*, sleep.

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call out, rouse.

48. *ē-vādō*, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *intr.*, come out, make one's way; escape.

45. *ira*, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, ire.

6. THE SEA SERPENT

Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quīdam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum, 50

49. *Cēpheus quīdam*, *a certain Cepheus, or a man named Cepheus.*

50. *tempore*: ablative of time.

Hic: a pronoun referring to Cepheus.

olim offenderat. Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum mīserat. Hoc cotīdiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōsultuit, atque ā deō iussus 55 est filiam mōnstrō trādere. Eius autem filia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audi-vit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō periculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam cōstituit imperāta Hammōnis facere.

52. marī: it should be remembered that neuter nouns with the genitive plural in *-ium* have the ending *-ī* in the ablative singular.

53. omnium, *of all (i.e., men);* a substantive use of an adjective; compare the neuter *haec*, l. 23.

54. ōrāculum: the word may mean the seat of an oracle, as here, or the reply given by an oracle. The consultation of oracles sprang from the belief that information and advice could be obtained from certain divinities. Oracles were usually given by oral utterances of a priest or priestess in a state of real or pretended frenzy, or by signs. The temple (with its oracle) of the Egyptian god Hammon stood in an oasis of the Libyan desert. His oracles were signs interpreted by a priest. The most famous oracle of antiquity was that of Apollo at Delphi, in Greece, where the oracular response was delivered by a priestess in a state of excitement resembling madness.

55. mōnstrō: *trādere* takes an indirect object.

nōmine: ablative of respect.

56. Cēpheus, ubi: the order for translation is explained in the note on *Perseus, ubi*, l. 27.

In section 6 explain the case of *deō*, 54; of *Andromeda*, 55; of *virgō*, 56. What are the principal parts of *volō*?

51. offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, tr., [ob+fendō, strike], offend.

saevus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, savage.

52. dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., swallow, devour.

53. ob, prep. with acc., on account of.
pavor, -ōris, m. [paveō, be afraid], terror, alarm.

54. cōsultō, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, tr. and intr., consult; consult the interests of (*with dative*).

56. virgō, virginis, f., young woman, maiden, virgin.

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj. [fōrma], beautiful, handsome.

57. percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [per+capiō], perceive, feel.

58. ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, tr., draw out; extricate, release.

59. imperātum, -ī, n. [p. part. of imperō], command, order.

7. A HUMAN SACRIFICE

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea 60
diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est et in cōspectū
omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum eius dēplō-
rābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum
exspectant, Perseus accurrit; et, ubi lacrimās vidit, causam
dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōn- 65
strant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis auditur; simul
mōnstrum, horribilī speciē, procul cōspicitur. Eius cōn-
spectus timōrem maximum omnibus iniēcit. At mōnstrum

60. *diem*: in the plural, *diēs* is always masculine, in the singular sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

omnia, all things, everything; or with *parāvit*, made all preparations. The masculine plural forms of *omnis* used substantively mean all men, as in l. 53, the neuter plural forms, all things.

63. *nec tenēbant*, and did not restrain; *neque* is regularly used in Latin for and not.

dum . . . expectant, while they were awaiting; the present tense with *dum*, as in l. 46.

64. *accurrit*: for vivid effect a past event or situation may be represented as present. The present in this use is called the historical present, which may often be translated by the English past. Several other examples occur in this section.

67. *speciē*: the case use is the same as in l. 36.

68. *timōrem* . . . *omnibus iniēcit*, inspired all with the greatest fear; literally, threw the greatest fear into all; *omnibus* is a dative with a compound verb, as in l. 33.

60. *certus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *cernō*], fixed, certain.

61. *dē-dūcō*, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, *tr.*, lead away; draw down; *nāvem dēducere*, to launch a ship.

62. *rūpēs*, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*ad+* *ligō*, bind], bind to, tie to.

fātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part.* of *for*, speak], fate, destiny.

dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, de-plore, lament.

64. *accurrō*, -currere, -currī, -cur-sum, *intr.* [*ad+* *currō*], run to, come up hurriedly.

65. *ex-pōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -po-situm, *tr.*, set forth, explain; ex-
pose, abandon; set ashore.

66. *fremitus*, -ūs, *m.* [*fremō*, roar], a roar, a loud noise.

terribilis, -e, *adj.* [*terreō*], dreadful, terrible.

67. *procul*, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance, far off.

cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, *tr.*, [*con+* *spiciō*], look, perceive. observe.

68. *iniciō*, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *tr.* [*in+* *iaciō*], throw into, hurl upon; inspire in, cause.

magnā celeritāte ad litus contendit, iamque ad locum appro-
 70 pinquābat ubi puella stābat.

69. magnā celeritāte: ablative of manner.

In section 7 account for the tense of *geruntur*, 66; of *stābat*, 70.

8. THE RESCUE

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit, et, post-
 quam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsuper in
 mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit et gladiō suō collum eius
 graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum
 75 horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam
 mersit. Perseus, dum circum litus volat, reditum eius ex-
 spectābat; mare autem intereā undique sanguine īficitur.
 Post breve tempus, bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen
 ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub
 80 undās mersit, neque posteā visa est.

72. in (*mōnstrum*), on.

80. neque: translate as in l. 63.

In section 8 account for the case of *gladiō*, 73; of *Perseō*, 79; of *ictū*, 79.
 What case is governed by *sub* with a verb of motion? By *in* meaning
 into? By *circum*? By *sine*?

72. tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*,
 lift, elevate, raise; elate; remove.

dē-super, *adv.*, from above.

73. collum, -ī, *n.*, neck.

74. graviter, *adv.* [*gravis*], heavily;
 severely; with dignity, impres-
 sively.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsū, *tr.*, feel,
 see, perceive.

75. ē-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*,
 give out, put forth; give birth to;
 exhibit; inflict.

sub, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*, under.

76. mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, *tr.*,
 plunge, sink.

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [*redeō*], return.

77. inter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the
 meantime.

undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all
 sides, all around, everywhere.

sanguis, sanguinis, *m.*, blood.

īficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*in*
 +*faciō*], stain, dye, color.

78. bēlua, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, mon-
 ster.

80. unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.

9. THE REWARD OF VALOR

Perseus, postquam in lītus dēscendit, prīmum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vīncta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vīcula statim solvit et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō affectus 85 est. Meritam grātiā prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātirimōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit, et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitāvit, et in magnō honōre erat apud ōmnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen cupiēbat mātrem 90 suam rūsus vidēre. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

83. *terrōre*: ablative of cause, App. 42, 16.

86. *meritam grātiā rettulit*, *made a deserved requital*, or *repaid the favor as it deserved*.

prō, *in return for*.

88. *puellam dūxit*, *married*. *Dūcō* has reference to that part of the ceremony in which the bridegroom led the bride to his own house. With regard to the woman, the verb for marry is *nūbere*, literally, *to veil oneself*, with the dative of the bridegroom's name.

In section 9 account for the case of *patrī* 85; of *Perseō*, 86; of *annōs*, 88. Point out a complementary infinitive. What cases are governed by the prepositions *ad*, *ob*, *apud*?

81. *exuō*, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, take off, remove.

82. *vinciō*, -īre, *vīnxī*, *vīnctum*, *tr.*, bind, fasten.

83. *dē-pōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, set down, deposit; lay aside.

ad-eō, -īre, -īī or -īvī, -itum, *intr.*, go or come up to, come up, approach.

terror, -ōris, *m.* [*terreō*], terror, fright.

84. *paene*, *adv.*, nearly, almost.

ex-animō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, put out of breath, stun, exhaust.

vinculum, -ī, *n.* [*vinciō*], bond, fetter.

solvō, -ere, *solvī*, *solūtum*, *tr.*, loosen, unbind, release; relax; of ships, with or without *nāvem* or *nāvēs*, set sail, weigh anchor.

85. *afficiō*, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*ad+faciō*], do to; treat; affect.

86. *meritus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *mereō*], due, deserved, just.

87. *praeter-eā*, *adv.*, in addition, besides, further.

89. *regiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*regō*], region, district.

honor, -ōris, *m.*, honor, repute, esteem; *Honor*, -ōris, *m.*, Honor personified as a god.

90. *apud*, *prep.* with *acc.*, among, with; near; at the house of; on the bank of.

10. TURNED TO STONE

Postquam Perseus ad insulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat. At domum invēnit
 95 vacuam et omnīnō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam insulam mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat. Perseus, ubi haec cognōvit, irā magnā commōtus est; ad rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit et, ubi eō vēnit, statim
 100 in ātrium irrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est, et fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Medūsae mōnstrāvit; ille autem, simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum versus est.

93. sē . . . contulit, *betook himself, proceeded.*

97. quod: a conjunction.

99. eō: an adverb.

100. magnō timōre affectus est, *was very badly frightened.* What is it literally?

102. simul atque, *as soon as*; the same rule as to the tense of the verb applies to this phrase as to *postquam* and *ubi*, explained in the note on l. 12.

In section 10 account for the case of *vacuam*, *dēsertam*, 95; of *diēs*, 96; of *ātrium*, 100; of *Medūsae*, 101. What case does *per* govern? What are the meanings of the adverbs *hīc*, *hīnc*, *hūc*?

95. dē-serō, -serere, -seruī, -ser-tum, *tr.*, [serō, join], abandon, desert.

96. quārtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [quattuor], fourth.

97. hūc, *adv.* [hic], this way, to this place.

re-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee back; flee away, escape.

99. rēgia, -ae, *f.* [rēgius], palace.

eō, *adv.* [is], to that place, thither; on that account.

100. ātrium, -ī, *n.*, atrium, *the principal room or hall of a house.*

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [in+rumpō], burst, break in, rush into, burst into.

102. mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [mōnstrum], show, exhibit; point out.

11. THE ORACLE FULFILLED

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisiī rediit.
 105 Ille autem, ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est.

Nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vitāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserat et diem edixerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus 110 Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conicit, avum suum cāsū occīdit; Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs cius certāminis forte stābat.

106. *istud*: this word is declined like *ille*, and usually means *that* or *that of yours*. Here the force is, *that oracle of which you know*.

107. *Lārissam*, of *Larissa*; an appositive translated like *Serīphum*, l. 11.

109. *lūdōs fēcit*, gave games.

in omnēs partēs, in all directions.

112. *discōrum*: the discus was a flat piece of stone or metal.

113. *cāsū*, by chance, accidentally; *cāsus* is one of a class of very common nouns used without prepositions to express manner.

What cases are governed by the prepositions *propter*, *ex*, *inter*? What is the regular position of *enim*?

106. *iste, ista, istud*, demonstr. pron., that of yours, that.

109. *lūdus, -ī, m.*, game, sport.

110. *ē-dicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, tr.*, declare, proclaim, appoint.

112. *certāmen, -inis, n.* [*certō*], struggle, contest, rivalry.

discus, -ī, m., discus, quoit.

in-eō, -īre, -ī or -īvi, -itum, tr., enter; enter upon, form.

113. *spectātor, -ōris, m.* [*spectō*], onlooker, spectator.

114. *forte*, [*adv. abl. of fors*, chance], perhaps, by chance.

VOCABULARY FOR PERSEUS

abeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, go away, depart

abscidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, cut off

accurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, run to, come up hurriedly

Ācrisius, -ī, M., Acrisius, *grandfather of Perseus*

adducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead to, bring; induce

adeō, -īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, go to; come up, approach

āēr, āeris, M., the air

aes, aeris, N., copper, bronze

Aethiopēs, -um, M., *pl.*, the Ethiopians, *a people of Africa*

afficiō (or adficiō), -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, do to, treat, affect

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, drive, do; spend, pass

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bind to, tie to

Andromeda, -ae, F., Andromeda, *the daughter of Cepheus*

Apollō, Apollinis, M., Apollo

appellō (or adpellō), -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive to, bring to

arca, -ae, F., chest, box

at, *conj.*, but

atrium, -ī, N., atrium, *the principal room or hall of a house*

avus, -ī, M., grandfather

beātus, -a, -um, happy

bēlua, -ae, F., wild beast, monster

benignē, *adv.*, kindly

cāsus, -ūs, M., accident, mischance

Cepheus, -ī, M., Cepheus, *a king of Ethiopia*

collum, -ī, N., neck

cōnspectus, -ūs, M., sight, view

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, consult

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, cover

continēns, -entis, F., mainland

Danaē, -ēs, F., Danae, *mother of Perseus*

dēducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead away

dēplōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, deplore, lament

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, deposit; lay aside

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēsum, descend

dēsuper, *adv.*, from above

dēvorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, swallow, devour

Dīāna, -ae, F., Diana, *goddess of the chase*

dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, say, appoint, name

discus, -ī, M., discus, quoit

dolor, -ōris, M., sorrow, suffering, pain

dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, sleep

dūdum, *adv.*, before, formerly; iam dūdum, this long time

ēdicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, declare, proclaim, appoint

ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give out,
 put forth
 exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, render
 breathless, stun
 excipio, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
 take out, take up, receive
 excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call out,
 rouse
 expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum,
 set forth, explain
 extrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum,
 draw out; extricate, release
 exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, take off,
 remove

falx, falcis, *F.*, sickle
 fātum, -ī, *N.*, fate, destiny
 fōrmōsus, -a, -um, beautiful, hand-
 some

forte, *adv.*, by chance
 fremitus, -ūs, *M.*, a roar, a loud
 noise
 frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain, to no purpose

galea, -ae, *F.*, helmet
 gaudium, -ī, *N.*, joy, gladness
 gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum, carry,
 carry on; wage
 Gorgō, -onis, *F.*, a Gorgon
 Graeae, -ārum, *F., pl.*, the Graeae

Hammon, -ōnis, *M.*, Hammon, an
Egyptian god
 hārēna (or ārēna), -ae, *F.*, sand,
 shore, beach
 horribilis, -e, horrible, dreadful
 hūc, *adv.*, to this place

ictus, -ūs, *M.*, blow, stroke
 ignāvus, -a, -um, inactive, cowardly
 ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, not know,
 be unaware

imperātum, -ī, *N.*, command, order
 inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum,
 shut up, enclose
 indiō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, put on
 ineō, -īre -iī (-ivī), -itum, enter
 infāns, *gen.*, infantis, *adj.*, infant;
subst., M. and F., infant, young
 child

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, stain,
 dye, color

iniciō (iniiciō), -ere, -iēcī, -iectum,
 throw into; inspire in, cause

inspicio, -spicere, -spexī, -spēctum,
 look into, look

ira, -ae, *F.*, anger, wrath
 irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum,
 break in, rush into

Larissa, -ae, *F.*, Larissa, a city of
Thessaly

libenter, *adv.*, willingly, with pleas-
 ure

ligneus, -a, -um, wooden, of wood
 litus, -oris, *N.*, sea-shore, beach

magicus, -a, -um, magic
 mātrimonium, -ī, *N.*, marriage
 Medūsa, -ae, *F.*, Medusa, a Gorgon
 mergō, -ere, mersi, mersum, plunge,
 sink

meritus, -a, -um, due, deserved, just
 Minerva, -ae, *F.*, Minerva, the
goddess of wisdom

minimē, *adv.*, least, by no means,
 not at all

modus, -ī, *M.*, manner, way; limit
 mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, show,
 point out

mōnstrum, -ī, *N.*, portent; monster

nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tell, relate
 nepōs, -ōtis, *M.*, grandson

Neptūnus, -ī, M., Neptune, *god of the sea*

rēgia, -ae, F., palace
rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff

offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsūm, offend

ōrāculum, -ī, N., oracle

pavor, -ōris, M., terror, alarm

percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, perceive, feel

perducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, lead through, lead, bring

Perseus, -ī, M., Perseus, *a Greek hero*

piscātor, -ōris, M., fisherman

poēta, -ae, M., poet

Polydectēs, -is, M., Polydectes, *a king of Seriphus*

procul, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance, far off

quiēs, -ētis, F., rest; peace, quiet
quousque, *adv.*, till when? how long?

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, give back, return

reditus, -ūs, M., return

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back; grātiā referre, make a return, requite

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee back; flee away, escape

saevus, -a, -um, fierce, savage

sanguis, -sanguinis, M., blood

sēdēs, -is, F., seat; residence, abode

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsūm, feel, see, perceive

Seriphus, -ī, F., Seriphus, *an island in the Aegean Sea*

serpēs, serpentis, F., serpent

simul, *adv.*, at the same time

sinus, -ūs, M., bosom

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, loosen, unbind, release

somnus, -ī, M., sleep

speciēs, -ēī, F., appearance, aspect

spectātor, -ōris, M., onlooker, spectator

speculum, -ī, N., mirror

tālāria, -ium, N., *pl.*, winged sandals

tandem, *adv.*, at length, finally

terror, -ōris, M., terror, fright

Thessalia, -ae, F., Thessaly

tranquillus, -a, -um, calm, still

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, disturb, throw into confusion

turpis, -e, disgraceful, shameful

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, bind

vinculum, -ī, N., bond, fetter

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, fly

1st & 2nd copy.

Presented to the
— C. W. A.

2nd & 4 copy.

Unconformable - for a
not a whole

1st copy - 2nd copy
a copy

Unconformable - for a
not a whole

Unconformable - for a
not a whole

Unconformable - for a
not a whole

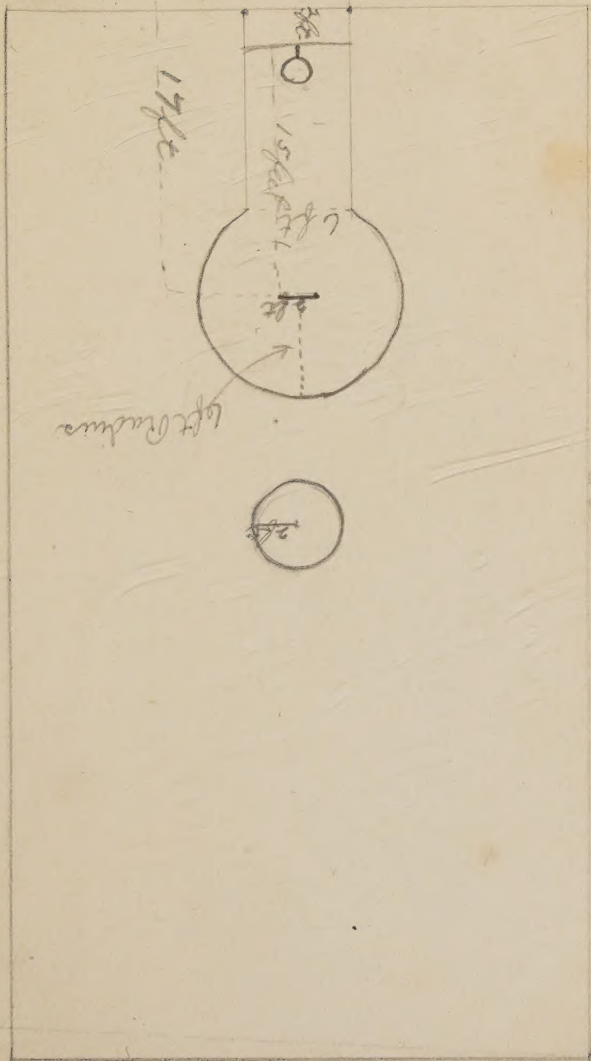
Act

Admission, issue & sale of

Passes

Particulars of the same & of the

35

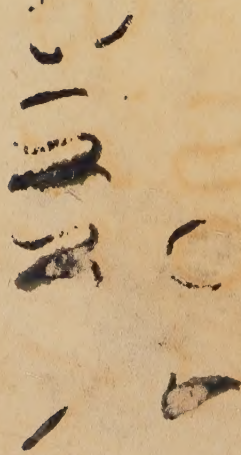


6ft

- 1 agnus
- 2 servus
- 3 puer - 1
- 4 sarpasmi
- 5 lex - legis
- 6 caput capitis
- 7 Callis collis
- 8 fluctus fluctus

legit mmm

1
2
3
4
5
6



Louis
Annis

Louis

Annals of the
Church, B.

1922

1500

1/23

new

